2009 Cadillac Escalade/Escalade ESV Owner Manual

Seats and Restraint System 1-1
- Head Restraints 1-2
- Front Seats 1-3
- Rear Seats 1-10
- Safety Belts 1-30
- Child Restraints 1-52
- Airbag System 1-79
- Restraint System Check 1-95

Features and Controls 2-1
- Keys 2-3
- Doors and Locks 2-10
- Windows 2-17
- Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-21
- Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-24
- Mirrors 2-40
- Object Detection Systems 2-42
- OnStar® System 2-52
- Universal Home Remote System 2-55
- Storage Areas 2-62
- Sunroof 2-65

Instrument Panel 3-1
- Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Climate Controls 3-27
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-33
- Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-47
- Audio System(s) 3-75

Navigation System 4-1
- Overview 4-2
- Features and Controls 4-13
- Navigation Audio System 4-62
- Voice Recognition 4-86

Driving Your Vehicle 5-1
- Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle 5-2
- Towing 5-40

Service and Appearance Care 6-1
- Service 6-3
- Fuel 6-5
- Checking Things Under the Hood 6-12
- All-Wheel Drive 6-45
- Rear Axle 6-46

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

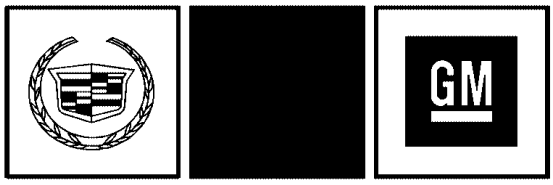
Front Axle 6-47
Headlamp Aiming 6-48
Bulb Replacement 6-51
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 6-54
Tires 6-56
Appearance Care 6-96
Vehicle Identification 6-104
Electrical System 6-105
Capacities and Specifications 6-113

Maintenance Schedule 7-1
Maintenance Schedule 7-2

Customer Assistance Information 8-1
Customer Assistance and Information 8-2
Reporting Safety Defects 8-14
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 8-16

Index 1

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Crest & Wreath, and the names ESCALADE and ESV are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. GM reserves the right to make changes after that time without notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Cadillac Motor Car Division wherever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

Read this manual from beginning to end to learn about the vehicle’s features and controls. Pictures, symbols, and words work together to explain vehicle operation.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 15911387 B Second Printing

Canadian Owners

Canadian Owners (Propriétaires Canadiens)

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer/retailer or from:

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès du concessionnaire ou à l’adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123

Numéro de poste 6438 de langue française

www.helminc.com

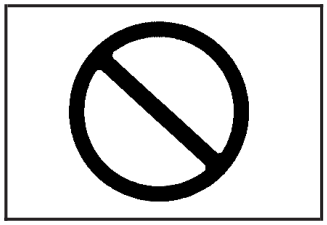
Index

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

©2008 General Motors Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Warnings and Symbols



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

A box with the word CAUTION is used to tell about things that could hurt you or others if you were to ignore the warning.

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

Cautions tell what the hazard is and what to do to avoid or reduce the hazard. Read these cautions.

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle.

Notice: **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

Many times, this damage would not be covered by the vehicle’s warranty, and it could be costly. The notice tells what to do to help avoid the damage.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle which use the same words, CAUTION or Notice.

Vehicle Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the index.

: Adjustable Pedals

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Audio Steering Wheel Controls or OnStar®

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fog Lamps

: Fuel Gage

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Tow/Haul Mode

: Traction Control

: Windshield Washer Fluid

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 1 Seats and Restraint System

Head Restraints 1-2

Front Seats 1-3
- Power Seats 1-3
- Power Lumbar 1-4
- Heated Seats 1-5
- Heated and Cooled Seats 1-6
- Memory Features 1-7
- Power Reclining Seatbacks 1-8
- Center Seat 1-10

Rear Seats 1-10
- Heated Seats 1-10
- 60/40 Split Bench Seat (Second Row) 1-11
- Bucket Seats (Second Row) 1-17
- Third Row Seat 1-25

Safety Belts 1-30
- Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone 1-30
- How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-35
- Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-43
- Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 1-50
- Lap Belt 1-50
- Safety Belt Extender 1-51

Child Restraints 1-52
- Older Children 1-52
- Infants and Young Children 1-55
- Child Restraint Systems 1-59
- Where to Put the Restraint 1-61
- Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) 1-63
- Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-71
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position 1-75
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-76

Airbag System 1-79
- Where Are the Airbags? 1-81
- When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-84
- What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-85
- How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-85
- What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-86
- Passenger Sensing System 1-87
- Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-93
- Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-94

Restraint System Check 1-95
- Checking the Restraint Systems 1-95
- Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 1-96

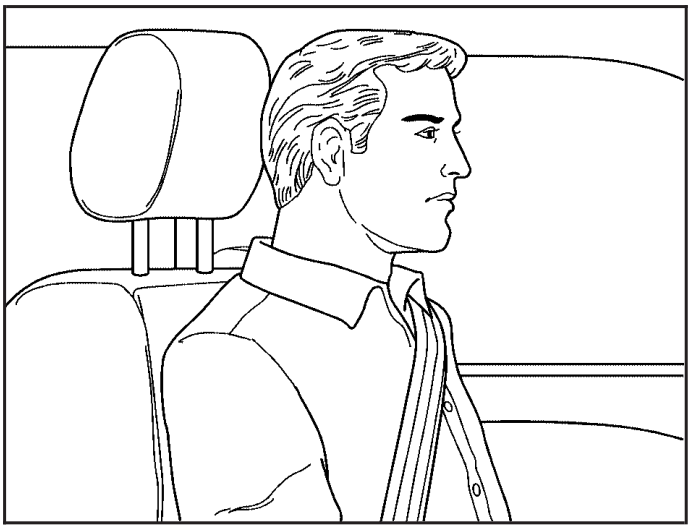
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Head Restraints

The front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

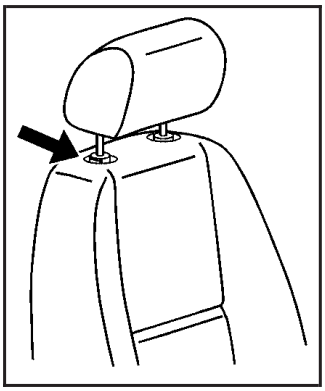
⚠ CAUTION:

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Pull the head restraint up to raise it. To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the restraint down.

Push down on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

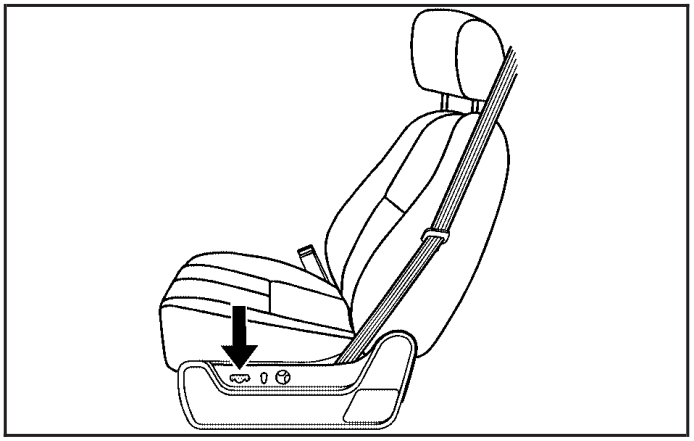
The head restraints are not designed to be removed.

The vehicle may also be equipped with manually tilting head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

The rear seat has head rests that can be adjusted up and down.

Front Seats

Power Seats



Driver Seat with Power Seat Control, Power Recline, and Power Lumbar shown

The power seat controls are located on the outboard side of the front seats.

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

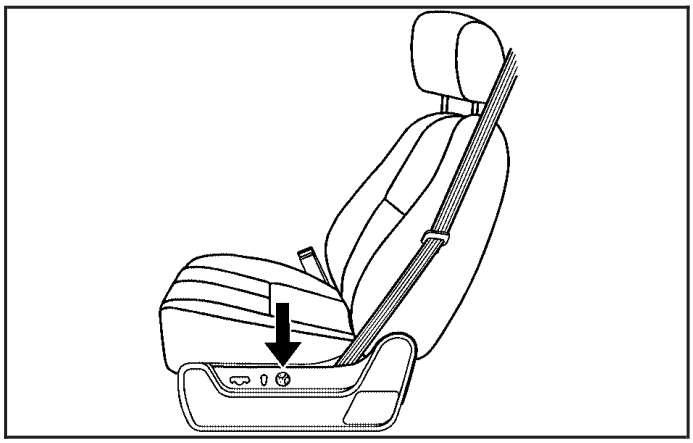
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

The power reclining seatback control is located behind the power seat control on the outboard side of the seats. See *Power Reclining Seatbacks on page 1-8*.

Your vehicle has a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Features on page 1-7*.

Power Lumbar



The controls used to operate the power lumbar feature are located on the outboard side of the seats.

- To increase lumbar support, press and hold the front of the control.
- To decrease lumbar support, press and hold the rear of the control.
- To raise the height of the support, press and hold the top of the control.
- To lower the height of the support, press and hold the bottom of the control.

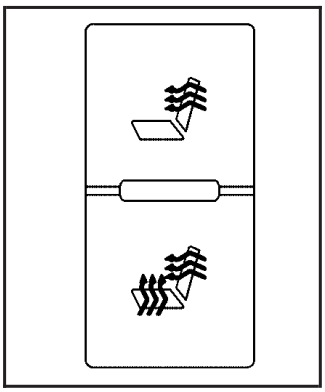
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Let go of the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of support.

Your vehicle has a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Features on page 1-7* for more information.

Keep in mind that as your seating position changes, as it may during long trips, so should the position of your lumbar support. Adjust the seat as needed.

Heated Seats



If the front seats have the heated seat feature, the buttons used to control this feature are located on the climate control panel.

(Heated Seatback): To heat only the seatback, press the top button with the heated seatback symbol.

This symbol will appear on the climate control display to indicate that the feature is on. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low and to turn the heated seatback off. Indicator bars next to the symbol designate the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

(Heated Seat and Seatback): To heat the entire seat, press the bottom button with the heated seat and seatback symbol.

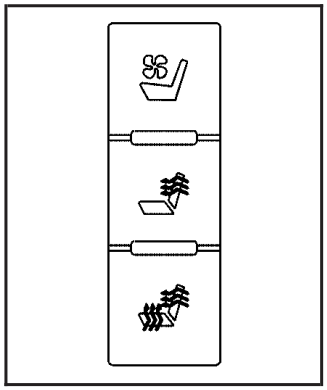
This symbol will appear on the climate control display to indicate that the feature is on. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low and to turn the heated seat off. Indicator bars next to the symbol designate the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

The heated seats will be canceled ten seconds after the ignition is turned off. If you want to use the heated seat feature after you restart the vehicle, you will need to press the appropriate heated seat button again.

If your vehicle has heated and cooled seats, see *Heated and Cooled Seats on page 1-6*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Heated and Cooled Seats



If the front seats have the heated and cooled seat feature, the buttons used to control this feature are located on the climate control panel.

(Cooled Seat): To cool the entire seat, press the button with the cooled seat symbol.

This symbol will appear on the climate control display to indicate that the feature is on. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low and to turn the cooled seat off. Indicator bars next to the symbol designate the level of cooling selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

(Heated Seatback): To heat only the seatback, press the button with the heated seatback symbol.

This symbol will appear on the climate control display to indicate that the feature is on. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low and to turn the heated seatback off. Indicator bars next to the symbol designate the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

(Heated Seat and Seatback): To heat the entire seat, press the button with the heated seat and seatback symbol.

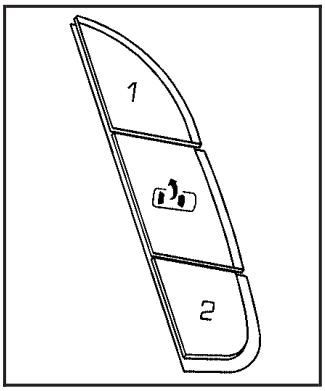
This symbol will appear on the climate control display to indicate that the feature is on. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low and to turn the heated seat off. Indicator bars next to the symbol designate the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

The heated and cooled seats will be canceled after the ignition is turned off. If you want to use the heated and cooled seat feature after you restart your vehicle, you will need to press the appropriate seat button again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Memory Features

Your vehicle has the memory package.



The controls for this feature are located on the driver's door, and are used to program and recall memory settings for the driver's seat, outside mirrors, steering wheel position, and the adjustable throttle and brake pedal feature, if your vehicle has it.

To save your positions in memory, do the following:

1. Adjust the driver's seat, including the seatback recliner and lumbar, both outside mirrors, steering wheel, and the throttle and brake pedals to a comfortable position.

   See *Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors on page 2-40* and *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 2-27* for more information.

   Not all mirrors will have the ability to save and recall the mirror positions.
2. Press and hold button 1 until two beeps let you know that the position has been stored.

A second seating, mirror, steering wheel position, and throttle and brake pedal position can be programmed by repeating the above steps and pressing button 2.

To recall the memory positions, the vehicle must be in P (Park). Press and release either button 1 or button 2 corresponding to the desired driving position. The seat, outside mirrors, steering wheel position, and adjustable throttle and brake pedals will move to the position previously stored. You will hear a single beep.

If you use the remote keyless entry transmitter to enter your vehicle and the remote recall memory feature is on, automatic seat, mirror, steering wheel position, and adjustable pedal movement will occur. See "MEMORY SEAT RECALL" under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

To stop recall movement of the memory feature at any time, press one of the power seat controls, memory buttons, power mirror buttons, power tilt wheel control, or adjustable pedal switch.

If something has blocked the driver's seat and/or the adjustable pedals while recalling a memory position, the driver's seat and/or the adjustable pedals recall may stop working. If this happens, remove the obstruction and press the appropriate function control for two seconds. Then try recalling the memory position again by pressing the appropriate memory button. If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer/retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Easy Exit Seat

The control for this feature is located on the driver's door between buttons 1 and 2.

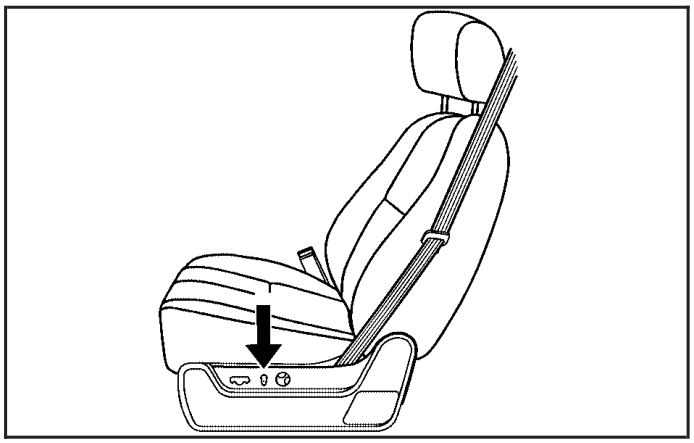
With the vehicle in P (Park), the exit position can be recalled by pressing the exit button. You will hear a single beep. The driver's seat will move back.

If the easy exit seat feature is on in the Driver Information Center (DIC), automatic seat movement will occur when the key is removed from the ignition. See "EASY EXIT SEAT" under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

Further programming for the memory seat feature can be done using the DIC. You can select the automatic easy exit seat feature or the remote memory seat recall feature.

For programming information, see *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65*.

Power Reclining Seatbacks

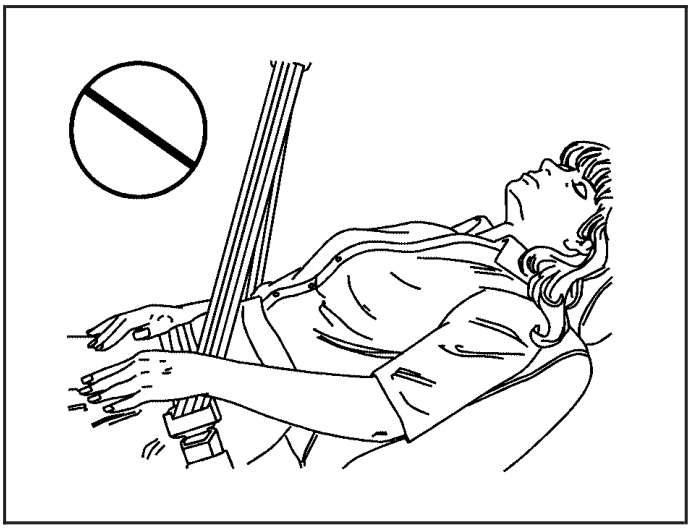


Driver's Seat with Power Seat Control, Power Recline, and Power Lumbar shown

The controls for the power reclining seatback are located on the outboard side of the front seats behind the power seat control.

- To recline the seatback, tilt the top of the control rearward.
- To bring the seatback forward, tilt the top of the control forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



⚠ CAUTION:

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts cannot do their job when you are reclined like this.

The shoulder belt cannot do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

Do not have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

Your vehicle has a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Features on page 1-7*.

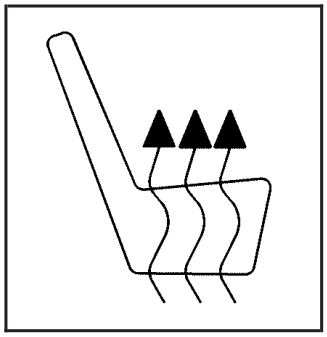
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Center Seat

Your vehicle may have a front center seat. The seatback doubles as an armrest and cupholder/storage area for the driver and passenger when the center seat is not used. Do not use it as a seating position when the seatback is folded down.

Rear Seats

Heated Seats



Driver's Side RSA Heated Seat Button Only shown

The rear outboard seats have the heated seat feature. The buttons used to control this feature are located on the Rear Seat Audio (RSA) panel.

(Heated Seat): To heat the seat cushion, press the button with the heated seat symbol.

A heated seat symbol will be shown in the RSA display to indicate that the feature is on. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low, and to turn it off. Indicator bars next to the symbol will designate the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

The heated seats will be canceled ten seconds after the ignition is turned off. If the vehicle is restarted, the heated seat button will need to be pressed again to restart the feature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

60/40 Split Bench Seat (Second Row)

If your vehicle has a 60/40 split bench, the seat(s) can be folded for additional cargo space or folded and tumbled for easy entry and exit to the third row seats, if your vehicle has them. These seats will have either the manual fold and tumble feature or the automatic seat release fold and tumble feature.

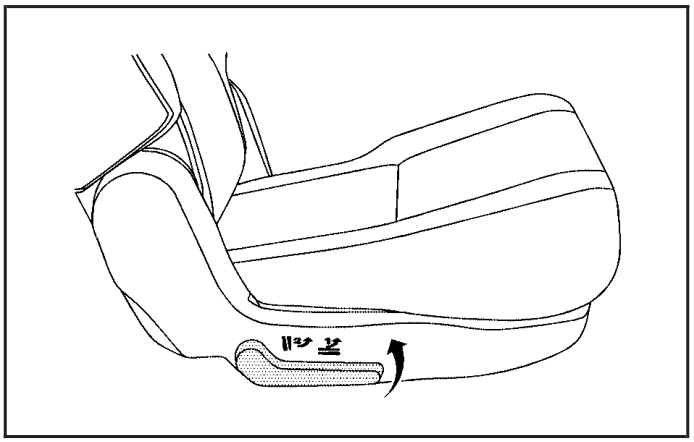
Manual Fold and Tumble Feature

Folding and Tumbling the Seat(s)

To fold and tumble the seat, do the following:

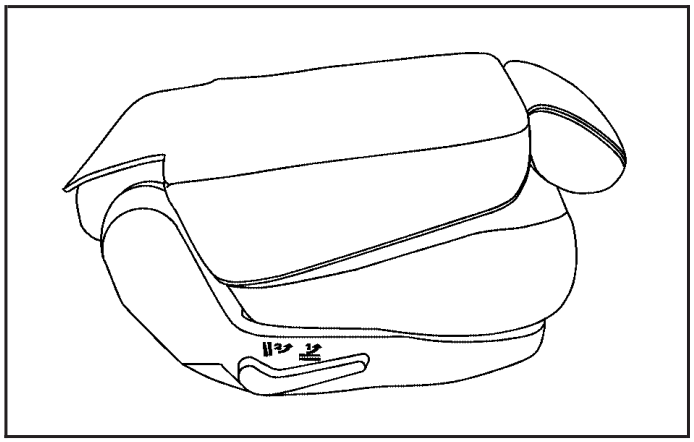
1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



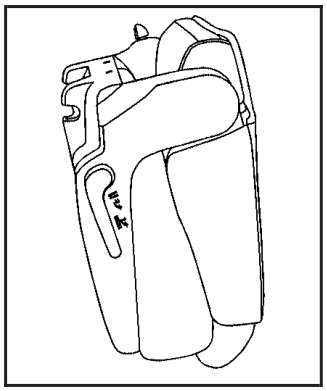
2. Lift the lever, located on the outboard side of the seat, to release the seatback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The seatback will fold forward automatically. Leaving the seatback in this position creates a flat load floor.

If the seatback cannot fold flat, try moving the front seat forward and/or put the front seatback in the upright position.



3. Lift the same lever again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Returning the Seat(s) to the Sitting Position

To return the seat to the sitting position, do the following:

1. Pull the seat down until it latches to the floor. The seatback cannot be raised if the seat is not latched to the floor.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Lift the seatback and push it rearward. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

3. Make sure the safety belt in the center seating position is not caught between the two seats and is not twisted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folding and Tumbling the Seat(s) from the Third Row Seats

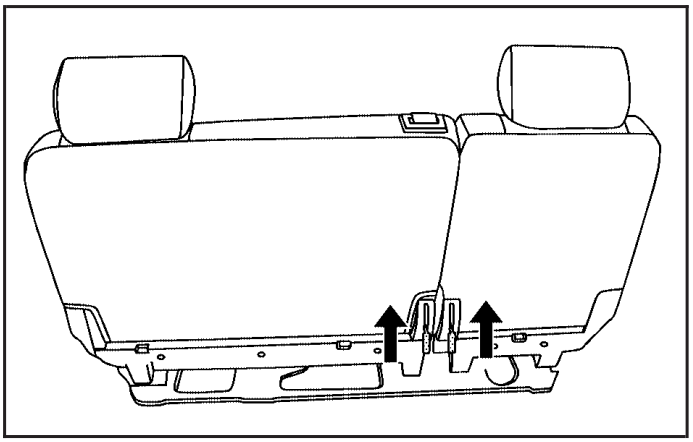
⚠ CAUTION:

Using the third row seating position while the second row is folded, or folded and tumbled, could cause injury in a sudden stop or crash. Be sure to return the seat to the passenger seating position. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

To fold and tumble the seat from the third rows, if your vehicle has them, do the following:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



2. Lift the lever(s), located on the bottom rear of the second row seat(s) on the inboard side, to release the seatback. The seatback will fold forward.
3. Lift the same lever again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Release Fold and Tumble Feature

The transmission must be in (P) Park for this feature to work.

Folding and Tumbling the Seat(s)

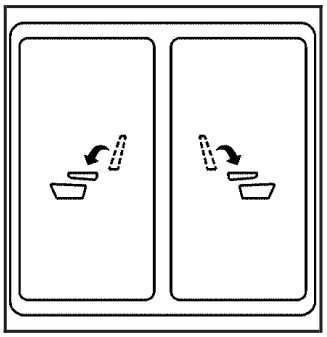
⚠ CAUTION:

Automatically folding and tumbling the seat when someone is sitting in the seat, could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always make sure there is no one sitting in the seat before pressing the automatic seat release button.

To fold and tumble the seat, do the following:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



Overhead Console Buttons shown, Panel Button similar

2. From the front seats, press one of the automatic seat release buttons located on the overhead console.

When accessing the third row seats, if your vehicle has them, from the outside of the vehicle, press the button on the panel behind either rear door.

One press of the button automatically folds the seatback flat and tumbles the seat forward. There will be a slight delay between the folding of the seatback and the tumbling of the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Returning the Seat(s) to the Sitting Position

To return the seat to the sitting position, do the following:

1. Pull the seat down until it latches to the floor. The seatback cannot be raised if the seat is not latched to the floor.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Lift the seatback and push it rearward. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

3. Make sure that the safety belt in the center seating position is not caught between the two seats and is not twisted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folding and Tumbling the Second Row Seat(s) from the Third Row Seats or Outside

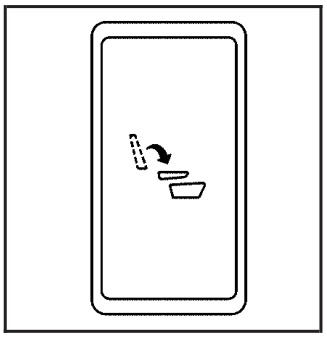
⚠ CAUTION:

Using the third row seating position while the second row is folded, or folded and tumbled, could cause injury in a sudden stop or crash. Be sure to return the seat to the passenger seating position. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

To fold and tumble the seat from the third row seats, if your vehicle has them, do the following:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



Driver's Side Rear Panel Button shown

2. Press the automatic seat release button located on the panel behind the rear doors.

   One press of the button automatically folds the seatback flat and tumbles the seat forward. There will be a slight delay between the folding of the seatback and the tumbling of the seat.

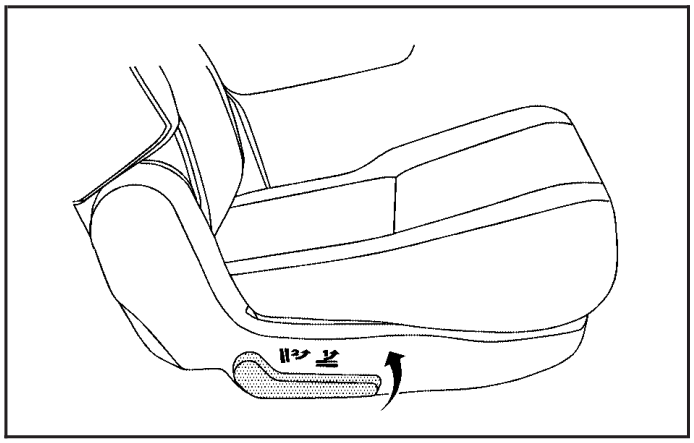
Bucket Seats (Second Row)

If your vehicle has bucket seats, the seatbacks can be reclined, the seats can be folded for additional cargo space, or folded and tumbled for easy entry and exit to the third row seats, if your vehicle has them. These seats will have either the manual fold and tumble feature or the automatic seat release fold and tumble feature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reclining Seatbacks

To recline the seatback, do the following:



1. Lift the lever located on the outboard side of the seat.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to an upright position, do the following:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback and the seatback will return to the upright position.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

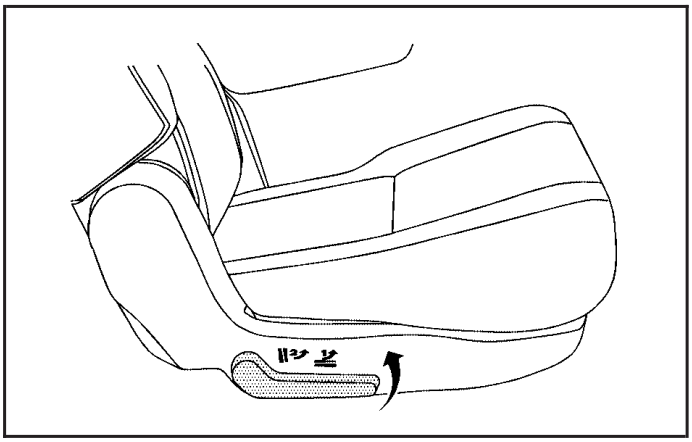
Manual Fold and Tumble Feature

Folding and Tumbling the Seat(s)

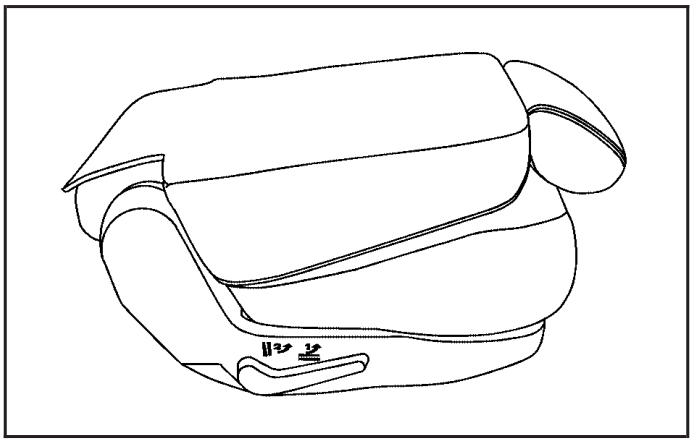
To fold and tumble the seat, do the following:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



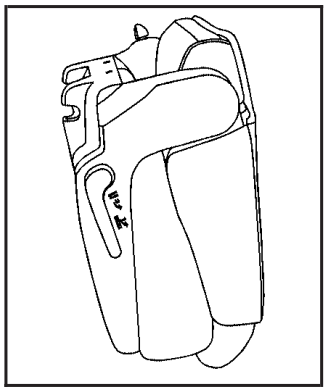
2. Lift the lever, located on the outboard side of the seat, to release the seatback.



The seatback will fold forward. Leaving the seatback in this position creates a flat load floor.

If the seatback cannot fold flat, try moving the front seat forward and/or put the front seatback in the upright position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Lift the lever again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward.

Returning the Seat(s) to the Sitting Position

To return the seat to the sitting position, do the following:

1. Pull the seat down until it latches to the floor. The seatback cannot be raised if the seat is not latched to the floor.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Lift the seatback and push it rearward. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folding and Tumbling the Seat(s) from the Third Row Seats

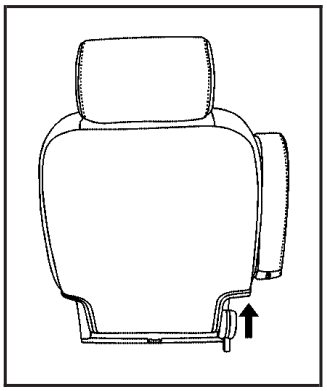
⚠ CAUTION:

Using the third row seating position while the second row is folded, or folded and tumbled, could cause injury in a sudden stop or crash. Be sure to return the seat to the passenger seating position. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

To fold and tumble the seat from the third row seats, if your vehicle has them:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



2. Lift the lever, located on the bottom rear of the second row seat on the inboard side, to release the seatback. The seatback will fold forward.
3. Lift the lever again to release the rear of the seat from the floor. The seat will tumble forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Release Fold and Tumble Feature

The transmission must be in (P) Park for this feature to work.

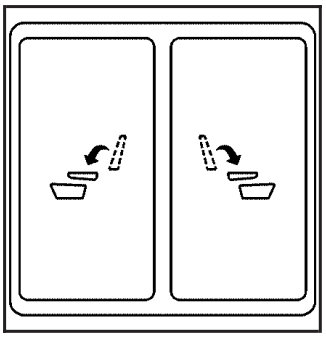
Folding and Tumbling the Seat(s)

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> Automatically folding and tumbling the seat when someone is sitting in the seat, could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always make sure there is no one sitting in the seat before pressing the automatic seat release button.

To fold and tumble the seat, do the following:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



Overhead Console Buttons shown

2. From the front seats, press one of the automatic seat release buttons located on the overhead console.

When accessing the third row seats, if your vehicle has them, from the outside of the vehicle, press the button on the panel behind either rear door.

One press of the button automatically folds the seatback flat and tumbles the seat forward. There will be a slight delay between the folding of the seatback and the tumbling of the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Returning the Seat(s) to the Sitting Position

To return the seat to the sitting position, do the following:

1. Pull the seat down until it latches to the floor. The seatback cannot be raised if the seat is not latched to the floor.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Lift the seatback and push it rearward. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folding and Tumbling the Second Row Seat(s) from the Third Row Seats or Outside

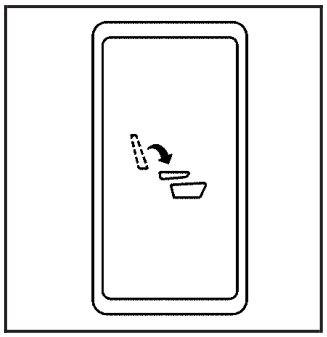
⚠ CAUTION:

Using the third row seating position while the second row is folded, or folded and tumbled, could cause injury in a sudden stop or crash. Be sure to return the seat to the passenger seating position. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

To fold and tumble the seat from the third row seats, if your vehicle has them, do the following:

1. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



Driver's Side Rear Panel Button shown

2. Press the automatic seat release button located on the panel behind the rear doors.

   One press of the button automatically folds the seatback flat and tumbles the seat forward. There will be a slight delay between the folding of the seatback and the tumbling of the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Third Row Seat

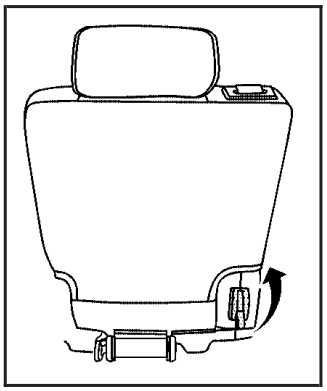
If the vehicle has a third row seat, the seatback(s) can be folded and the entire seat can be tumbled, or removed from the vehicle.

Folding the Seatback(s)

To fold the seatback, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate to access the controls for the seat.
2. Remove all items on the seat cushion.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



3. Lift the release lever, located on the bottom rear of the seatback on the outboard side of the seat, and the seatback will fold forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Unfolding the Seatback(s)

To return the seatback to the upright position, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate to access the controls for the seat.
2. Pull up on the seatback until it locks into the upright position.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

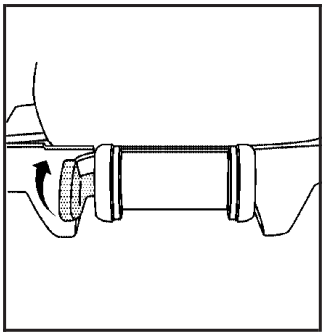
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Tumbling the Third Row Seat

The seat can be tumbled forward for additional cargo space.

To tumble the seat, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate to access the controls for the seat.
2. Make sure the head rests are completely lowered, there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.
3. Fold the seatbacks forward using the instructions previously listed under “Folding the Seatbacks”. You will not be able to unlatch the seat from the floor unless the seatback is folded down.



4. Unlatch the seat from the floor by lifting the lever located next to the carrying handle on the rear of the seat near the bottom.
5. Lift the rear of the seat up from the floor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Tilt the seat fully forward to lock it into place.
7. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked.

Put the seat in this position only when necessary for additional cargo space.

Returning the Third Row Seat from a Tumbled Position

To return the seat to the normal seating position, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate to access the controls for the seat.
2. Make sure there is nothing that could become trapped under the seat.
3. Release the seat from the tumbled position by lifting the lever located next to the carrying handle at the bottom rear of the seat.
4. Pull the seat down until it latches to the floor. The seatback cannot be raised if the seat is not latched to the floor.
5. Pull up on the seatback until it locks into the upright position.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

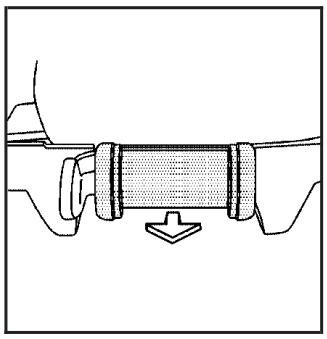
6. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Third Row Seat

To remove the seat, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate to access the controls for the seat.
2. Fold the seatback forward using the instructions listed under “Folding the Seatbacks” previously. The seat cannot be removed unless the seatback is folded.



3. Unlatch the seat from the floor by pulling the carrying handle, located at the rear of the seat, rearward.
4. Roll the seat out of the vehicle. There is a track in the floor to guide the seat wheels out of the vehicle.

Installing the Third Row Seat

To install the seat, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate to access the rear of the vehicle.
2. Slide the front outboard seat wheels into the track on the floor and roll the seat forward. The front latches should lock into place. If the latches do not lock, try tilting the rear of the seat upward slightly.
3. Lower the rear of the seat and push down on the seat to engage the rear floor latches.

⚠ CAUTION:

A seat that is not locked into place properly can move around in a collision or sudden stop. People in the vehicle could be injured. Be sure to lock the seat into place properly when installing it.

4. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place. The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.
5. Pull up on the seatback until it locks into the upright position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

6. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

7. Make sure the safety belts are returned to the original position over the seatbacks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belts

Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, the injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle harder or be ejected from the vehicle. You and your passenger(s) can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-35* for additional information.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts. Here is why:

You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a serious one.

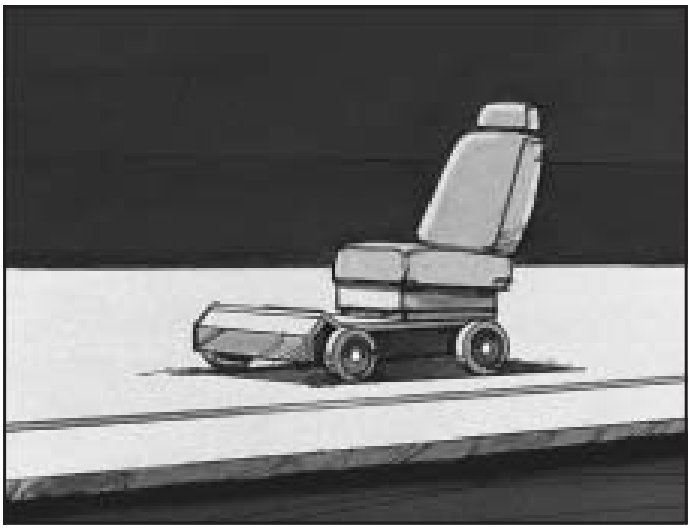
A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without safety belts, they could have been badly hurt or killed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

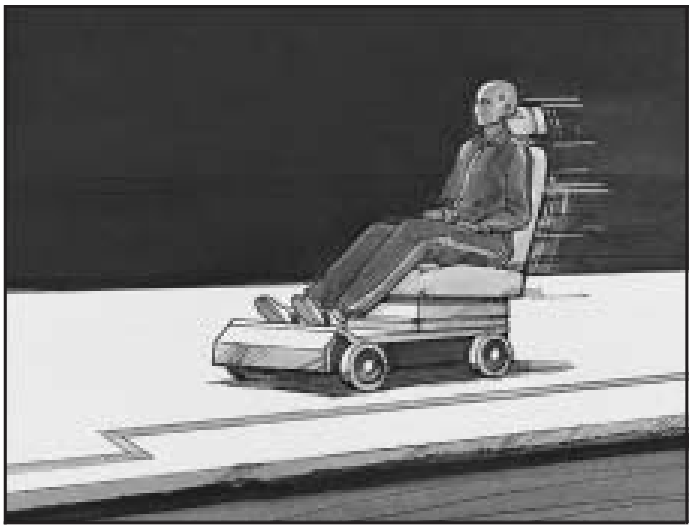
After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

Why Safety Belts Work

When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.

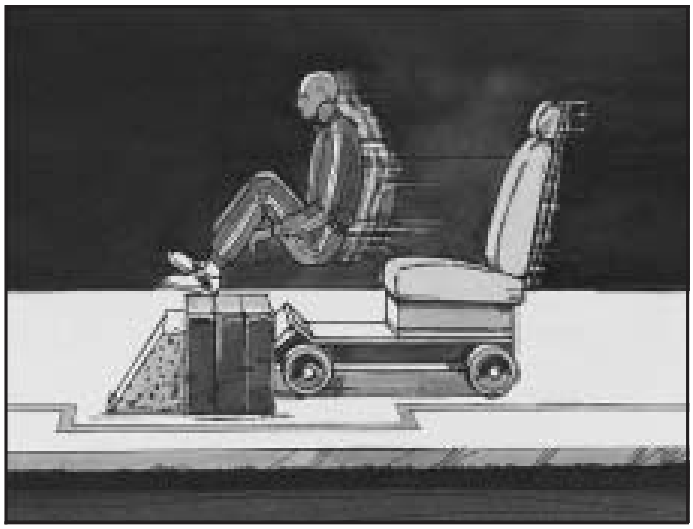


Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.



Put someone on it.

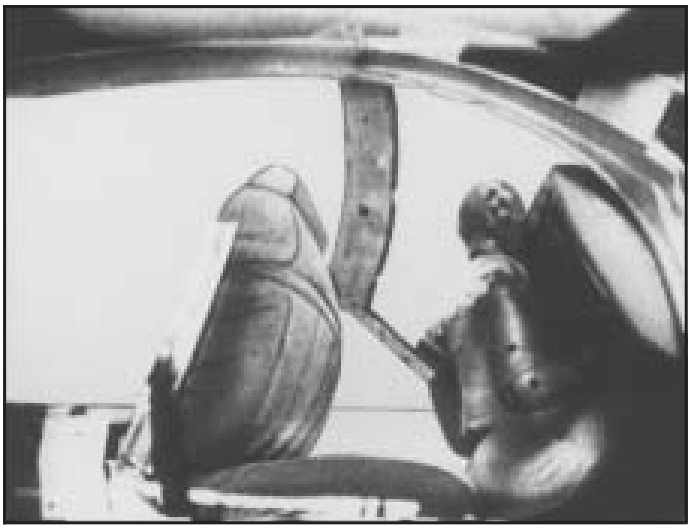
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



or the instrument panel...

or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted. And you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in a crash — even one that is not your fault — you and your passenger(s) can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

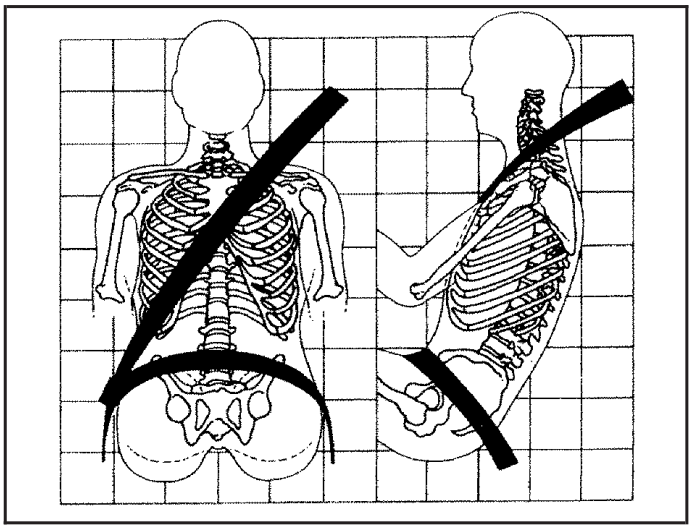
This section is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-52* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-55*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Occupants who are not buckled up can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

First, before you or your passenger(s) wear a safety belt, there is important information you should know.

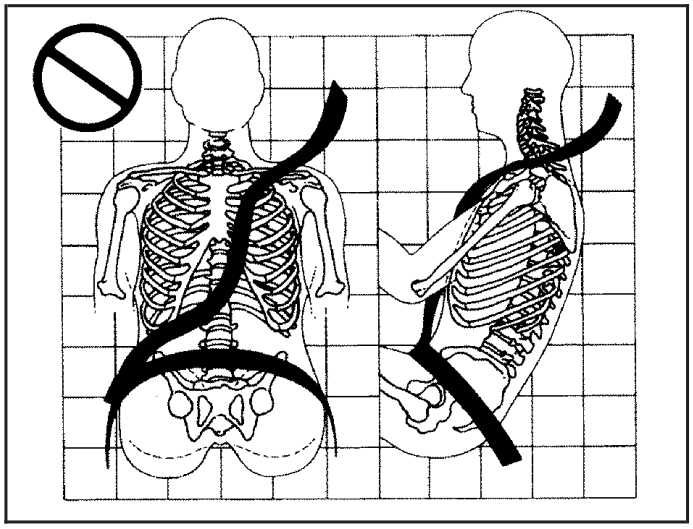


Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you. The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



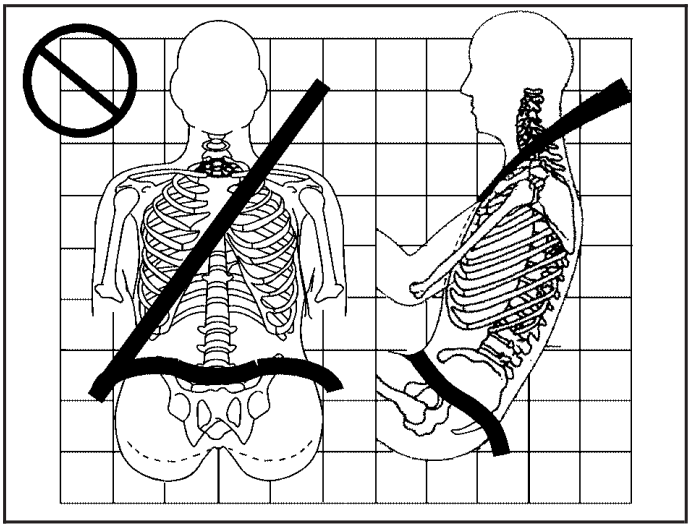
A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit snugly against your body.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



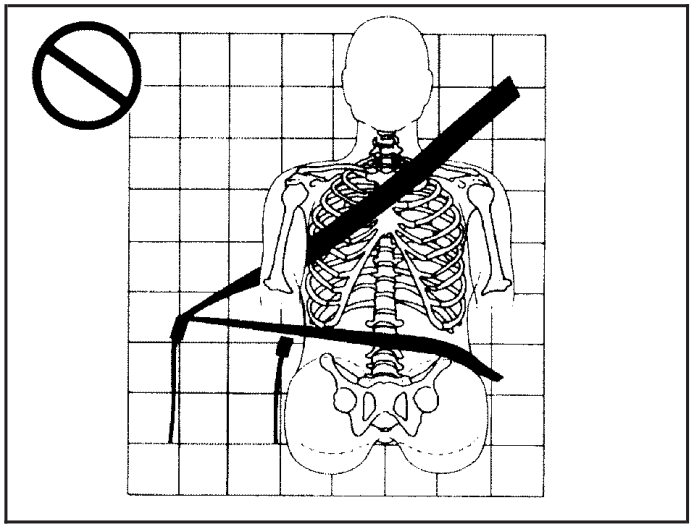
A: The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



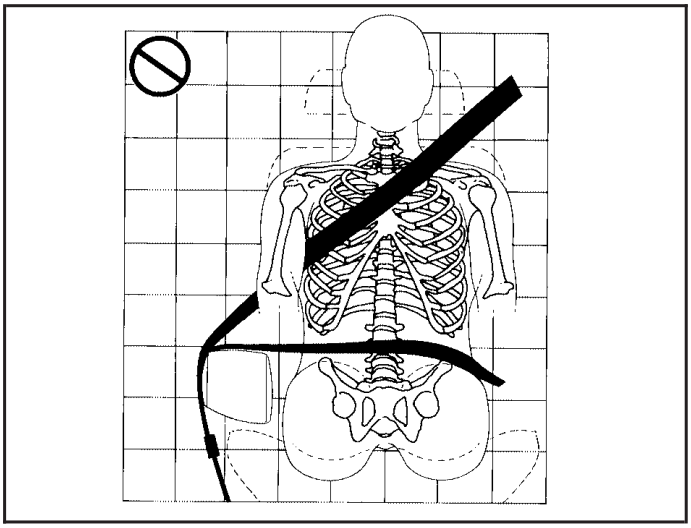
A: The belt is buckled in the wrong buckle.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not on the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



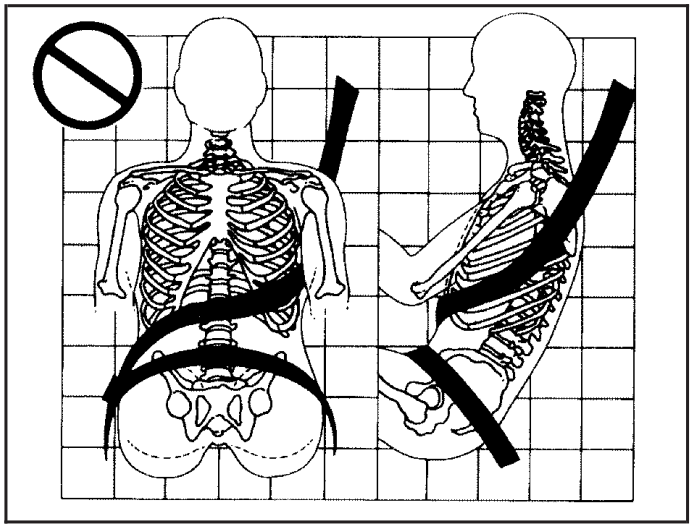
A: The belt is over an armrest.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied on the abdomen, not on the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



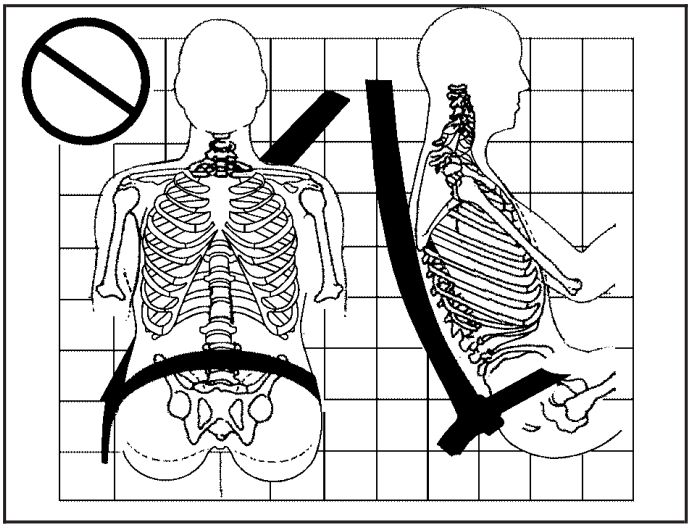
A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



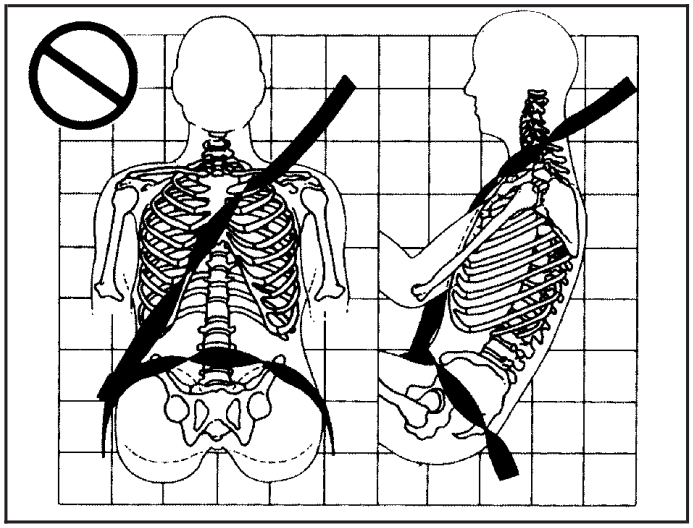
A: The belt is behind the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, you would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. Your body could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. You might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer/retailer to fix it.

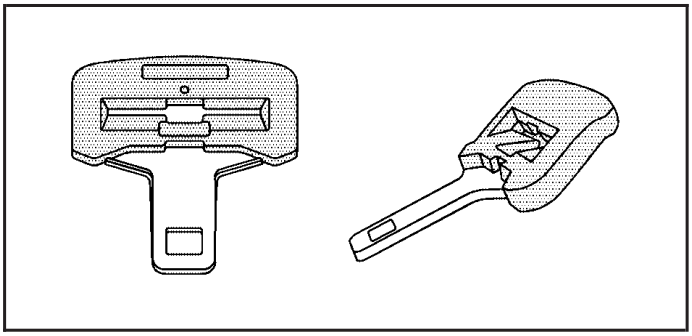
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lap-Shoulder Belt

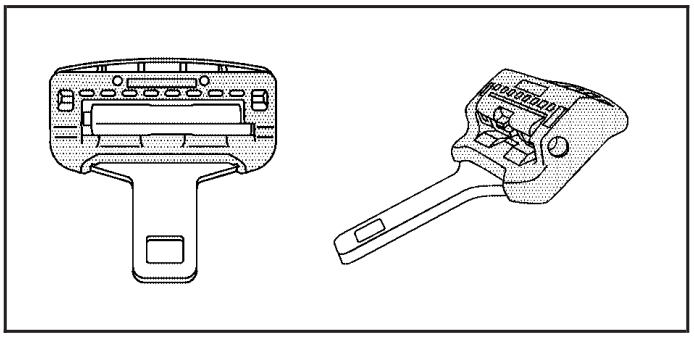
All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt except for the center front passenger position, if equipped, which has a lap belt. See *Lap Belt on page 1-50* for more information.

The lap-shoulder belts for the first and second row seating positions are equipped with free-falling latch plates. If the vehicle has a third row, the lap-shoulder belts have either free-falling or cinching latch plates.

Use the following pictures to determine the latch plate style:



Free-Falling Latch Plate



Cinching Latch Plate

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

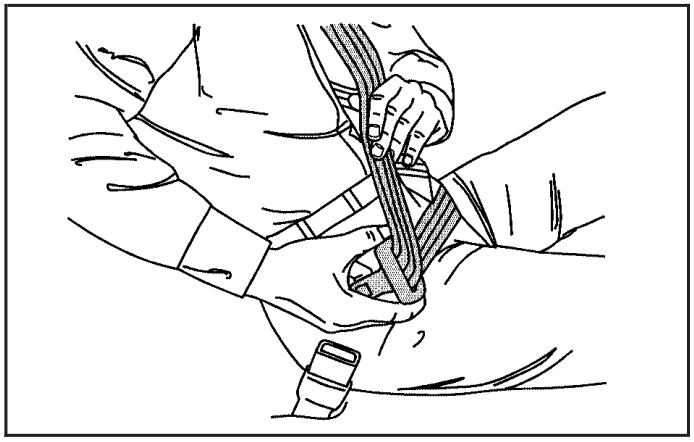
1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

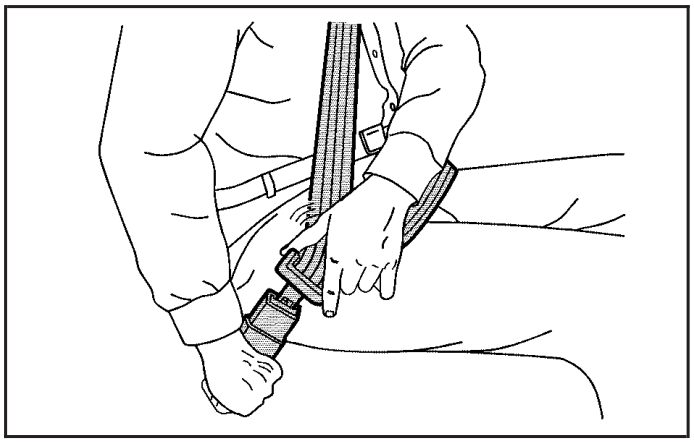
   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt with a free-falling latch plate is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engaging the child restraint locking feature in the right front seating position may affect the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87* for more information.



If the belt stops before it reaches the buckle, for lap-shoulder belts with cinching latch plates, tilt the latch plate and keep pulling the safety belt until it can be buckled.



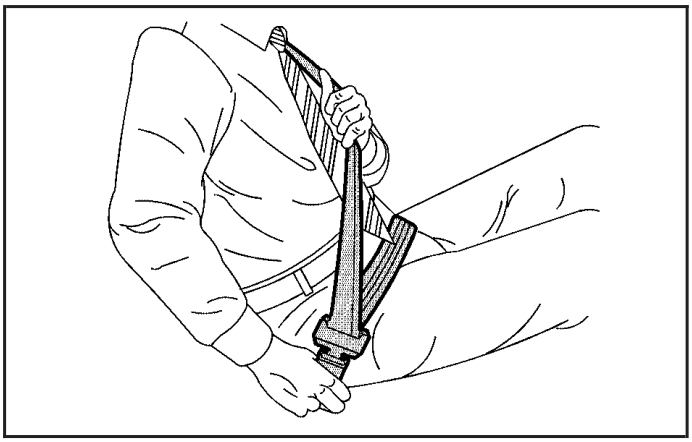
3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. If you find that the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, see if you are using the correct buckle.

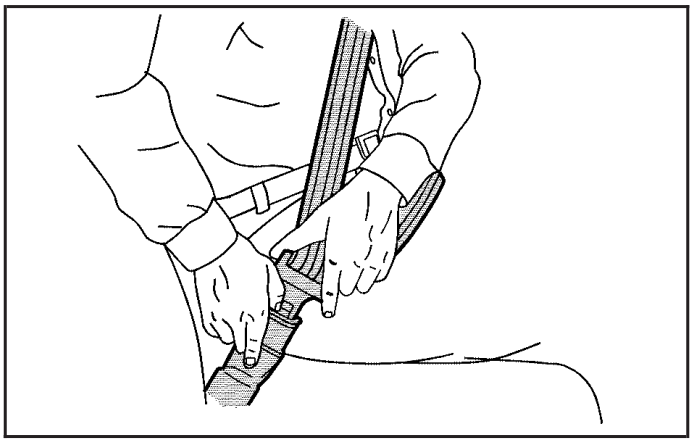
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-51*.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See "Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment" later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.

To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

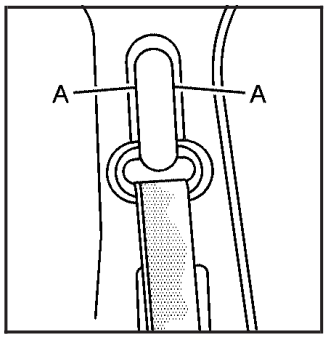
Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the belt and the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and right front passenger positions.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centered on the shoulder. The belt should be away from the face and neck, but not falling off the shoulder. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.



Squeeze the buttons (A) on the sides of the height adjuster and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

The adjuster can be moved up just by pushing up on the shoulder belt guide.

After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without squeezing the buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And, if the vehicle has side impact airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

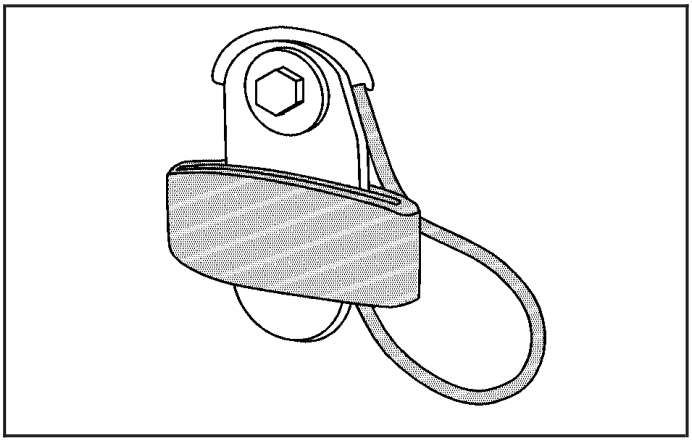
Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, they will need to be replaced, and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system. See *Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash on page 1-96*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

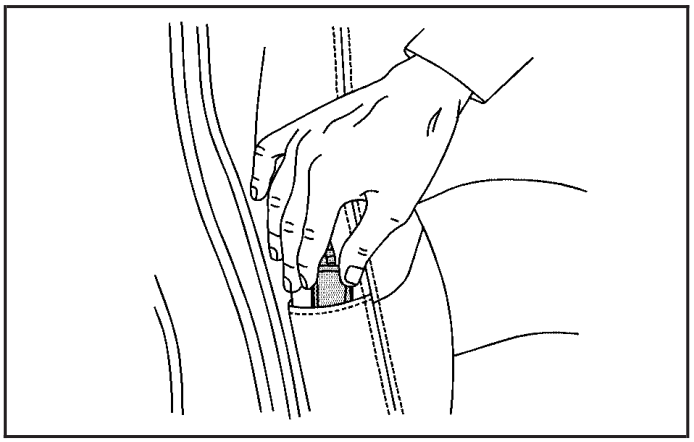
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

There is one guide for each outside passenger position in the second row seat and the third row, if the vehicle has one. Here is how to install a comfort guide to the safety belt:



Second Row

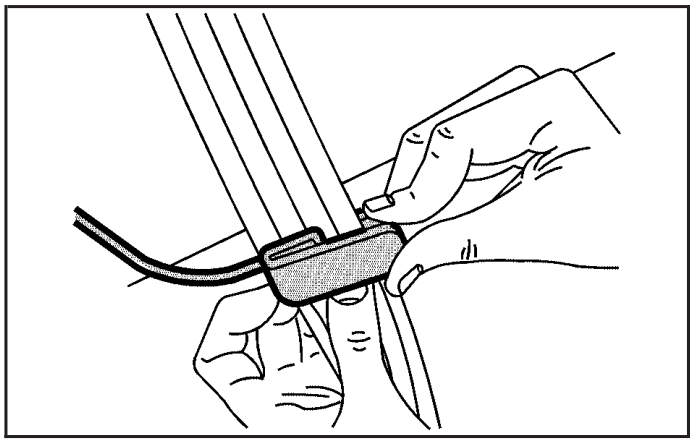
1. For the second row, remove the guide from its storage clip on the interior body.



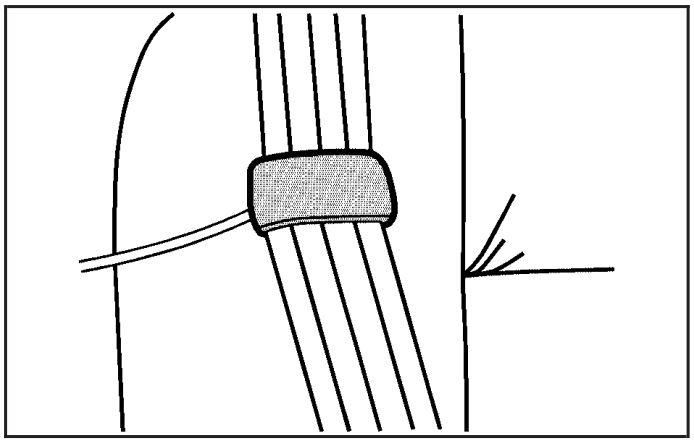
Third Row

If your vehicle has a third row, remove the guide from its storage pocket on the side of the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.

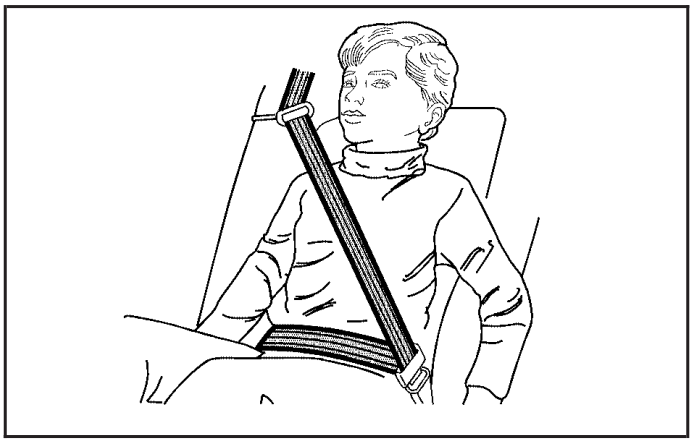


3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



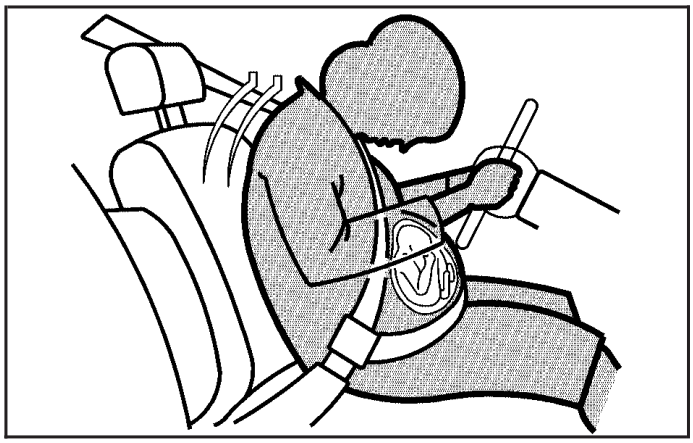
4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the safety belt can be removed from the guide. Slide the guide into its storage clip on the interior body or storage pocket on the side of the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



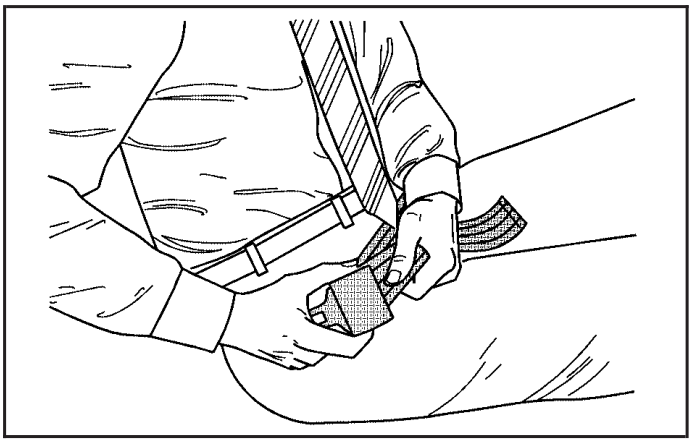
A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Lap Belt

This part is only for the lap belt. To learn how to wear a lap-shoulder belt, see *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-43*.

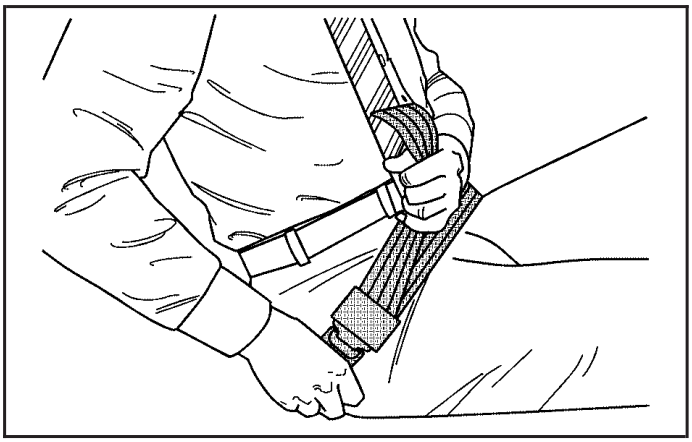
You vehicle may have a center seating position. When you sit in the center front seating position, you have a lap safety belt, which has no retractor.



To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.

Buckle, position and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug.

If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-51*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

If you find that the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, see if you are using the correct buckle. Be sure that the latch plate clicks when inserted into the buckle.

Safety Belt Extender

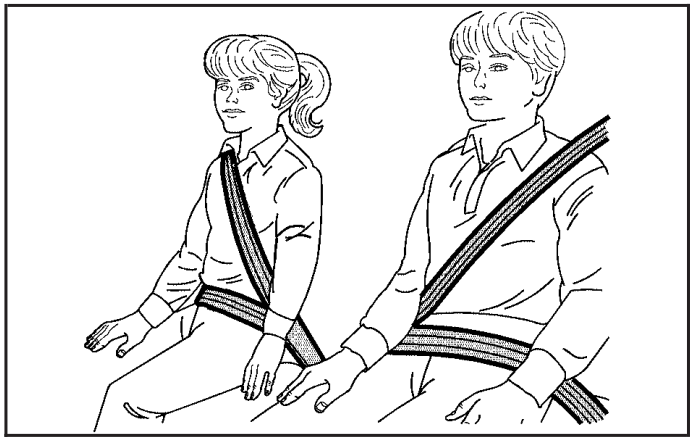
If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer/retailer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat, state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the below fit test:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-43* for more information. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for length of trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

If you have the choice, a child should sit in a position with a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-43*.

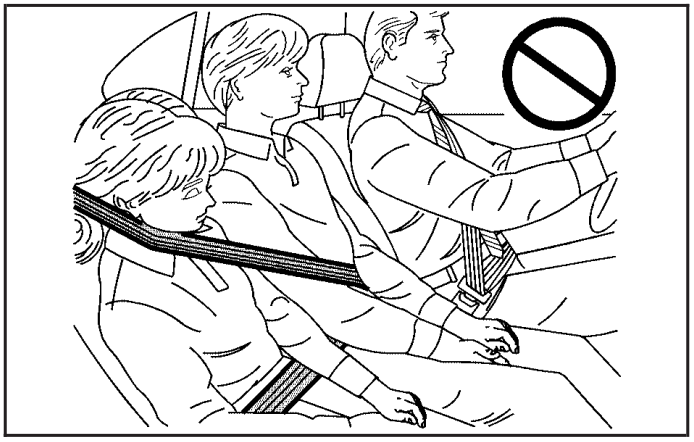
According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Never allow two children to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt can not properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

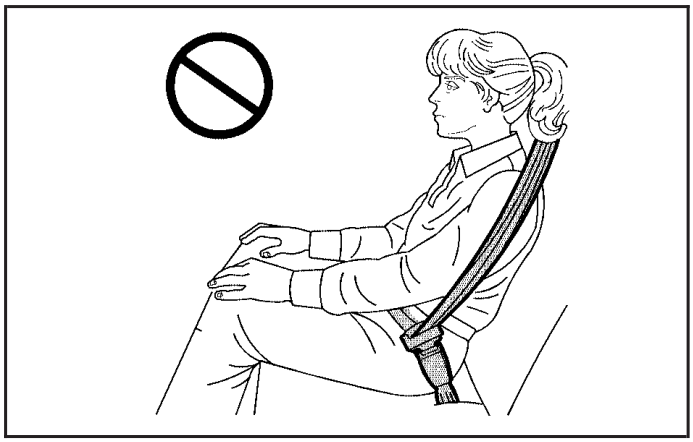


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

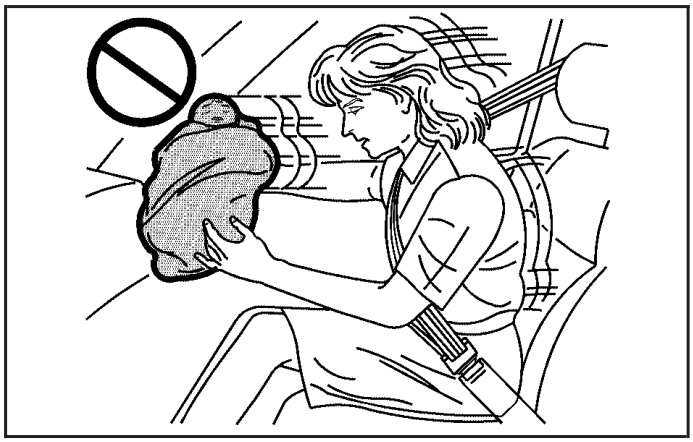
Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

⚠ CAUTION:

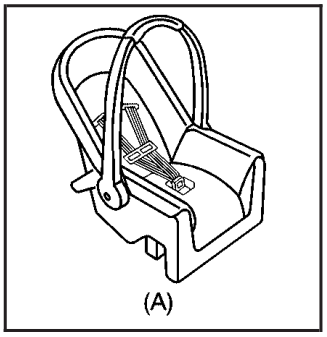
To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. This is because an infant's neck is not fully developed and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing child restraint settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

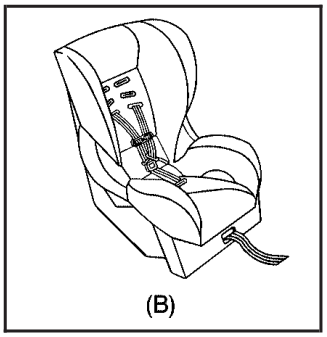
A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems


(A)

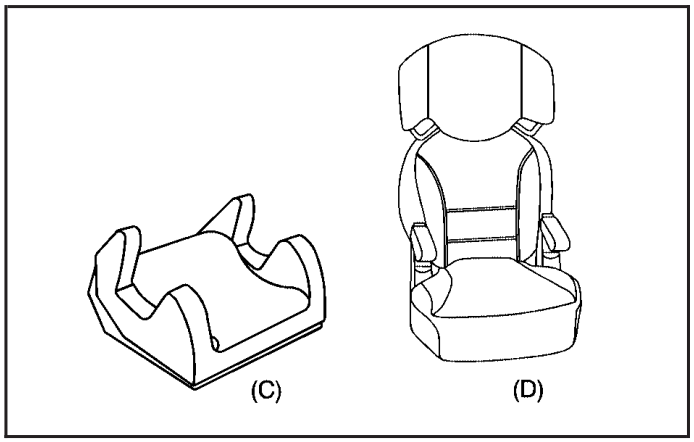
A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.


(B)

A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A booster seat (C-D) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-63* for more information. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

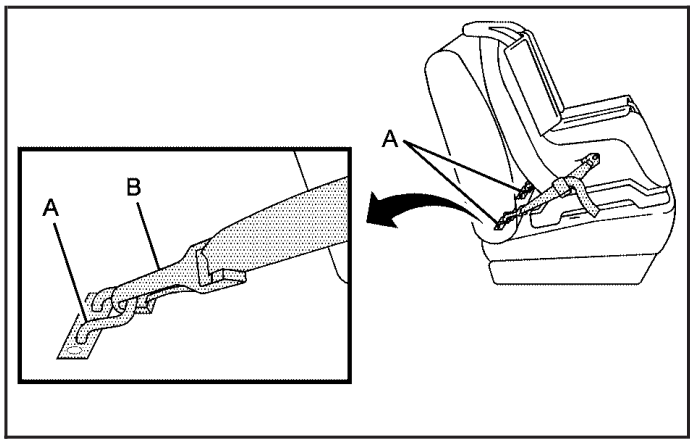
Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be attached using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

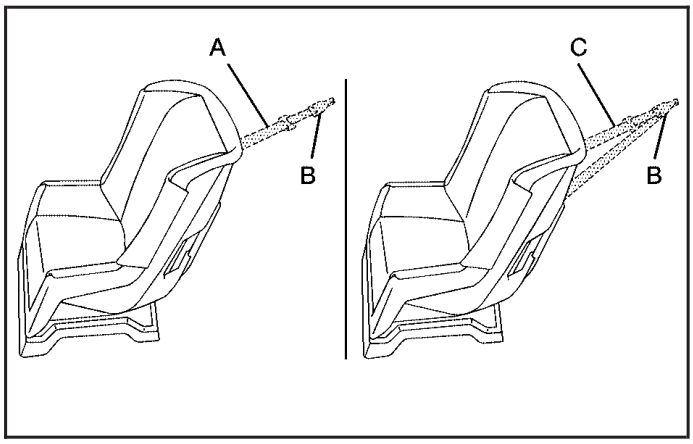
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor



A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

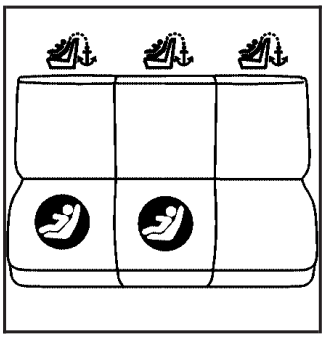
Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Some child restraints with top tethers are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

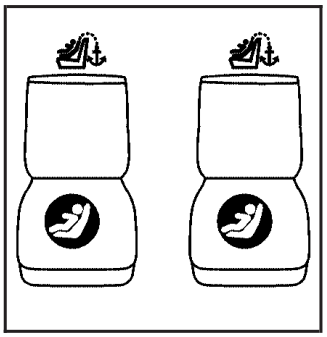
Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Second Row — 60/40

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

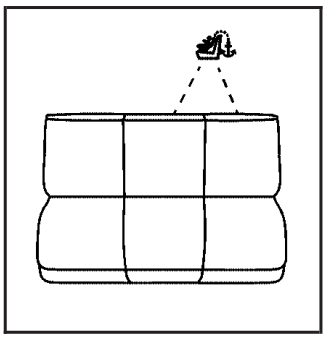
(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.



Second Row — Bucket

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.



Third Row — Three Passenger

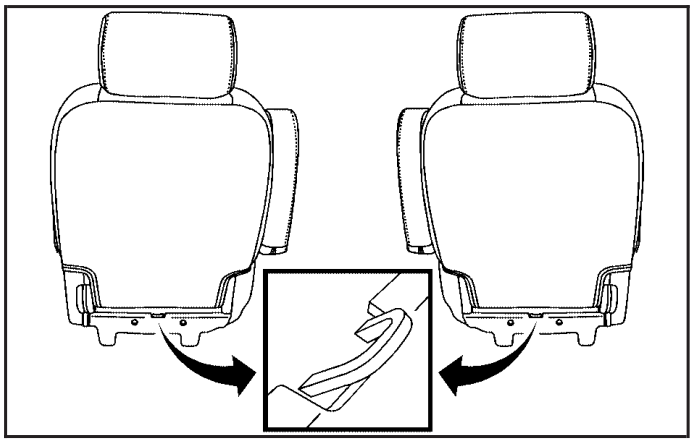
(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors. There is one top tether anchor that can be used for either the third row center or driver side seating position but not both at the same time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For models with a three passenger third row seat, see the information following for installing a child restraint with a top tether in the third row, if your vehicle has one. Never install two top tethers using the same top tether anchor.

For models with 60/40 second row seating, the rear right side passenger and center seating positions have exposed metal anchors located in the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.

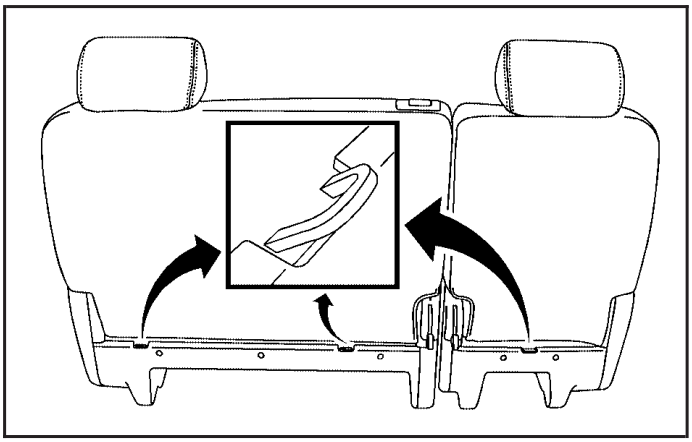
For models with second row bucket seats, both rear seating positions have exposed metal anchors located in the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.



Second Row Seat — Bucket

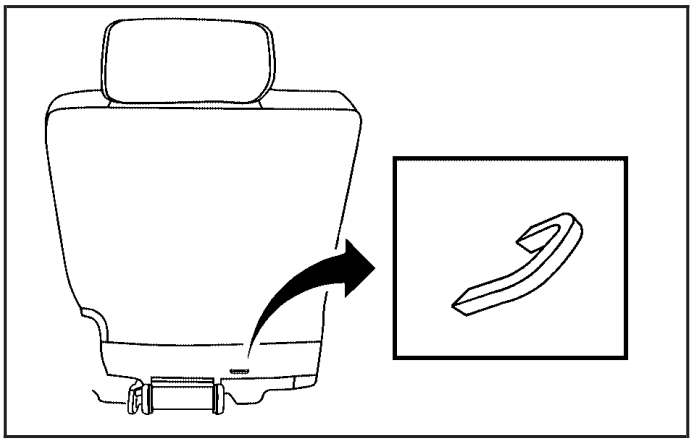
For models with bucket second row seating, the top tether anchors are located at the bottom rear of the seat cushion for each seating position in the second row. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Second Row Seat — 60/40

For models with 60/40 second row seating, the top tether anchors are located at the bottom rear of the seat cushion for each seating position in the second row. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.



Third Row Seat — Three Passenger

For vehicles with a three passenger third row seat, there is one top tether anchor located at the bottom rear of the seat cushion that can be used for either the third row center or driver side seating position. Never install two top tethers using the same top tether anchor.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-61* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

⚠ CAUTION:

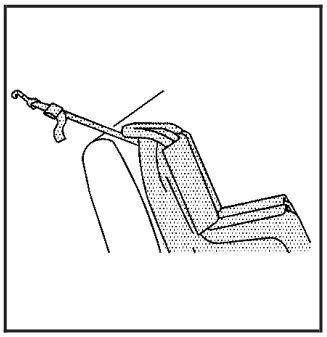
Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.**

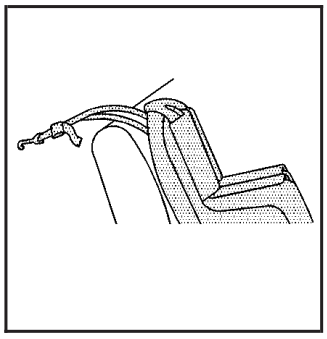
Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if the vehicle has one. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   2.2. Route, attach and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:

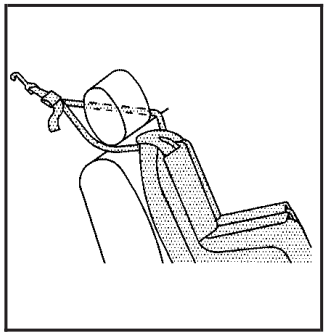


If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.

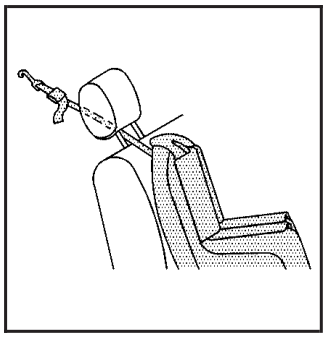
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-63* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-63* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

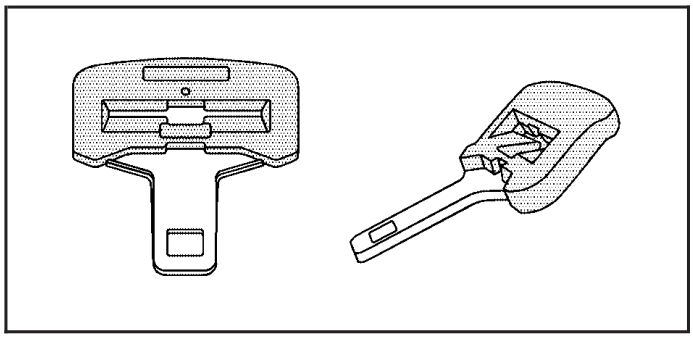
If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-61*.

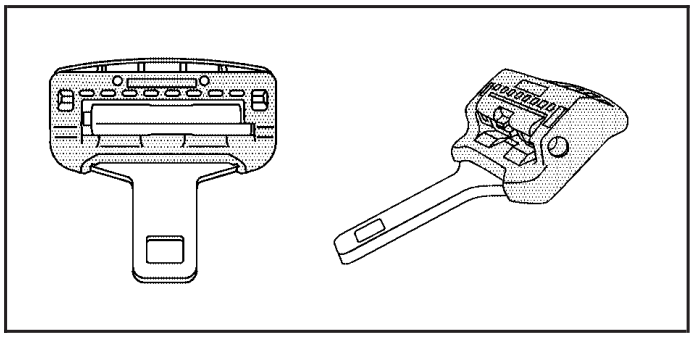
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle's lap-shoulder belts for the first and second row seating positions are equipped with free-falling latch plates. If the vehicle has a third row, the lap-shoulder belts have either free-falling or cinching latch plates.

Use the following pictures to determine the latch plate style:



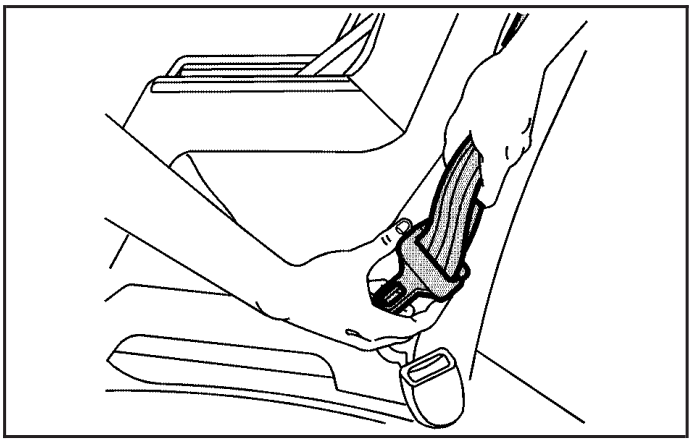
Free-Falling Latch Plate



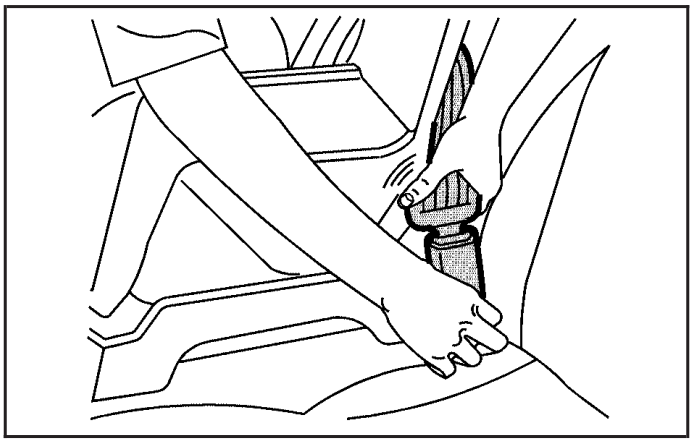
Cinching Latch Plate

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



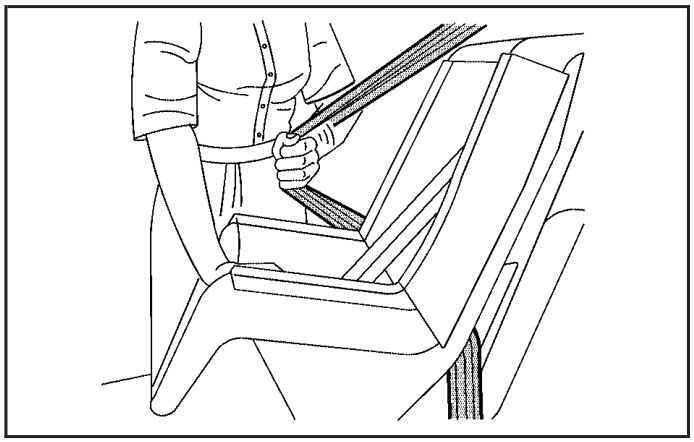
For third row seating positions, with cinching latch plates, tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.



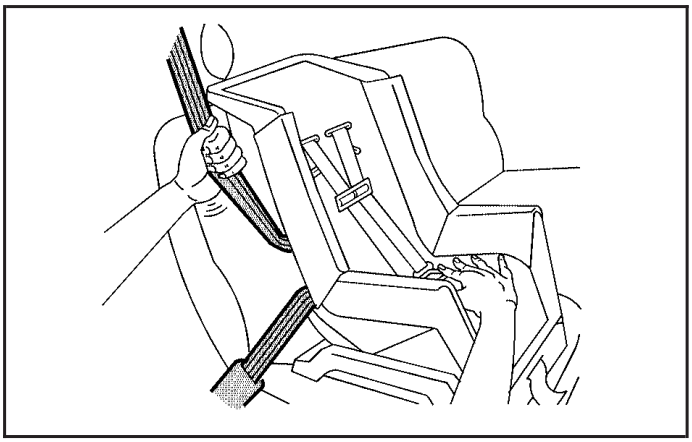
3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. For passenger seating positions with a lap-shoulder belt and a free-falling latch plate, pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When installing a child restraint using a lap-shoulder belt and a cinching latch plate, skip Step 4 and proceed to Step 5.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-63* for more information.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-61*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-37* for more information, including important safety information.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-63* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-63* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

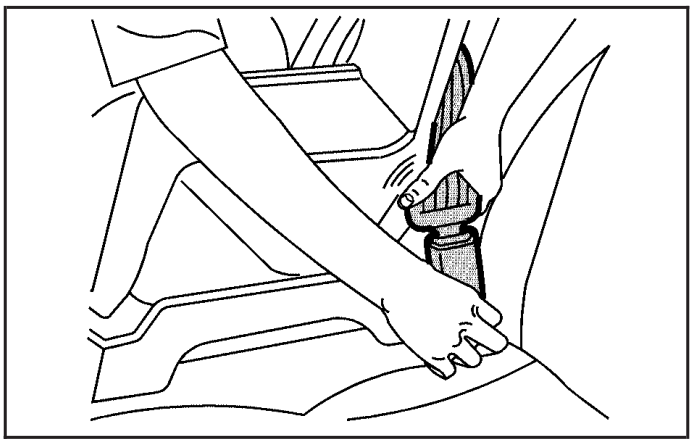
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when the vehicle is started. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-37*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

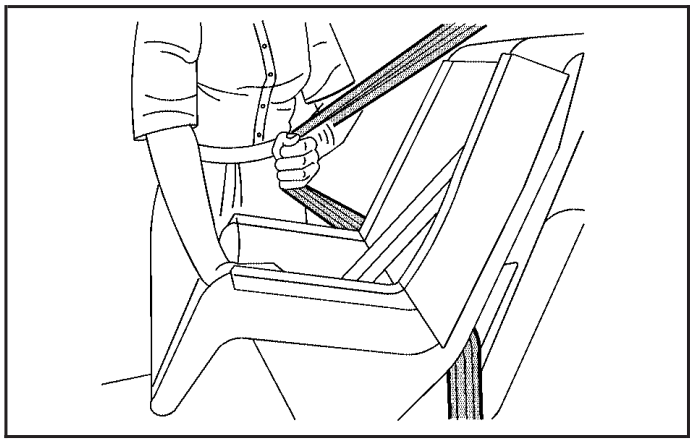
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



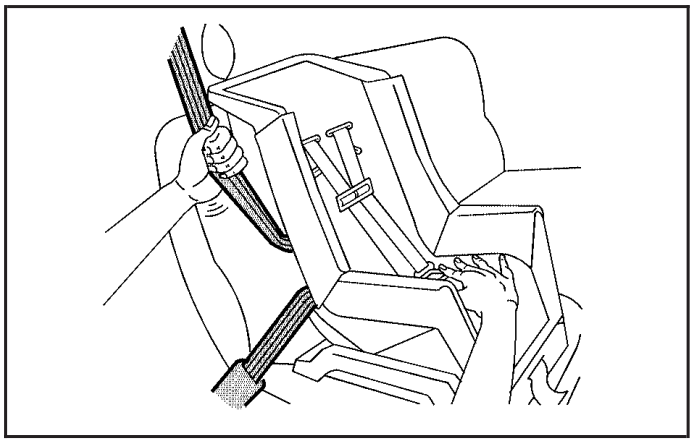
4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the airbag is off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint” under *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87* for more information.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the right front passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the right front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the right front passenger.

The vehicle may have the following airbags:

- If your vehicle has a third row seat, it will have third row roof-rail airbags.

All of the airbags in your vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the right front passenger.

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the headliner or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today’s airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are your only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-84*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are "supplemental restraints" to the safety belts. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

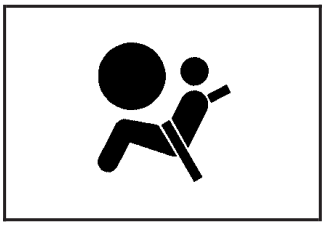
Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to the airbag, as you would be if you were sitting on the edge of your seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with roof-rail airbags.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 1-52* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-55*.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-36* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver's frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The right front passenger's frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, right front passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

If your vehicle has roof-rail airbags and a third row passenger seat, the airbags are located in the ceiling above the rear windows for the outboard passenger positions in the third row.

⚠ CAUTION:

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or right front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether your frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, your vehicle has dual-stage frontal airbags. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity. Your vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

Your vehicle has a seat position sensor which enables the sensing system to monitor the position of the driver's seat. The seat position sensor provides information that is used to determine if the airbags should deploy at a reduced level or at full deployment.

Your vehicle has roof-rail airbags. See *Airbag System on page 1-79*. Roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags will deploy when either side of the vehicle is struck, or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact. In a rollover event, roof-rail airbag deployment is determined by the direction of the roll.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first, second, and third rows, if equipped with a third row seat. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-84* for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they deploy. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-85*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn the interior lamps on, and turn the hazard warning flashers on when the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn the interior lamps off, and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features.

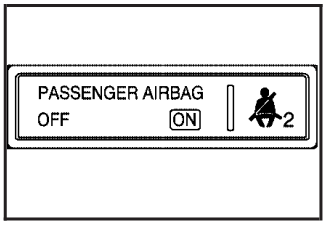
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

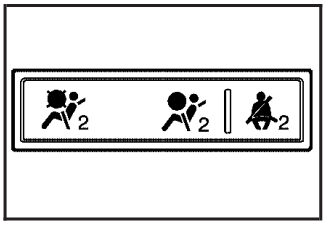
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 8-16* and *Event Data Recorders on page 8-17*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer/retailer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.



United States



Canada

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check. If you are using remote start to start the vehicle from a distance, if equipped, you may not see the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or OFF, or the symbol for on or off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-37*.

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver airbag and the roof-rail airbags (if equipped) are not affected by the passenger sensing system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the right front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-37*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on (may inflate) the right front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-36* for more information, including important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-76*.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 1-2*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

   The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbag for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's seating posture and body build. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Off Indicator is Lit for an Adult-Size Occupant

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat.

If this happens, use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the right front passenger frontal airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

If the shoulder portion of the belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature will be engaged. This may unintentionally cause the passenger sensing system to turn the airbag off for some adult size occupants. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-94* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired remove the object from the seat.

⚠ CAUTION:

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 8-15*.

⚠ CAUTION:

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to or change about the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, rollover sensor module, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87*.

If you have any questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 8-2*.

If the vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tires and Wheels on page 6-73* for additional important information.

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?

A: If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 8-2*.

In addition, your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module and airbag wiring.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Restraint System Check

Checking the Restraint Systems

Safety Belts

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly.

Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer/retailer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-35* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Care of Safety Belts on page 6-100*.

Airbags

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-36* for more information.

Notice: **If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-85*. See your dealer/retailer for service.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

⚠ CAUTION:

A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has been in a crash, do you need new safety belts or LATCH system (if equipped) parts?

After a very minor crash, nothing may be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer/retailer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt or LATCH system (if equipped), was not being used at the time of the crash.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, if the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started, or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-36*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 2 Features and Controls

Keys 2-3
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-5
- Remote Vehicle Start 2-8

Doors and Locks 2-10
- Door Locks 2-10
- Power Door Locks 2-10
- Delayed Locking 2-10
- Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
- Rear Door Security Locks 2-11
- Lockout Protection 2-12
- Liftgate/Liftglass 2-12
- Power Liftgate 2-14
- Power Assist Steps 2-16

Windows 2-17
- Power Windows 2-18
- Sun Visors 2-20

Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-21
- Content Theft-Deterrent 2-21
- PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-22
- PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation 2-23

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-24
- New Vehicle Break-In 2-24
- Ignition Positions 2-25
- Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-26
- Starting the Engine 2-26
- Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 2-27
- Engine Coolant Heater 2-28
- Automatic Transmission Operation 2-29
- Tow/Haul Mode 2-33
- Parking Brake 2-34
- Shifting Into Park 2-36
- Shifting Out of Park 2-37
- Parking Over Things That Burn 2-38
- Engine Exhaust 2-38
- Running the Vehicle While Parked 2-39

Mirrors 2-40
- Manual Rearview Mirror 2-40
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 2-40
- Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors 2-40
- Park Tilt Mirrors 2-41
- Outside Convex Mirror 2-41
- Outside Heated Mirrors 2-42

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 2 Features and Controls

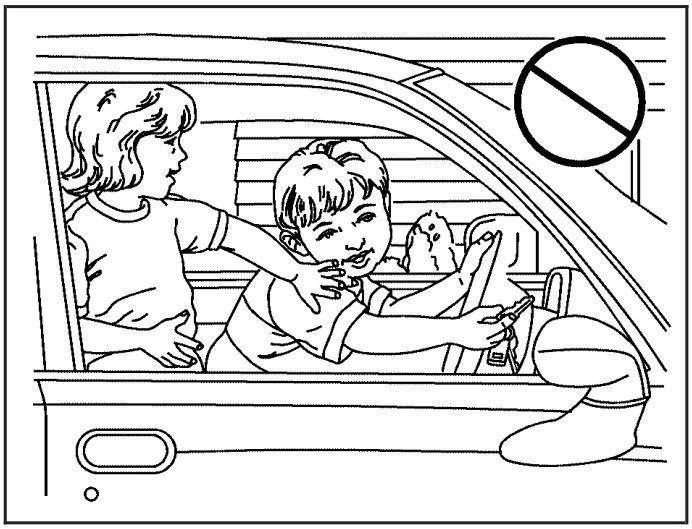
Object Detection Systems 2-42
Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) 2-42
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 2-44
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 2-48
OnStar® System 2-52
Universal Home Remote System 2-55
Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED) 2-55
Storage Areas 2-62
Glove Box 2-62
Cupholders 2-62
Center Console Storage 2-63
Assist Handles 2-63
Garment Hooks 2-63
Luggage Carrier 2-64
Rear Storage Area 2-65
Rear Seat Armrest 2-65
Sunroof 2-65

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.



The key can be used for the ignition and door locks.

See your dealer/retailer if a replacement key or additional key is needed.

Notice: **If you ever lock your keys in the vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.**

If you are locked out of your vehicle, contact Roadside Service. See *Roadside Service on page 8-7* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range, try this:

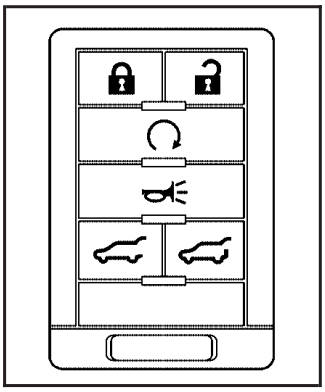
- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle. Stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer/retailer or a qualified technician for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions work up to 195 feet (60 m) away from the vehicle.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4*.



With Remote Start and Power Liftgate and Liftglass (Without Remote Start Similar)

The following functions may be available if this vehicle has the RKE system:

(Lock): Press to lock all the doors.

If enabled through the Driver Information Center (DIC), the turn signal lamps flash once to indicate locking has occurred. If enabled through the DIC, the horn chirps when is pressed again within three seconds. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for additional information.

Pressing arms the content theft-deterrent system. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-21*.

(Unlock): Press once to unlock only the driver door. If is pressed again within three seconds, all remaining doors unlock. The interior lamps may come on and stay on for 20 seconds or until the ignition is turned on.

If enabled through the DIC, the turn signal lamps flash twice to indicate unlocking has occurred. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65*. If enabled through the DIC, the exterior lights turn on briefly if it is dark enough outside. See “APPROACH LIGHTING” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pressing on the RKE transmitter disarms the content theft-deterrent system. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-21*.

(Remote Vehicle Start): For vehicles with this feature, press to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-8* for additional information.

(Power Liftgate): Press and hold to open and close the liftgate. The taillamps flash and a chime sounds to indicate when the liftgate is opening and closing.

(Liftglass): Press and hold to open the liftglass.

(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and release to locate the vehicle. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds three times.

Press and hold for more than two seconds to activate the panic alarm. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds repeatedly for 30 seconds. The alarm turns off when the ignition is moved to ON/RUN or is pressed again. The ignition must be in LOCK/OFF for the panic alarm to work.

The vehicle comes with two transmitters. Each transmitter will have a number on top of it, “1” or “2”. These numbers correspond to the driver of the vehicle. For example, the memory seat position for driver 1 will be recalled when using the transmitter labeled “1”, if enabled through the DIC. See *Memory Features on page 1-7* and *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

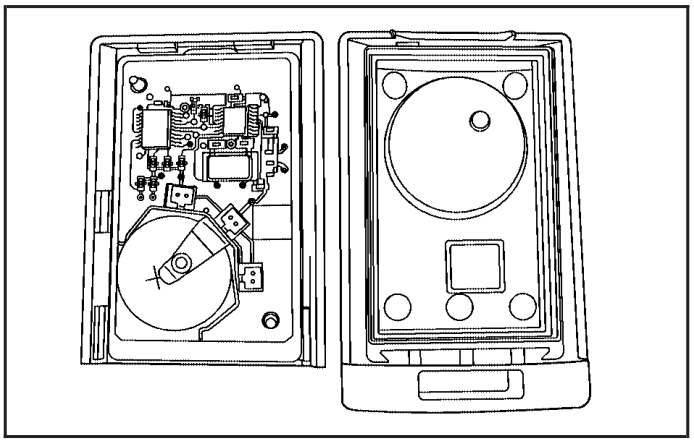
Only RKE transmitters programmed to this vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer/retailer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it. See “Relearn Remote Key” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for instructions on how to match RKE transmitters to the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC. See “REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY” under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* for additional information.

Notice: **When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.**



To replace the battery:

1. Separate the transmitter with a flat, thin object inserted into the notch, located above the metal base.
2. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
3. Insert the new battery, positive side facing up. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
4. Snap the transmitter back together.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Vehicle Start

This feature allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle. It may also start up the vehicle's heating or air conditioning systems and rear window defogger. Normal operation of the system will return after the key is turned to the ON/RUN position.

During a remote start, the climate control system will default to a heating or cooling mode depending on the outside temperatures.

During a remote start, if your vehicle has an automatic climate control system and heated seats, the heated seats will turn on during colder outside temperatures and will shut off when the key is turned to ON/RUN. If your vehicle does not have an automatic climate control system, during remote start, you will need to manually turn the heated seats on and off. See *Heated Seats on page 1-5* for additional information.

Laws in some communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using the remote start to have the vehicle in view when doing so. Check local regulations for any requirements on remote starting of vehicles.

Do not use the remote start feature if your vehicle is low on fuel. Your vehicle may run out of fuel.

If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the RKE transmitter functions will have an increased range of operation. However, the range may be less while the vehicle is running.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4* for additional information.

(Remote Start): This button will be on the RKE transmitter if you have remote start.

To start the vehicle using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release the transmitter's lock button. The vehicle's doors will lock. Immediately press and hold the transmitter's remote start button until the turn signal lights flash. If you cannot see the vehicle's lights, press and hold the remote start button for two to four seconds. Pressing the remote start button again after the vehicle has started will turn the engine off.

   When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on while the vehicle is running.

   If the vehicle is left running it will automatically shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension has been done.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. If it is the first remote start since the vehicle has been driven, repeat these steps, while the engine is still running, to extend the engine running time by 10 minutes. Remote start can be extended one time.

After entering the vehicle during a remote start, insert and turn the key to ON/RUN to drive the vehicle.

To manually shut off a remote start, do any of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press the remote start button until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the ignition switch on and then off.

The vehicle can be remote started two separate times between driving sequences. The engine will run for 10 minutes after each remote start.

Or, you can extend the engine run time by another 10 minutes within the first 10 minute remote start time frame, and before the engine stops.

For example, if the lock button and then the remote start buttons are pressed again after the vehicle has been running for five minutes, 10 minutes are added, allowing the engine to run for 15 minutes.

The additional ten minutes are considered a second remote vehicle start.

After your vehicles engine has been started two times using the remote vehicle start button, or a single remote start with one time extension, the vehicle must be started with the key.

After the key is removed from the ignition, the vehicle can be remote started again.

The vehicle cannot be remote started if the key is in the ignition, the hood is not closed, or if there is an emission control system malfunction and the check engine light comes on.

Also, the engine will turn off during a remote vehicle start if the coolant temperature gets too high or if the oil pressure gets low.

Vehicles that have the remote vehicle start feature are shipped from the factory with the remote vehicle start system enabled. The system may be enabled or disabled through the DIC. See “REMOTE START” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Doors and Locks

Door Locks

⚠ CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.

There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle.

From the outside, use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the key in the driver's door.

From the inside, use the power door locks or manual door locks. To lock or unlock the door with the manual locks, push down or pull up on the manual lock knob.

Power Door Locks

On vehicles with power door locks, the switches are located on the front doors.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the doors.

(Lock): Remove the key from the ignition and press to lock the doors.

Delayed Locking

When locking the doors with the power lock switch and a door or the liftgate is open, the doors will lock five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use.

Pressing the power lock switch twice or the lock button on the RKE transmitter twice will override the delayed locking feature and immediately lock all the doors.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

You can program this feature using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See DELAY DOOR LOCK under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65*.

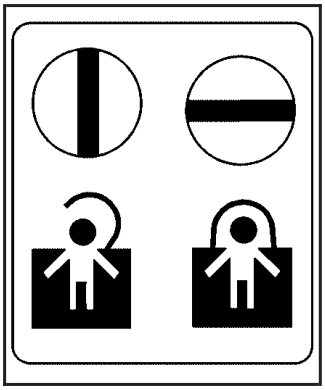
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Programmable Automatic Door Locks

Vehicles with an automatic lock/unlock feature enable you to program the vehicle's power door locks. You can program this feature through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information on DIC programming.

Rear Door Security Locks

Your vehicle has rear door security locks. These prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from the inside.



The rear door security locks are located on the inside edge of each rear door.

The rear doors must be open to access them. The label showing lock and unlock positions is located near the lock.

To set the locks, do the following:

1. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the horizontal position.
2. Close the door.

When you want to open a rear door when the security lock is on, do the following:

1. Unlock the door by lifting the rear door manual lock, using the power door lock switch, or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, if the vehicle has one.
2. Open the door from the outside.

To cancel the rear door security lock, do the following:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the vertical position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lockout Protection

This feature protects you from locking the key in the vehicle when the key is in the ignition and a front door is open.

If the driver's side power door lock switch is pressed when the driver's door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the driver's door will unlock.

If the passenger's side power door lock switch is pressed when the front passenger's door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the front passenger's door will unlock.

Liftgate/Liftglass

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to drive with the liftglass or liftgate open because carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If you must drive with the liftglass or liftgate open, or if electrical wiring or other cable connections must pass through the seal between the body and the liftglass or liftgate:

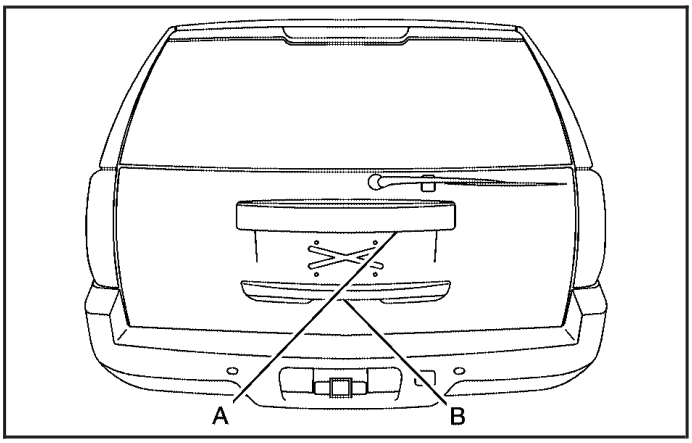
- Make sure all other windows are shut.
- Turn the fan on your heating or cooling system to its highest speed with the recirculation mode off. That will force outside air into your vehicle. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-27*.
- If you have air outlets on or under the instrument panel, open them all the way.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-38*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

See *Power Liftgate on page 2-14* for more information on how to use the power liftgate.

To unlock the liftgate, use the power door lock switch or press the door unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter twice. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*.



On vehicles with a liftglass, press the button on the underside of the license pocket applique (A) to open it. The liftglass can also be opened by pressing the liftglass release button on the RKE.

To open the entire liftgate, press the power liftgate release button on the RKE or in the vehicle. See *Power Liftgate on page 2-14*. You can also press the touchpad on the underside of the liftgate handle (B). The liftgate will open after a slight delay. The vehicle must be in PARK (P) to open the liftgate. To close the liftgate, use the pull cup or pull strap as an aid.

The liftgate or liftglass cannot be opened if the rear wipers are in motion. Attempting to open the liftgate or liftglass while the rear wipers are in motion will cause the release of the liftglass or liftgate to delay until the wipers are parked off the liftglass.

Both the liftglass and liftgate have an electric latch. If the battery is disconnected or has low voltage, the liftglass and liftgate will not open. The liftglass and liftgate will resume operation when the battery is reconnected and charged.

If the battery is properly connected and has adequate voltage, and the liftgate or liftglass still will not function, your vehicle should be taken to a dealership for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Liftgate

Power Liftgate Operation

⚠ CAUTION:

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate, trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate, or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-38*.

On vehicles with a power liftgate the button is located on the overhead console.

The vehicle must be in PARK (P) to use the power liftgate feature.

: Press the top of the button to open or close the power liftgate.

OFF: Press the bottom of the button for manual operation of the power liftgate.

The taillamps will flash and a chime will sound when the power liftgate is moving.

⚠ CAUTION:

You or others could be injured if caught in the path of the power liftgate. Make sure there is no one in the way of the liftgate as it is opening and closing.

Notice: **If you open the liftgate without checking for overhead obstructions such as a garage door, you could damage the liftgate or the liftgate glass. Always check to make sure the area above and behind the liftgate is clear before opening it.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The power liftgate can be power opened and closed in the following ways:

- Press and hold the power liftgate button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter until the liftgate starts moving. *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the overhead console.
- Pressing the touchpad switch on the outside liftgate handle.

Pressing the buttons, or touchpad switch a second time while the liftgate is moving reverses the direction.

: The liftgate can also be closed by pressing the power liftgate button next to the liftgate latch.

Press the button a second time during liftgate operation to reverse that operation.

The power liftgate may be temporarily disabled under extreme temperatures, or under low battery conditions. If this occurs, the liftgate can still be operated manually.

If you shift the transmission out of PARK (P) while the power function is in progress, the liftgate power function will continue to completion. If you shift the transmission out of PARK (P) and accelerate before the power liftgate latches closed, the liftgate may reverse to the open position. Cargo could fall out of the vehicle. Always make sure the power liftgate is closed and latched before you drive away.

If you power open the liftgate and the liftgate support struts have lost pressure, the lights will flash and a chime will sound. The liftgate will stay open temporarily, then slowly close. See your dealer/retailer for service before using the liftgate.

Obstacle Detection Features

If the liftgate encounters an obstacle during a power open or close cycle, a warning chime will sound and the liftgate will automatically reverse direction to the full closed or open position. After removing the obstruction, the power liftgate operation can be used again. If the liftgate encounters multiple obstacles on the same power cycle, the power function will deactivate, and you must manually open or close the liftgate. The REAR ACCESS OPEN warning message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) will indicate that the liftgate is open. After removing the obstructions, manually open the liftgate to the full open position or close the liftgate to the fully closed and latched position. The liftgate will now resume normal power operation.

Your vehicle has pinch sensors located on the side edges of the liftgate. If an object is caught between the liftgate and the body and presses against this sensor, the liftgate will reverse direction and open fully. The liftgate will remain open until it is activated again or closed manually. Do not force the liftgate open or closed during a power cycle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Operation of Power Liftgate

To change the liftgate to manual operation, press the switch on the overhead console to the OFF position.

With the power liftgate disabled and all of the doors unlocked, the liftgate can be manually opened and closed.

To open the liftgate, press the touchpad on the handle on the outside of the liftgate, and lift the gate open. To close the liftgate, use the pull cup to lower the liftgate and close. The liftgate latch will power close. Always close the liftgate before driving.

If the RKE button or the power close button on the liftgate is pressed while power operation is disabled, the lights will flash three times, but the liftgate will not move.

It is not recommended that you drive with the liftgate open, however, if you must drive with the liftgate open, the liftgate should be set to manual operation by pressing the OFF switch on the center console.

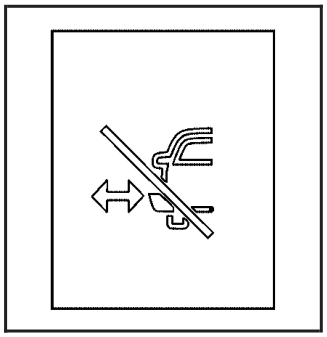
The liftgate has an electric latch. If the battery is disconnected or has low voltage, the liftgate will not open. The liftgate will resume operation when the battery is reconnected and charged.

If the battery is properly connected with adequate voltage, the switch is not disabled, and the liftgate still will not function, your vehicle should be taken to a dealer/ retailer for service.

Power Assist Steps

Your vehicle may have power assist steps.

The power assist steps automatically extend from beneath the vehicle on the side in which the door has been opened. Once the door is closed, the assist steps automatically move back under the vehicle after a brief delay. The vehicle must not be moving for the assist steps to extend or retract.



The switch used to disable the power assist steps is located on the center console below the climate control system.

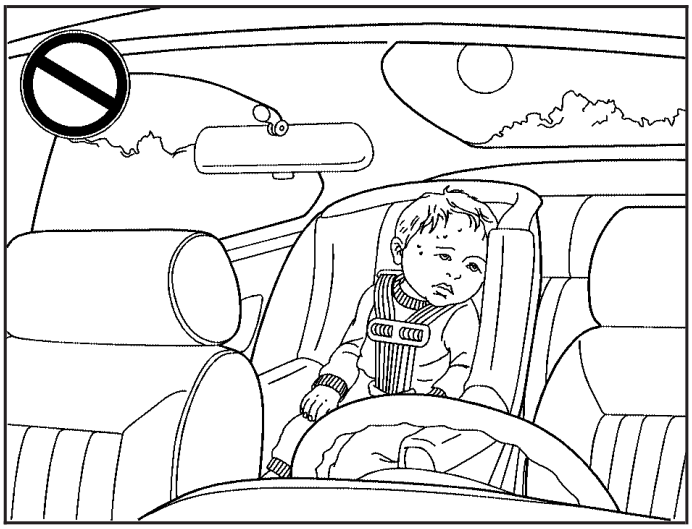
The assist steps cannot be disabled in the extended position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.



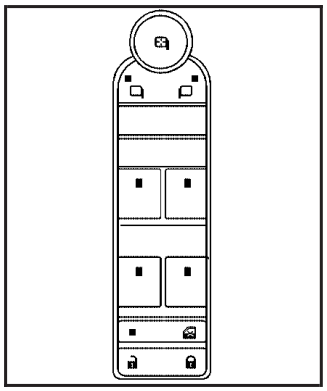
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the keys is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave keys in a vehicle with children.

When there are children in the rear seat use the window lockout button to prevent unintentional operation of the windows.



The power window switches are located on the driver door.

In addition, each door has a switch for its own window. The front power window switch operates with two positions for both up and down movement and the rear power window switch operates with one position for up and two positions for down movement. Press the switch to the first position to lower the window to the desired level. Pull the switch up to raise the window.

The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP) that allows you to use the power windows once the ignition has been turned off. For more information, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-26*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Express-Down/Up Windows

Windows with the express feature allow the windows to be raised and lowered all the way without holding the switch.

Press or pull the switch fully and release it to activate the express feature.

The express mode can be canceled at any time by briefly pressing or pulling the switch.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Feature

If any object is in the path of the window when the express-up is active, the window will stop at the obstruction and auto-reverse to a preset factory position. Weather conditions such as severe icing may also cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will return to normal operation once the obstruction or condition is removed.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Override

⚠ CAUTION:

If express override is activated, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before you use express override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is re-activated.

In this mode, the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Programming the Power Windows

If the battery on the vehicle has been recharged, disconnected, or is not working, you will need to reprogram each front power window for the express-up feature to work. Before reprogramming, replace or recharge the vehicle's battery.

To program each front window, follow these steps:

1. With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active, close all doors.
2. Press and hold the power window switch until the window is fully open.
3. Pull the power window switch up until the window is fully closed.
4. Continue holding the switch up for approximately two seconds after the window is completely closed.

The window is now reprogrammed. Repeat the process for the other windows.

Window Lockout

(Window Lockout): The rear window lockout button is located on the driver door near the window switches.

Press the right side of the button to disable the rear window controls. The light on the button will illuminate, indicating the feature is in use. The rear windows still can be raised or lowered using the driver window switches when the lockout feature is active.

To restore power to the rear windows, press the button again. The light on the button will go out.

Sun Visors

Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount and slide it along the rod from side-to-side to cover the driver or passenger side of the front window. Swing the sun visor to the side to cover the side window. It can be moved along the rod from side-to-side in this position also.

Lighted Visor Vanity Mirror

Your vehicle has lighted visor vanity mirrors on both the driver's and passenger's sun visors. Pull the sun visor down and lift the mirror cover to turn the lamps on.

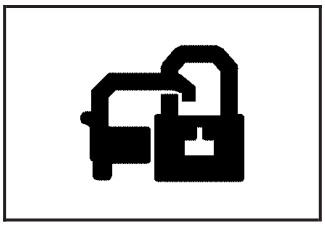
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. This vehicle has theft-deterrent features, however, they do not make it impossible to steal.

Content Theft-Deterrent

Your vehicle has a content theft-deterrent alarm system.



This is the security light.

To arm the theft-deterrent system:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the power door lock switch. The security light will come on to inform the driver the system is arming. If a door is open when the doors are locked, the security light will flash.
   If the delayed locking feature is turned on, the theft-deterrent system will not start the arming process until the last door is closed and the delay timer has expired. See *Delayed Locking on page 2-10*.
3. Close all doors. The security light should go off after about 30 seconds. The alarm is not armed until the security light goes off.

If a locked door is opened without using the RKE transmitter, a ten second pre-alarm will occur. The horn will chirp and the lights will flash. If the key is not placed in the ignition and turned to START or the door is not unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the RKE transmitter during the ten second pre-alarm, the alarm will go off. Your vehicle's headlamps will flash and the horn will sound for about 30 seconds, then will turn off to save the battery power.

The theft-deterrent system will not activate if the doors are locked with the vehicle's key or the manual door lock. It activates only if you use the power door lock switch with the door open or the RKE transmitter. You should also remember that you can start your vehicle with the correct ignition key if the alarm has been set off.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- If you do not want to activate the theft-deterrent system, the vehicle should be locked with the door key after the doors are closed.
- Always unlock the doors with the RKE transmitter. Unlocking a door any other way will set off the alarm if it is armed.

If you set off the alarm by accident, press unlock on the RKE transmitter or place the key in the ignition and turn it to START to turn off the alarm. The alarm will not stop if you try to unlock a door any other way.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Testing the Alarm

To test the alarm:

1. From inside the vehicle, lower the driver's window and open the driver's door.
2. Activate the system by locking the doors with the power door lock switch while the door is open, or with the RKE transmitter.
3. Get out of the vehicle, close the door and wait for the security light to go out.
4. Then reach in through the window, unlock the door with the manual door lock and open the door. This should set off the alarm.

While the alarm is set, the power door unlock switch will not work.

If the alarm does not sound when it should but the headlamps flash, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 6-106*.

If the alarm does not sound or the headlamps do not flash, the vehicle should be serviced by your dealer/retailer.

PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer

The PASS-Key III+ system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

PASS-Key III+ uses a radio frequency transponder in the key that matches a decoder in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation

Your vehicle has PASS-Key® III+ (Personalized Automotive Security System) theft-deterrent system. PASS-Key® III+ is a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system is automatically armed when the key is removed from the ignition.

The system is automatically disarmed when the key is turned to ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY or START from the LOCK/OFF position.

You do not have to manually arm or disarm the system.

The security light will come on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When the PASS-Key® III+ system senses that someone is using the wrong key, it prevents the vehicle from starting. Anyone using a trial-and-error method to start the vehicle will be discouraged because of the high number of electrical key codes.

If the engine does not start and the security light on the instrument panel cluster comes on when trying to start the vehicle, there may be a problem with your theft-deterrent system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. At this time, you may also want to check the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 6-106*. If the engine still does not start with the other key, your vehicle needs service. If your vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer/retailer who can service the PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made. In an emergency, contact Roadside Assistance.

It is possible for the PASS-Key® III+ decoder to learn the transponder value of a new or replacement key. Up to 10 keys may be programmed for the vehicle. The following procedure is for programming additional keys only. If all the currently programmed keys are lost or do not operate, you must see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have keys made and programmed to the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

See your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to get a new key blank that is cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

To program the new additional key:

1. Verify that the new key has a ⊕ stamped on it.
2. Insert the original, already programmed, key in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine will not start, see your dealer/retailer for service.
3. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key.
4. Insert the new key to be programmed and turn it to the ON/RUN position within five seconds of turning the ignition to the LOCK/OFF position in Step 3.

   The security light will turn off once the key has been programmed.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If you lose or damage your PASS-Key® III+ key, see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

New Vehicle Break-In

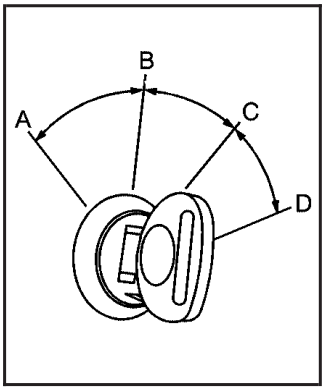
Notice: **The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Keep your speed at 55 mph (88 km/h) or less for the first 500 miles (805 km).**
- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44* for the trailer towing capabilities of the vehicle and more information.**

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ignition Positions



The ignition switch has four different positions.

To shift out of P (Park), the ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY and the regular brake pedal must be applied.

A (LOCK/OFF): This position locks the ignition. It may also lock the steering wheel and automatic transmission. The key can be removed in LOCK/OFF.

On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.

The steering may bind with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this doesn't work, then the vehicle needs service.

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your dealer/retailer.**

B (ACC/ACCESSORY): This position lets things like the radio and the windshield wipers operate while the engine is off. Use this position if the vehicle must be pushed or towed.

C (ON/RUN): This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument panel cluster warning and indicator lights. The switch stays in this position when the engine is running. The transmission is also unlocked in this position on automatic transmission vehicles.

If you leave the key in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off, the battery could be drained. You may not be able to start the vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

D (START): This is the position that starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch returns to ON/RUN for driving.

A warning tone will sound when the driver door is opened, the ignition is in ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF and the key is in the ignition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Audio System
- Power Windows
- OnStar® System (if equipped)
- Sunroof (if equipped)

These features work when the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. Once the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF, the windows and sunroof continue to work up to 10 minutes until any door is opened. The radio continues to work for up to 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened.

Starting the Engine

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is are already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.**

Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF position.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

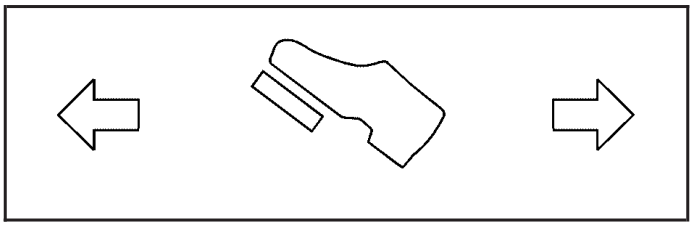
2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below 0°F or –18°C), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Notice: **The engine is designed to work with the electronics in the vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer/retailer. If you do not, the engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal

The vehicle has adjustable throttle and brake pedals that allow you change their positions.

The feature will not operate when the vehicle is in R (Reverse) or while using the cruise control.



The switch used to adjust the pedals is located on the center console below the climate control system.

Press the right and left arrows to move the pedals either closer or further from your body.

Before you start driving, fully press the brake pedal to confirm the adjustment is right for you. While driving, make only small adjustments.

The vehicle has a memory function which allows the pedal positions to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Features on page 1-7* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Coolant Heater

The engine coolant heater can provide easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up in cold weather conditions at or below 0°F (– 18°C). Vehicles with an engine heater should be plugged in at least four hours before starting. An internal thermostat in the plug-end of the cord may exist which will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above 0°F (–18°C).

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is located on the driver's side of the engine compartment, near the power steering fluid reservoir.
3. Plug the cord into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

⚠ CAUTION:

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

The length of time the heater should remain plugged in depends on several factors. Ask a dealer/retailer in the area where you will be parking the vehicle for the best advice on this.

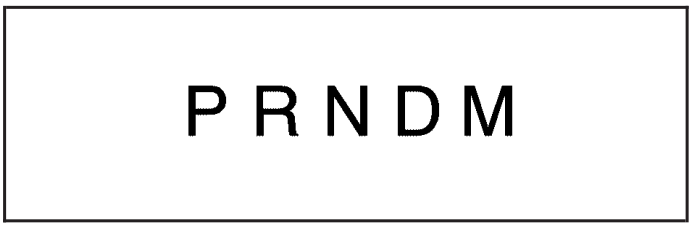
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Operation

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

The vehicle has a Hydra-Matic® 6L80 automatic transmission, and has an electronic shift position indicator within the instrument panel cluster. The electronic shift position indicator displays when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park).

There are several different positions for the shift lever.



P (Park): This position locks the rear wheels. It is the best position to use when you start the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

When parked on a hill, especially when the vehicle has a heavy load, you may notice an increase in the effort to shift out of P (Park). See Torque Lock (Automatic Transmission) under *Shifting Into Park on page 2-36* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 2-36*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

R (Reverse): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission, see *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 5-31*.

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use N (Neutral) only. Also, use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.**

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 35 mph (55 km/h), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

By doing this, the vehicle shifts down to the next gear and has more power.

D (Drive) can be used when towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, driving on steep hills, or for off-road driving. You may want to shift the transmission to a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see Skidding under *Loss of Control on page 5-12*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

M (Manual Mode): This position lets drivers select the range of gears appropriate for current driving conditions. See Driver Shift Control (DSC) later in this section.

Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

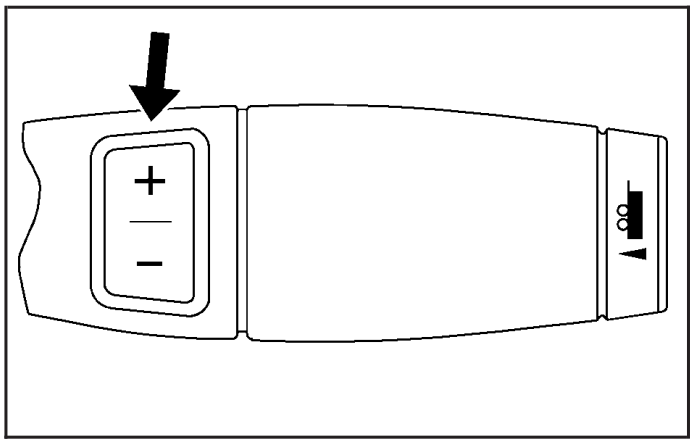
The vehicle has a shift stabilization feature that adjusts the transmission shifting to the current driving conditions in order to reduce rapid upshifts and downshifts. This shift stabilization feature is designed to determine, before making an upshift, if the engine will be able to maintain vehicle speed by analyzing things such as vehicle speed, throttle position and vehicle load. If the shift stabilization feature determines that a current vehicle speed cannot be maintained, the transmission does not upshift and instead holds the current gear. In some cases, this may appear to be a delayed shift, however the transmission is operating normally.

The vehicle's transmission uses adaptive shift controls that compares key shift parameters to pre-programmed ideal shifts stored in the transmissions computer. The transmission constantly makes adjustments to improve vehicle performance according to how the vehicle is being used, such as with a heavy load or when temperature changes. During this adaptive shift controls process, shifting may feel different as the transmission determines the best settings.

When temperatures are very cold, the Hydra-Matic® 6L80 automatic transmission's gear shifting may be delayed providing more stable shifts until the engine warms up. Shifts may be more noticeable with a cold transmission. This difference in shifting is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver Shift Control (DSC)



The vehicle has Driver Shift Control (DSC). DSC controls the vehicle's transmission and vehicle speed while driving down hill or towing a trailer by allowing you to select a desired range of gears.

To use this feature, do the following:

1. Move the shift lever to the M (Manual Mode).
2. Press the plus/minus button, to upshift or downshift selecting the desired range of gears for current driving conditions.

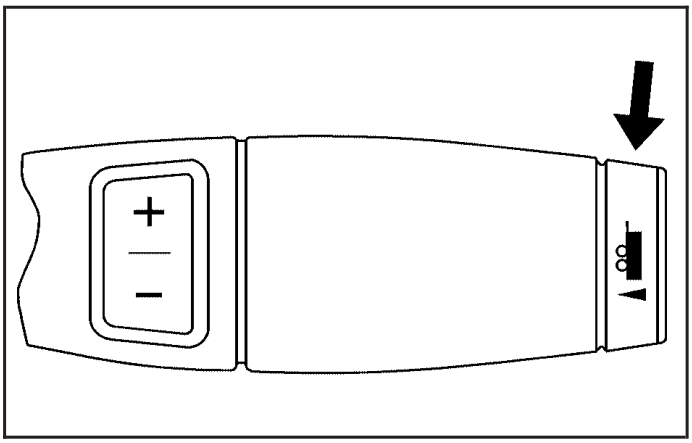
The DIC display will show the message MANUAL SHIFT on the first line and the current gear will be displayed on the second line. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47* and *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information. The number displayed in the DIC is the highest gear that can be used. However, the vehicle can automatically shift to lower gears as it adjusts to driving conditions. This means that all gears below that number are available. When 5 (Fifth) is selected, 1 (First) through 5 (Fifth) gears are automatically shifted by the vehicle, but 6 (Sixth) cannot be used until the plus/minus button located on the steering column lever is used to change to the gear.

Grade Braking is not available when the Driver Shift Control is active. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33* for more information.

While using the DSC, cruise control and the tow/haul mode can be used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tow/Haul Mode



The vehicle has a tow/haul mode. The tow/haul mode adjusts the transmission shift pattern to reduce shift cycling, providing increased performance, vehicle control, and transmission cooling when towing or hauling heavy loads.

Press the button located on the end of the shift lever to turn the tow/haul on or off. When the tow/haul is on, a light on the instrument panel cluster will come on.

See *Tow/Haul Mode Light on page 3-46* for more information.

Also see “Tow Haul Mode” under *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44* for more information.

The tow/haul mode works with the Autoride® feature, if the vehicle has this, to enhance the ride when trailering or with a loaded vehicle. See *Autoride® on page 5-44*.

Grade Braking

The Grade Braking shift modes can be activated by pressing the button on the end of the shift control lever. While in Range Selection Mode, Grade Braking is deactivated allowing the driver to select a desired range of gears.

Grade Braking is only active while the Tow/Haul Mode is selected and you are not in the Range Selection Mode. See “Tow/Haul Mode listed previously and *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-29* for more information on the Range Selection Mode. Grade Braking assists in maintaining desired vehicle speeds when driving on downhill grades by automatically implementing a shift schedule that utilizes the engine and transmission to slow the vehicle. This reduces wear on the braking system and increases control of the vehicle. Grade Braking monitors vehicle speed, acceleration, engine torque and brake pedal usage. Using this information, it detects when the vehicle is on a downhill grade and the driver desires to slow the vehicle by pressing the brake.

Also see *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

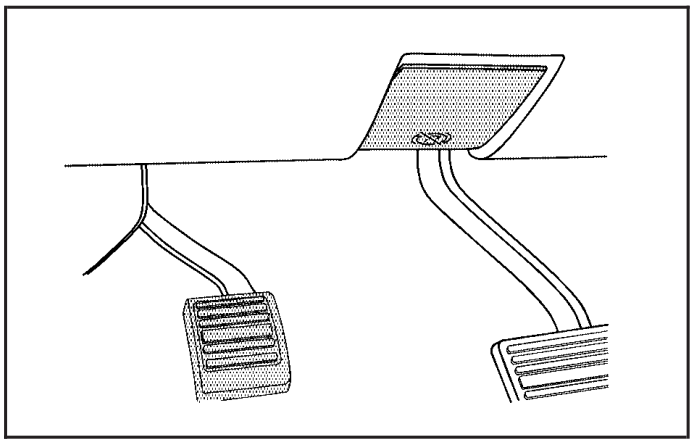
Cruise Grade Braking

Cruise Grade Braking assists when driving on a downhill grade. It maintains vehicle speed by automatically implementing a shift schedule that uses the engine and the transmission to slow the vehicle. Cruise Grade Braking operates while Cruise Control is engaged in Tow/Haul mode to assist in maintaining vehicle speed under loaded vehicle conditions. It utilizes vehicle acceleration and deviation from desired speed to determine the correct gear for the operating condition.
If vehicle speed is above the desired speed the transmission will downshift to slow the vehicle.
If vehicle speed is near or below desired speed the trans will upshift, allowing vehicle speed to increase.

While in the Range Select Mode (RSM) mode, cruise grade braking is not available.

See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-29*.

Parking Brake



For vehicles with a release handle, set the parking brake by holding the regular brake pedal down, then pushing down the parking brake pedal.

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.

A chime sounds and the warning light flashes when the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is moving at least 5 mph (8 km/h).

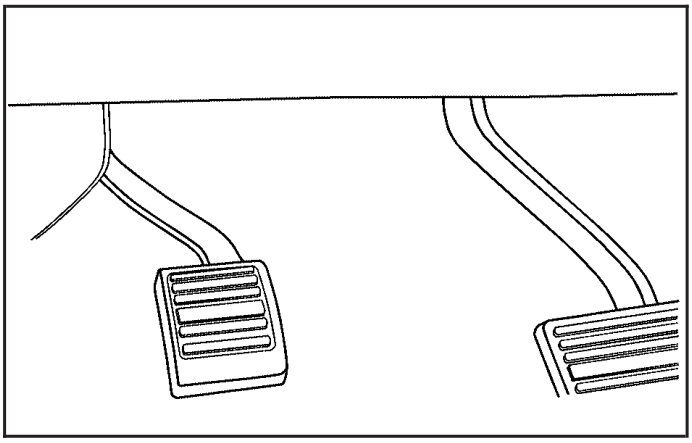
To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down. Then pull the bottom edge of the lever with the parking brake symbol, located above the parking brake pedal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the ignition is on when the parking brake is released, the brake system warning light goes off.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on any hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.



For vehicles without a release handle, set the parking brake by holding the regular brake pedal down, then pushing down the parking brake pedal.

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push down momentarily on the parking brake pedal until you feel the pedal release. Slowly pull your foot up off the park brake pedal. If the parking brake is not released when you begin to drive, the brake system warning light will flash and a chime will sound warning you that the parking brake is still on.

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on a hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting Into Park

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

1. Hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever into the P (Park) position by pulling the shift lever toward you and moving it up as far as it will go.
3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave the vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, the vehicle is in P (Park).

Leaving the Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly set. After the shift lever is moved into P (Park), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from P (Park) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift the transmission into P (Park) properly, the weight of the vehicle can put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. It might be difficult to pull the shift lever out of P (Park). This is called torque lock. To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park) properly before you leave the driver seat. To find out how, see *Shifting Into Park on page 2-36*.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of P (Park) before releasing the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you might need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission. Then you should be able to pull the shift lever out of P (Park).

Shifting Out of Park

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in P (Park) with the shift lever button fully released, and
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY and the regular brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 6-40* for more information.

To shift out of P (Park) use the following:

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still are unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Ease the pressure on the shift lever.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, press the shift lever all the way into P (Park).
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you are still having a problem shifting, then have the vehicle serviced soon.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking Over Things That Burn

⚠ CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ CAUTION:

Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle's exhaust system has been modified, damaged or improperly repaired.
- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or after-market modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ CAUTION:

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-38*.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).

Follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park on page 2-36*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Hold the inside rearview mirror in the center to move it for a clearer view behind your vehicle. Adjust the mirror to avoid glare from the headlamps behind you. Push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

This vehicle may have an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror with OnStar®. It may also have Intellibeam®. For more information on Intellibeam™, see "Intellibeam™ Intelligent High-Beam Headlamp Control System" under *Exterior Lamps on page 3-16*. For more information on OnStar®, see *OnStar® System on page 2-52*.

Automatic Dimming Mirror Operation

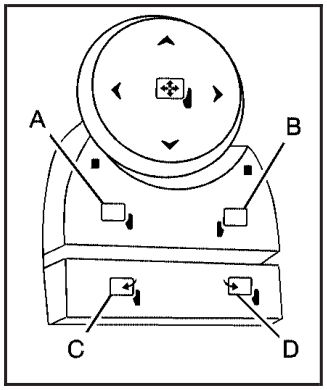
Automatic dimming reduces the glare of lights from behind the vehicle. The dimming feature comes on and the indicator light illuminates each time the vehicle is started.

⏻ **(On/Off):** Press to turn the dimming feature on or off.

Cleaning the Mirror

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors



Controls for the outside power foldaway mirrors are located on the driver door armrest.

Mirror Adjustment

1. Press (C) to fold the mirrors out to the driving position.
2. Press (D) to fold the mirrors in to the folded position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resetting the Power Foldaway Mirrors

Reset the power foldaway mirrors if:

- The mirrors are accidentally obstructed while folding.
- They are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors will not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors vibrate at normal driving speeds.

Fold and unfold the mirrors one time using the mirror controls to reset them to their normal position. A popping noise may be heard during the resetting of the power foldaway mirrors. This sound is normal after a manual folding operation.

Automatic Dimming

Adjust the driver outside mirror for the glare of the headlamps behind your vehicle. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror on page 2-40* for more information.

Turn Signal Indicator

The vehicle has a turn signal indicator on the mirror. An arrow on the mirror flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Park Tilt Mirrors

If the vehicle has the memory package, the passenger and/or driver mirror tilts to a preselected position when the vehicle is in R (Reverse). This feature lets the driver view the curb when parallel parking. The mirror(s) return to the original position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), or the ignition is turned off or to OFF/LOCK.

Turn this feature on or off through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

Outside Convex Mirror

⚠ CAUTION:

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Outside Heated Mirrors

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to heat the mirrors.

See “Rear Window Defogger” under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-27* for more information.

Object Detection Systems

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA)

For vehicles with the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, it operates at speeds less than 5 mph (8 km/h), and assists the driver with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). The sensors on the rear bumper are used to detect the distance to an object up to 8 feet (2.5 m) behind the vehicle, and at least 10 inches (25.4 cm) off the ground.

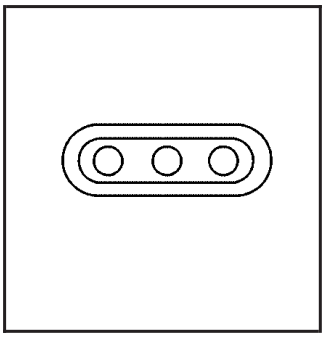
⚠ CAUTION:

The Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system does not replace driver vision. It cannot detect:

- objects that are below the bumper, underneath the vehicle, or if they are too close or far from the vehicle
- children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or pets.

If you do not use proper care before and while backing; vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Even with URPA, always check behind the vehicle before backing up. While backing, be sure to look for objects and check the vehicle’s mirrors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The display is located near the passenger side rear window and can be seen by looking over your right shoulder.

URPA uses three color-coded lights to provide distance and system information.

How the System Works

URPA comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into R (Reverse). The rear display briefly illuminates to indicate the system is working.

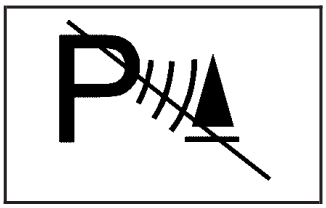
URPA operates only at speeds less than 5 mph (8 km/h). If the vehicle is above this speed, the red light on the rear display will flash.

To be detected, objects must be at least 10 inches (25.4 cm) off the ground and below liftgate level. Objects must also be within 8 feet (2.5 m) from the rear bumper. This distance may be less during warmer or humid weather.

A single beep will sound the first time an object is detected between 40 inches (1 m) and 8 feet (2.5 m) away. Beeping will occur continuously when the vehicle is at 23 inches (0.6 m) or closer to an object.

The following describes what will occur with the URPA display as the vehicle gets closer to a detected object:

Description	English	Metric
amber light	8 ft	2.5 m
amber/amber lights	40 in	1.0 m
amber/amber/red lights and continuous beeping for five seconds	23 in	0.6 m
amber/amber/red lights flashing and continuous beeping for five seconds	1 ft	0.3 m



The system can be disabled by pressing the rear park aid disable button located next to the radio.

The indicator light will come on and PARK ASSIST OFF displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC) to indicate that URPA is off, see *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* for information about clearing the message.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

If the URPA system will not activate due to a temporary condition, the message PARK ASSIST OFF will be displayed on the DIC and a red light will be shown on the rear URPA display when the shift lever is moved into R (Reverse). This occurs under the following conditions:

- The driver disables the system.
- The ultrasonic sensors are not clean. Keep the vehicle's rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Washing Your Vehicle on page 6-100*.
- A trailer was attached to the vehicle, or a bicycle or an object was hanging out of the liftgate during the last drive cycle, the red light may illuminate in the rear display. Once the attached object is removed, URPA will return to normal operation.
- A tow bar is attached to the vehicle.
- The vehicle's bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer to repair the system.
- Other conditions may affect system performance, such as vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck.

If the system is still disabled, after driving forward at least 15 mph (25 km/h), take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The vehicle may have a Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system. Read this entire section before using the system.

The SBZA system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-310 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Frequency of operation: 24.05GHz – 24.25GHz

Field Strength: Not greater than 2.5V/m peak (0.25V/m average) at a distance of 3m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

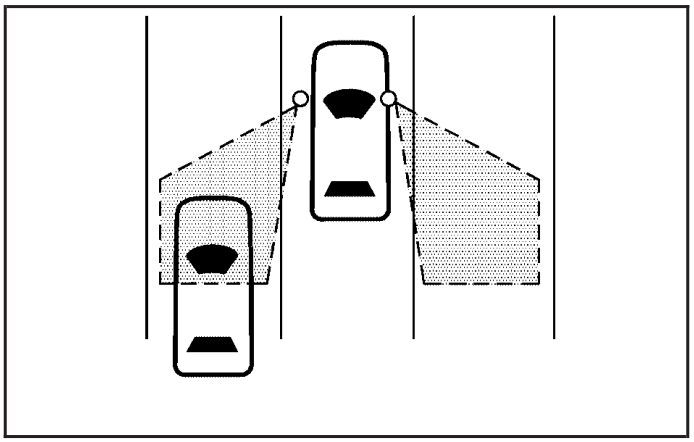
⚠ CAUTION:

SBZA is only a lane changing aid and does not replace driver vision. SBZA does not detect:

- Vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching.
- Pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.

Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in damage to the vehicle, injury, or death. Always check the outside and rearview mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signal before changing lanes.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone, amber SBZA displays light up in the side mirrors. This indicates that it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, always check the SBZA display, check the outside and rearview mirrors, look over your shoulder for vehicles and hazards, and use the turn signal.



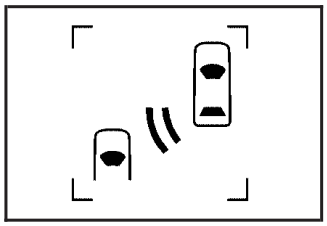
SBZA Detection Zones

The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, 11 ft. or 3.5 m. This zone starts at each side mirror and goes back approximately 16 ft. (5.0 m). The height of the zone is approximately between 1.5 ft. (0.5 m) and 6 ft. (2.0 m) off the ground.

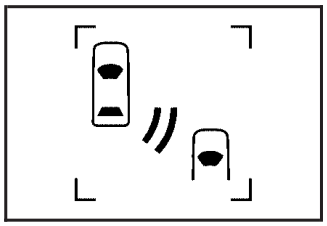
Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer, as the SBZA detection zones do not change when a trailer is towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How the System Works



Left Side Mirror Display



Right Side Mirror Display

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror displays will briefly come on to indicate that the system is operating. When the vehicle is moving forward, the left or right side mirror SBZA display will light up if a vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the SBZA display will flash to give you extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA displays do not come on while the vehicle is approaching or passing other vehicles. At speeds greater then 20 mph (32 km/h), SBZA displays may come on when a vehicle you have passed remains in or drops back into the detection zone.

SBZA can be disabled through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47* for more information. If the SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up during normal driving.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced due to an occasional missed alert. The number of missed alerts will increase with increased rainfall or road spray.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when the system is on and vehicles are in the blind zone, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer.

SBZA is designed to ignore stationary objects; however, the system may occasionally light up due to guard rails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other stationary objects. This is normal system operation, the vehicle does not need service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SBZA does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see *Washing Your Vehicle on page 6-100*. If the DIC still displays the SIDE BLIND ZONE SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE message after cleaning the bumper, see your dealer/retailer.

The SBZA displays may remain on if a trailer is attached to the vehicle, or a bicycle or object is extending out to either side of the vehicle.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the driver will not be able to turn SBZA back on using the DIC. The SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT ON option will not be selectable if the conditions for normal system operation are not met. Until normal operating conditions for SBZA are met, you should not rely upon SBZA while driving.

SBZA Error Messages

The following messages may appear in the DIC:

SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM OFF: This message indicates that the driver has turned the system off.

SIDE BLIND ZONE SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE: This message indicates that the SBZA system is disabled either because the sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in your blind zone, or the vehicle is passing through an open field of view area, such as the desert, where there is insufficient data for operation. The sensor may be blocked by mud, dirt, snow, ice, slush, or even heavy rainstorms. This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray. The vehicle does not need service. For cleaning, see *Washing Your Vehicle on page 6-100*.

SERVICE SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM: If this message appears, both SBZA displays will remain on indicating there is a problem with the SBZA system. If these displays remain on after continued driving, the system needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

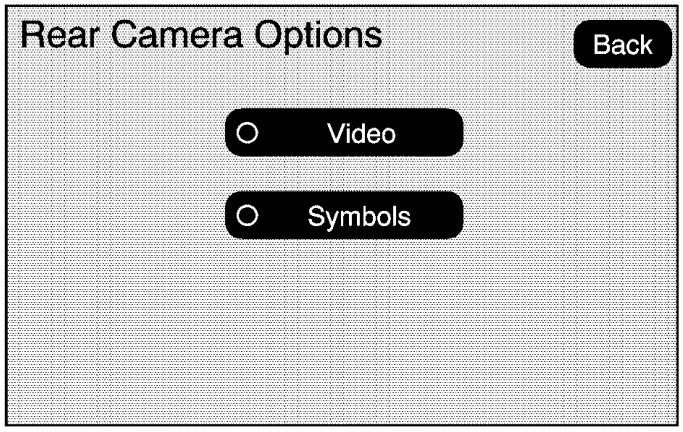
This vehicle may have a Rear Vision Camera system. Read this entire section before using it.

The rear vision camera system is designed to help the driver when backing up by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. When the driver shifts the vehicle into R (Reverse), the video image automatically appears on the navigation screen. Once the driver shifts out of R (Reverse), the navigation screen will go back to the last screen that had been displayed, after a delay.

Turning the Rear Vision Camera System On or Off

To turn the rear vision camera system on or off:

1. Shift into P (Park).
2. Press the CONFIG hard key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG hard key to select Display or touch the Display screen button.
3. Select the Rear Camera Options screen button. The Rear Camera Options screen will display.



4. Select the Video screen button. When the Video screen button is highlighted the RVC system is on.

The delay that is received after shifting out of R (Reverse) is approximately 10 seconds. The delay can be cancelled by performing one of the following:

- Pressing a hard key on the navigation system.
- Shifting in to P (Park).
- Reach a vehicle speed of 7 mph (11 km/h).

There is a message on the rear vision camera screen that states “Check Surroundings for Safety”.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjusting the Brightness and Contrast of the Screen

To adjust the brightness and contrast of the screen, press the CONFIG hard key while the rear vision camera image is on the display. Any adjustments made will only affect the rear vision camera screen.

☼ **(Brightness):** Touch the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or decrease the brightness of the screen.

◑ **(Contrast):** Touch the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or decrease the contrast of the screen.

Symbols

The navigation system may have a feature that lets the driver view symbols on the navigation screen while using the rear vision camera. The Ultrasonic Rear Park Assist (URPA) system must not be disabled to use the caution symbols. If URPA has been disabled and the symbols have been turned on, the Rear Parking Assist Symbols Unavailable error message may display. See *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 2-42*.

The symbols appear when an object has been detected by the URPA system. The symbol may cover the object when viewing the navigation screen.

To turn the symbols on or off:

1. Make sure that URPA has not been disabled.
2. Shift into P (Park).
3. Press the CONFIG hard key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG hard key repeatedly until Display is selected or touch the Display screen button.
4. Select the Rear Camera Options screen button. The Rear Camera Options screen will display.
5. Touch the Symbols screen button. The screen button will be highlighted when on.

Rear Vision Camera Error Messages

Service Rear Vision Camera System: This message can display when the system is not receiving information it requires from other vehicle systems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Vision Camera System Unavailable: Displays when the system is not receiving information it requires from other vehicle systems.

If any other problem occurs or if a problem persists, see your dealer/retailer.

⚠ CAUTION:

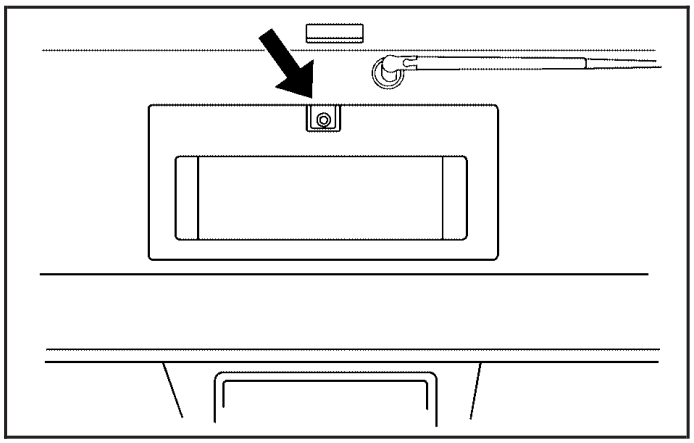
The Rear Vision Camera (RVC) system does not replace driver vision. RVC does not:

- Detect objects that are outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.
- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or pets.

Do not back the vehicle by only looking at the rear vision camera screen, or use the screen during longer, higher speed backing maneuvers or where there could be cross-traffic. Your judged distances using the screen will differ from actual distances.

So if you do not use proper care before backing up, you could hit a vehicle, child, pedestrian, bicyclist, or pet, resulting in vehicle damage, injury, or death. Even though the vehicle has the RVC system, always check carefully before backing up by checking behind and around the vehicle.

Rear Vision Camera Location

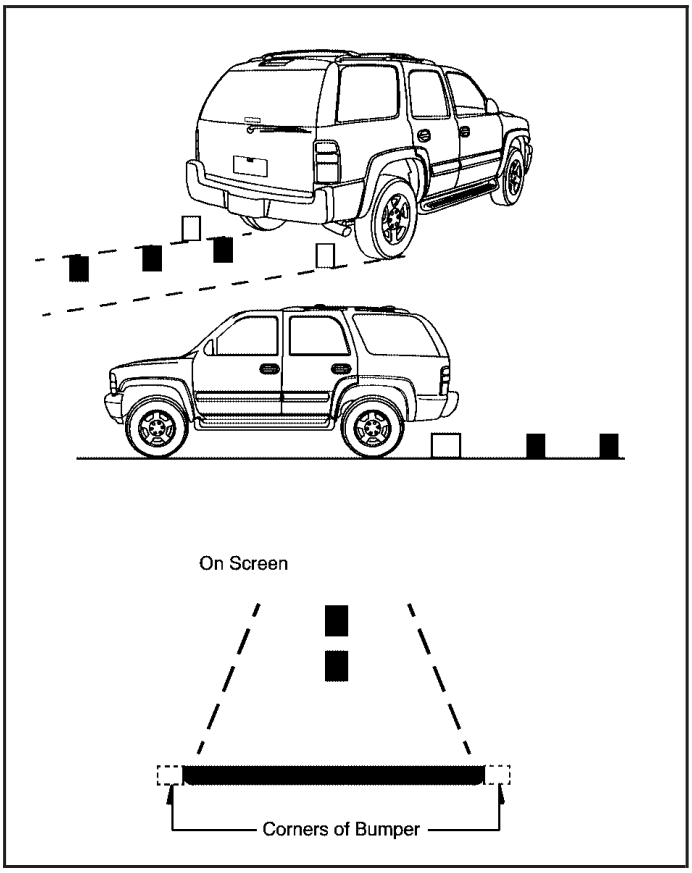


The image is provided by the camera located above the license plate.

The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance. The area displayed by the camera is limited. The camera does not display objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper. The area displayed on the screen can vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

The following illustration shows the field of view that the camera provides.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



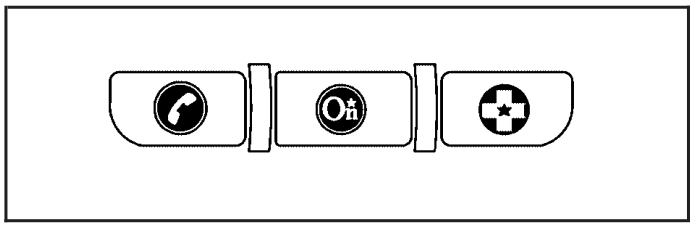
When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

The rear vision camera system might not work properly or display a clear image if:

- The RVC is turned off. See “Turning the Rear Camera System On or Off” earlier in this section.
- It is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else builds up on the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The back of the vehicle is in an accident, the position and mounting angle of the camera can change or the camera can be affected. Be sure to have the camera and its position and mounting angle checked at your dealer/retailer.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar® System



OnStar uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services. If the airbags deploy, the system is designed to make an automatic call to OnStar Emergency advisors who can request emergency services be sent to your location. If the keys are locked in the vehicle, call OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR to have a signal sent to unlock the doors. OnStar Hands-Free Calling, including 30 trial minutes good for 60 days, is available on most vehicles. OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation service, with one trial route, is available on most vehicles. Press the OnStar button to have an OnStar advisor contact Roadside Service.

OnStar service is provided subject to the OnStar Terms and Conditions included in the OnStar Subscriber glove box literature.

Some services such as Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance may not be available until the owner of the vehicle registers with OnStar. After the first prepaid year, contact OnStar to select a monthly or annual subscription payment plan. If a payment plan is not selected, the OnStar system and all services, including airbag notification and emergency services, may be deactivated and no longer available. For more information visit onstar.com (U.S.) or onstar.ca (Canada), or press the OnStar button to speak with an advisor.

Not all OnStar services are available on all vehicles. To check if this vehicle is able to provide the services described below, or for a full description of OnStar services and system limitations, see the OnStar Owner's Guide in the glove box or visit onstar.com (U.S.) or onstar.ca (Canada), contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080, or press the OnStar button to speak with an OnStar advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar Services Available with the Safe & Sound Plan

- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Advanced Automatic Crash Notification (AACN) (If equipped)
- Link to Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- OnStar Vehicle Diagnostic Email
- GM Goodwrench On Demand Diagnostics
- OnStar Hands-Free Calling with 30 trial minutes
- OnStar Virtual Advisor (U.S. Only)

OnStar Services Included with Directions & Connections Plan

- All Safe and Sound Plan Services
- OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation (If equipped) or Driving Directions - Advisor delivered
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

OnStar Hands-Free Calling

OnStar Hands-Free Calling allows eligible OnStar subscribers to make and receive calls using voice commands. Hands-Free Calling is fully integrated into the vehicle, and can be used with OnStar Pre-Paid Minute Packages. Most vehicles include 30 trial minutes good for 60 days. Hands-Free Calling can also be linked to a Verizon Wireless service plan in the U.S. or a Bell Mobility service plan in Canada, depending on eligibility. To find out more, refer to the OnStar Owner's Guide in the vehicle's glove box, visit onstar.com or onstar.ca, or speak with an OnStar advisor by pressing the OnStar button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation

Vehicles with the OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation system can provide voice-guided driving directions. Press the OnStar button to have an OnStar advisor locate a business or address and download driving directions to the vehicle. Voice-guided directions to the desired destination will play through the audio system speakers. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar Virtual Advisor

OnStar Virtual Advisor is a feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling that uses minutes to access location-based weather, local traffic reports, and stock quotes. Press the phone button and give a few simple voice commands to browse through the various topics. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information. This feature is only available in the continental U.S.

OnStar Steering Wheel Controls

This vehicle may have a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar Hands-Free Calling. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-115* for more information.

On some vehicles, the mute button can be used to dial numbers into voice mail systems, or to dial phone extensions. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

How OnStar Service Works

The OnStar system can record and transmit vehicle information. This information is automatically sent to an OnStar Call Center when the OnStar button is pressed, the emergency button is pressed, or if the airbags or AACN system deploy. This information usually includes the vehicle's GPS location and, in the event of a crash, additional information regarding the crash that the vehicle was involved in (e.g. the direction from which the vehicle was hit). When the Virtual Advisor feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling is used, the vehicle also sends OnStar the vehicle's GPS location so they can provide services where it is located.

OnStar service cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. OnStar service also cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where the wireless service provider OnStar has hired for that area has coverage, network capacity and reception when the service is needed, and technology that is compatible with the OnStar service. Not all services are available everywhere, particularly in remote or enclosed areas, or at all times.

Location information about the vehicle is only available if the GPS satellite signals are unobstructed and available.

The vehicle must have a working electrical system, including adequate battery power, for the OnStar equipment to operate. There are other problems OnStar cannot control that may prevent OnStar from providing OnStar service at any particular time or place. Some examples are damage to important parts of the vehicle in a crash, hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather or wireless phone network congestion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Responsibility

Increase the volume of the radio if the OnStar advisor cannot be heard. If the light next to the OnStar buttons is red, the system may not be functioning properly. Press the OnStar button and request a vehicle diagnostic. If the light appears clear (no light is appearing), your OnStar subscription has expired and all services have been deactivated. Press the OnStar button to confirm that the OnStar equipment is active.

Universal Home Remote System

The Universal Home Remote System provides a way to replace up to three hand-held Radio-Frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

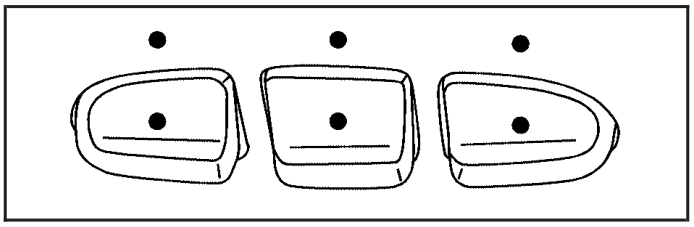
1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED)



This vehicle may have the Universal Home Remote System. If there are three round Light Emitting Diode (LED) indicator lights above the Universal Home Remote buttons, follow the instructions below.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Do not use this system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person assist with programming the transmitter.

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles, as well as, for future programming. Only the original remote control transmitter is needed for Fixed Code programming. The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends. See “Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons” later in this section.

Park the vehicle outside of the garage when programming a garage door. Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate that is being programmed.

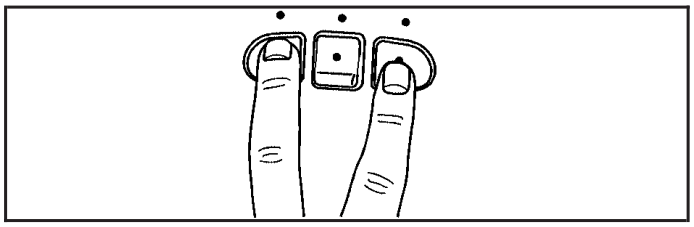
Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code

For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to learcar2u.com.

Most garage door openers sold after 1996 are Rolling Code units.

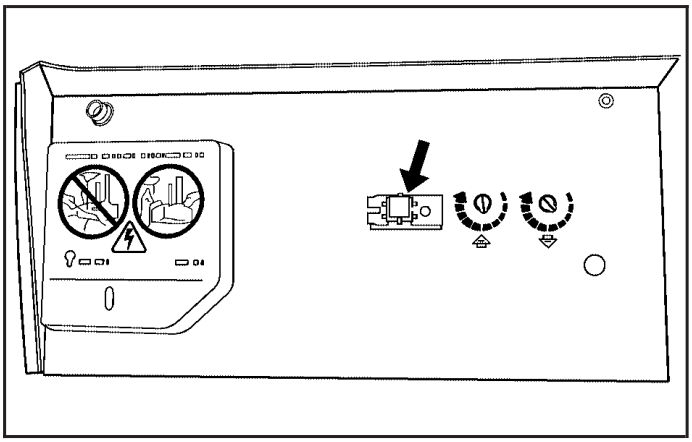
Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.

To program up to three devices:



1. From inside the vehicle, press the two outside buttons at the same time for one to two seconds, and immediately release them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Locate in the garage, the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. It can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit and may be a colored button. Press this button. After pressing this button, complete the following steps in less than 30 seconds.
3. Immediately return to the vehicle. Press and hold the Universal Home Remote button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light, above the selected button, should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 20 seconds.
4. Immediately, within one second, release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
5. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Rolling Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1 through 5, choosing a different function button in Step 3 than what was used for the garage door opener.

If these instructions do not work, the garage door opener is probably a Fixed Code unit. Follow the Programming instructions that follow for a Fixed Code garage door opener.

Programming Universal Home Remote — Fixed Code

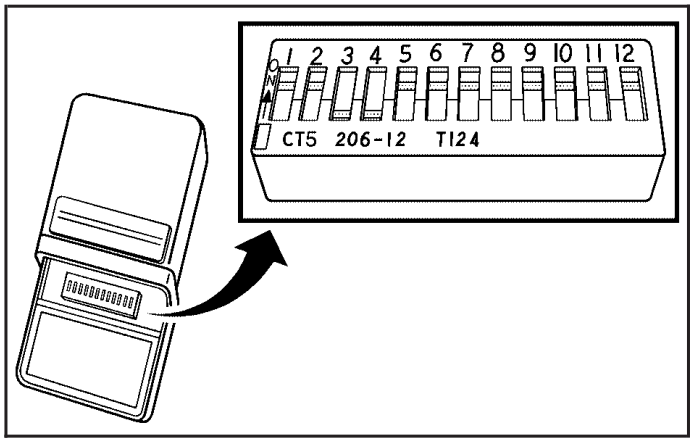
For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to learcar2u.com.

Most garage door openers sold before 1996 are Fixed Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

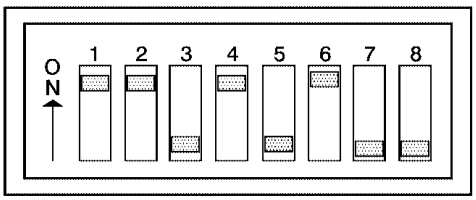
To program up to three devices:



1. To verify that the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit, remove the battery cover on the hand held transmitter supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener motor. If there are a row of dip switches similar to the graphic above, the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit. If you do not see a row of dip switches, return to the previous section for Programming Universal Home Remote – Rolling Code.

   Your hand held transmitter can have between eight to 12 dip switches depending on the brand of transmitter.

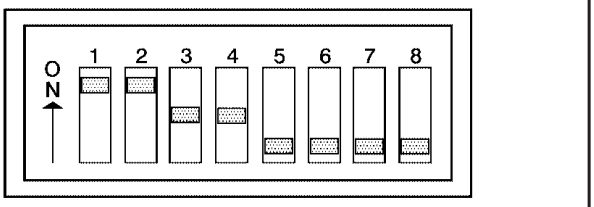
The garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) could also have a row of dip switches that can be used when programming the Universal Home Remote. If the total number of switches on the motor head and hand held transmitter are different, or if the dip switch settings are different, use the dip switch settings on the motor head unit to program the Universal Home Remote. The motor head dip switch settings can also be used when the original hand held transmitter is not available.



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Off	On	Off	On	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Two Positions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Neutral	Neutral	Off	Off	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Middle	Middle	Right	Right	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Three Positions

The panel of switches might not appear exactly as they do in the examples above, but they should be similar.

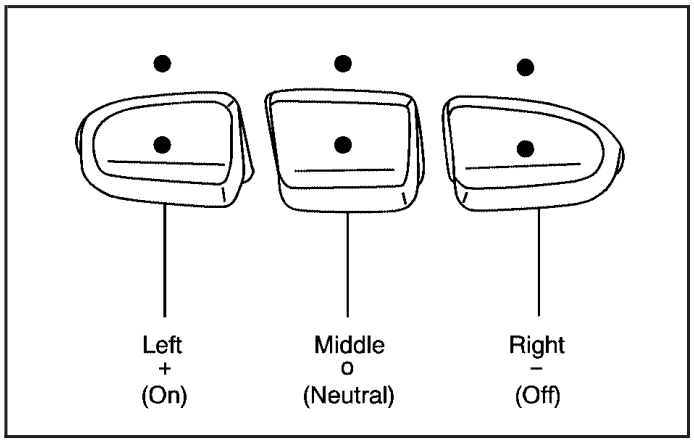
The switch positions on the hand-held transmitter could be labeled, as follows:

- A switch in the up position could be labeled as “Up,” “+,” or “On.”
- A switch in the down position could be labeled as “Down,” “–,” or “Off.”
- A switch in the middle position could be labeled as “Middle,” “0,” or “Neutral.”

2. Write down the eight to 12 switch settings from left to right as follows:
   - When a switch is in the up position, write “Left.”
   - When a switch is in the down position, write “Right.”
   - If a switch is set between the up and down position, write “Middle.”

   The switch settings written down in Step 2 now become the button strokes to be entered into the Universal Home Remote in Step 4. Be sure to enter the switch settings written down in Step 2, in order from left to right, into the Universal Home Remote, when completing Step 4.
3. From inside your vehicle, first firmly press all three buttons at the same time for about three seconds. Release the buttons to put the Universal Home Remote into programming mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Enter each switch setting from Step 2 into your vehicle's Universal Home Remote. You will have two and one-half minutes to complete Step 4. Now press one button on the Universal Home Remote for each switch setting as follows:
   - If you wrote "Left," press the left button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote "Right," press the right button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote "Middle," press the middle button in the vehicle.
5. After entering all of the switch positions, again, firmly press and release all three buttons at the same time. The indicator lights will turn on.
6. Press and hold the button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light above the selected button should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 55 seconds.
7. Immediately release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
8. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Fixed Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1-8, choosing a different button in Step 6 than what was used for the garage door opener.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using Universal Home Remote

Press and hold the appropriate button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Reprogramming Universal Home Remote Buttons

Any of the three buttons can be reprogrammed by repeating the instructions.

Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons

The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends.

To erase either Rolling Code or Fixed Code on the Universal Home Remote device:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons at the same time for approximately 20 seconds, until the indicator lights, located directly above the buttons, begin to blink rapidly.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release both buttons. The codes from all buttons will be erased.

For help or information on the Universal Home Remote System, call the customer assistance phone number under *Customer Assistance Offices on page 8-6*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage Areas

Glove Box

Pull the bottom of the glove box handle upward to open it. Use the key to lock and unlock the glove box.

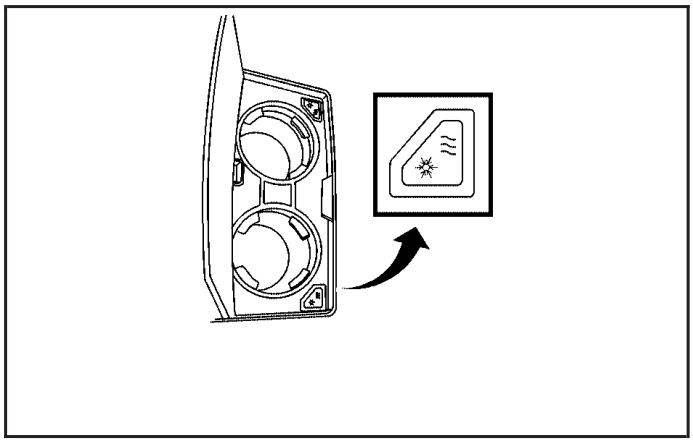
Cupholders

Cupholders are located in the center console for the front passengers. Press down on the access door release to open and use the front cupholders. Push the door back down to close it. Push down and then back on the front cupholder to remove it for cleaning.

Heated and Cooled Cupholders

For vehicles with heated and cooled cupholders, these are located in the front center console.

Press down on the access door release button to open the cupholder door.



To set to cool mode, press and release the button the ✲ shows blue. Press and release again to turn it off.

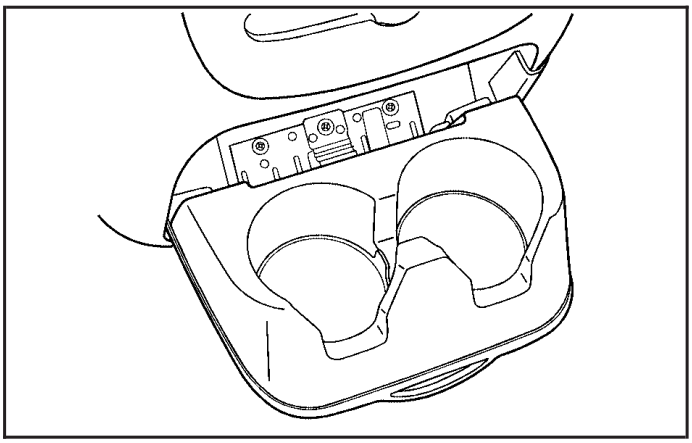
To set to heat mode, press and release the button the ≋ shows red. Press and release again to turn it off.

Insulated containers will not work properly. Use only non-insulated containers.

Notice: **When the cuphholder is turned on, the inside receptacles are hot or cold. Temperature variations in the cupholders may cause condensation. To avoid damage, do not store electronic devices or other items here.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Passenger Cupholders



Pull down on the lid to access the cupholders in the rear floor console.

Vehicles with the rear seat armrest may also contain cupholders. Pull down the armrest to use the cupholders.

Center Console Storage

A console compartment is located between the bucket seats.

The console has both an upper and lower storage bin accessed by lifting up on the latches located at the front of the console lid.

The console may have an accessory power outlet inside. See *Accessory Power Outlet(s) on page 3-25*.

The rear of the console also has a cupholder that swings down for the rear seat passengers to use.

Assist Handles

Assist handles located above the rear passenger doors can be used when getting out of the vehicle. Pull the handles downward to use them.

Garment Hooks

There are garment hooks located on the assist handles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Luggage Carrier

For vehicles with a luggage carrier, items can be loaded on top of the vehicle.

The luggage carrier has siderails attached to the roof and crossrails, if equipped, which can be moved back and forth to help secure cargo. To adjust them, turn the knob located at each end of the crossrail counterclockwise until the crossrail can move freely. To secure the crossrail, turn the knob located at each end of the crossrail clockwise until tightened. Tie the load to the siderails or siderail supports.

Notice: **Loading cargo on the luggage carrier that weighs more than 200 lbs (91 kg) or hangs over the rear or sides of the vehicle can damage the vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests as far forward as possible and against the side rails, making sure to fasten it securely.**

Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading, see *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo, check now and then to make sure the luggage and cargo are still securely fastened.

Be sure the cargo is properly loaded.

- If small heavy objects are placed on the roof, place the load in the area over the rear wheels (behind the rear side door on extended models). If needed, cut a piece of 3/8 inch plywood to fit inside the crossrails and siderails to spread the load. If plywood is used, tie it to the siderail supports.
- Tie the load to the crossrails or the siderail supports. Use the crossrails only to keep the load from sliding. To move the crossrails, pull out on the latch release handle at each end. Slide the crossrail to the desired position balancing the force side to side. Push the release handle back into the latched position and slide the crossrail back and forth slightly to be sure the latch snaps securely into place.
- If needed to carry long items, move the crossrails as far apart as they will go. Tie the load to the crossrails and the siderails or siderail supports. Also tie the load to the bumpers. Do not tie the load so tightly that the crossrails or siderails are damaged.
- After moving a crossrail, be sure it is securely locked into the siderail.

A Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) is located above the glass or above the rear load doors.

If items are loaded on the roof of the vehicle, care should be taken not to block or damage the CHMSL unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Storage Area

For vehicles with a rear storage area, it is located in the rear cargo area of the vehicle on the driver's side trim panel.

Turn the knobs and swing the storage door to access the storage compartment. The door can be removed.

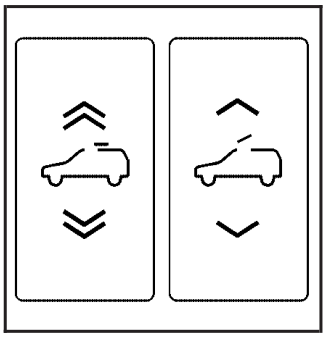
Rear Seat Armrest

For vehicle with an armrest/storage compartment located by the second row seat, pull the loop at the top of the armrest out to lower the armrest.

Push the button on the front of the armrest and pull the top up to open the compartment.

Sunroof

Your vehicle may be equipped with a power sliding sunroof. To open or close the sunroof, the ignition needs to be turned to ON/RUN, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active. When RAP is active, the sunroof will work for 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off, or until a front door is opened. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-26* for more information.



There are two switches in the overhead console that operate the sunroof.

Manual-Open/Manual-Close: To open the sunroof press and hold the rear of the driver's side switch until the sunroof reaches the desired position. To close the sunroof, press and hold the front of the driver's side switch until the sunroof reaches the desired position. The sunshade will open automatically with the sunroof, but can also be opened manually.

The sunroof has a comfort stop feature which stops the sunroof from opening to the full-open position. From the comfort stop position, press the rear of the driver's side switch a second time to open the sunroof to the full-open position.

When the sunroof is opened, an air deflector will automatically raise. The air deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Express-Open/Express-Close: To express-open the sunroof, fully press and release the rear of the driver's side switch. The sunroof will open automatically. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time. To express-close the sunroof, fully press and release the front of the driver's side switch. The sunroof will close automatically. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time. The sunshade will open automatically with the sunroof, but can also be opened manually.

The sunroof has a comfort stop feature which stops the sunroof from opening to the full-open position. From the comfort stop position, press the rear of the driver's side switch a second time to open the sunroof to the full-open position.

When the sunroof is opened, an air deflector will automatically raise. The air deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.

Vent: The sunroof has an express-vent open feature. From the closed position, press the rear of the passenger's side switch to vent the sunroof. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time. To close the sunroof, press and hold the front of the passenger's side switch. To stop the sunroof partway, release the switch.

Anti-Pinch Feature: If an object is in the path of the sunroof while it is closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof from closing at the point of the obstruction. The sunroof will then open halfway, and the air deflector will raise. To close the sunroof once it has re-opened, refer to the "Express-Close" or "Manual-Close" functions described previously. If the sunroof is in the vent position, and there is an object in the path of the sunroof when it closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof. To close the sunroof once it has re-opened, refer to the "Manual-Close" or "Express-Close" functions described previously.

Do not keep the sunroof open for long periods of time while the vehicle is not in use. Debris can collect in the tracks, damage the sunroof operation and plug the water draining system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
- Horn 3-6
- Tilt Wheel 3-6
- Heated Steering Wheel 3-6
- Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7
- Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-8
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 3-8
- Flash-to-Pass 3-9
- Windshield Wipers 3-9
- Rainsense™ II Wipers 3-10
- Windshield Washer 3-11
- Rear Window Wiper/Washer 3-12
- Cruise Control 3-13
- Exterior Lamps 3-16
- Headlamps on Reminder 3-21
- Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-21
- Automatic Headlamp System 3-21
- Fog Lamps 3-22
- Instrument Panel Brightness 3-23
- Dome Lamps 3-23
- Dome Lamp Override 3-23
- Entry Lighting 3-23
- Exit Lighting 3-23
- Reading Lamps 3-24
- Electric Power Management 3-24
- Battery Run-Down Protection 3-25
- Accessory Power Outlet(s) 3-25
- Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter 3-26
- Analog Clock 3-26

Climate Controls 3-27
- Dual Automatic Climate Control System 3-27
- Outlet Adjustment 3-31
- Rear Air Conditioning and Heating System and Electronic Climate Controls 3-32

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-33
- Instrument Panel Cluster 3-34
- Speedometer and Odometer 3-35
- Trip Odometer 3-35
- Tachometer 3-35
- Safety Belt Reminders 3-35
- Airbag Readiness Light 3-36
- Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-37
- Charging System Light 3-38
- Brake System Warning Light 3-39
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 3-40
- StabiliTrak® Indicator Light 3-40
- Engine Coolant Temperature Gage 3-41
- Tire Pressure Light 3-41
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-42
- Oil Pressure Light 3-44

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Security Light 3-45
Fog Lamp Light 3-45
Lights On Reminder 3-45
Cruise Control Light 3-46
Highbeam On Light 3-46
Tow/Haul Mode Light 3-46
Fuel Gage 3-46

Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-47
DIC Operation and Displays 3-48
DIC Compass 3-53
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-56
DIC Vehicle Customization 3-65

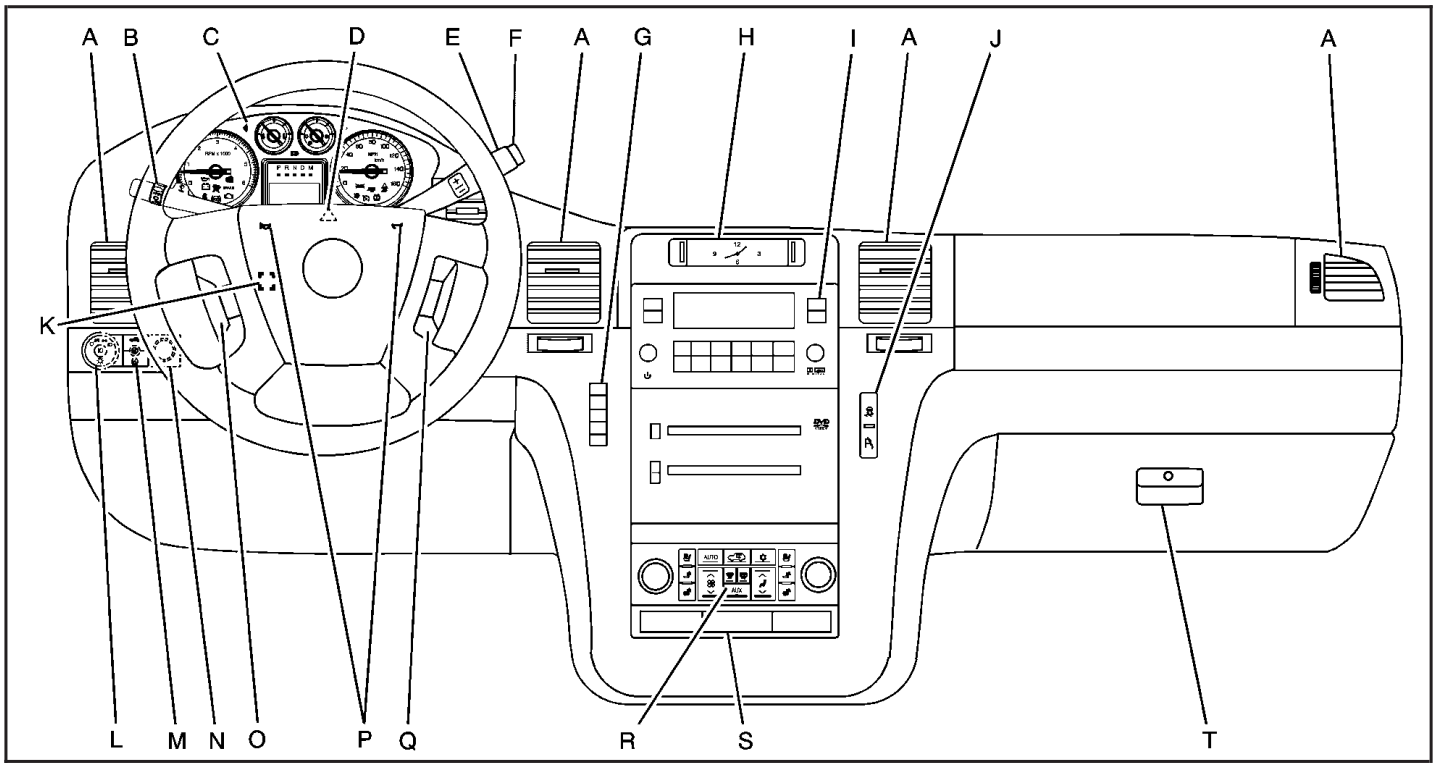
Audio System(s) 3-75
Bluetooth® 3-75
Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Overhead) 3-87
Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Headrest DVD) 3-97
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-113
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-115
Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-115
Radio Reception 3-116
Rear Side Window Antenna 3-117
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-117

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Overview



United States version shown; Canada similar.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The main components of the instrument panel are the following:

A. *Outlet Adjustment on page 3-31*.

B. *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*.

C. *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-34*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.

E. Shift Lever and Range Selection Mode. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-29*.

F. *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33*.

G. *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47*.

H. *Analog Clock on page 3-26*.

I. *Audio System(s) on page 3-75*.

J. *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6*. Rear Park Aid Disable Button. See *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 2-42*.

K. *Tilt Wheel on page 3-6*.

L. *Exterior Lamps on page 3-16*.

M. *Dome Lamp Override on page 3-23*. *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-23*. *Fog Lamps on page 3-22*.

N. Automatic Transfer Case Control. See Escalade Two-Mode Hybrid Supplement for more information.

O. *Cruise Control on page 3-13*. *Heated Steering Wheel on page 3-6* (If Equipped).

P. *Horn on page 3-6*.

Q. *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-115*.

R. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-27*.

S. Pedal Adjust Button. See *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 2-27*. Heated Windshield Washer Fluid Button. See *Windshield Washer on page 3-11*. *Power Assist Steps on page 2-16* (If Equipped).

T. *Glove Box on page 2-62*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hazard Warning Flashers

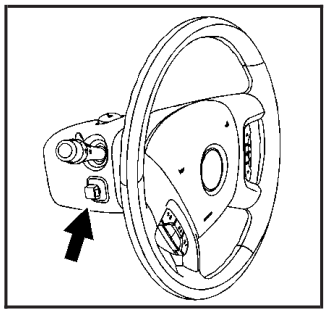
⚠ **(Hazard Warning Flasher):** Press this button located on top of the steering column, to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble. Press again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, the vehicle's turn signals will not work.

Horn

To sound the horn, press the center pad on the steering wheel.

Tilt Wheel



The power tilt wheel control is located on the left side of the steering column.

Push the control up or down to tilt the steering wheel up or down.

To set the memory position, see *Memory Features on page 1-7*.

Heated Steering Wheel

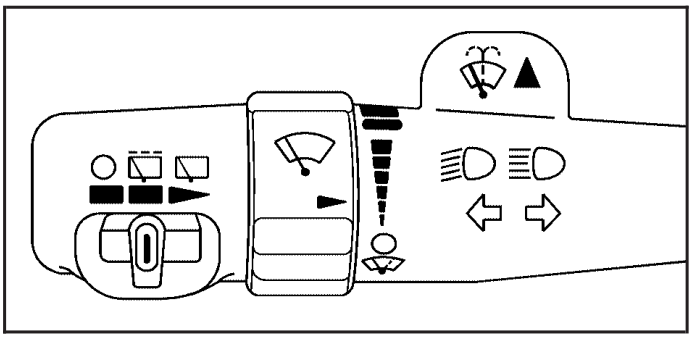
For vehicles with a heated steering wheel, the button for this feature is located on the steering wheel.

: Press to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. A light on the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to start heating.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

: Turn and Lane Change Signals

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: Windshield Wipers

: Windshield Washer

: Rear Wiper Delay

: Rear Wiper

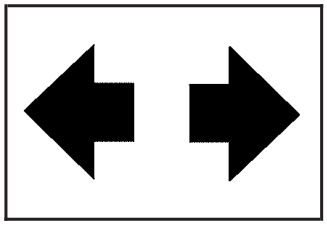
: Rear Wiper Wash

Flash-to-Pass Feature.

Information for these features is on the pages following.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

Raise or lower the lever for less than one second until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. This causes the turn signals to automatically flash three times. It will flash six times if tow-haul mode is active. Holding the turn signal lever for more than one second will cause the turn signals to flash until you release the lever.

The lever returns to its starting position whenever it is released.

If after signaling a turn or a lane change the arrows flash rapidly or do not come on, a signal bulb could be burned out.

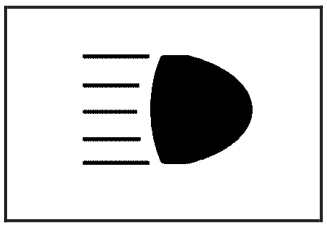
Have the bulbs replaced. If the bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 6-106*.

Turn Signal On Chime

If the turn signal is left on for more than 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), a chime will sound at each flash of the turn signal and the message TURN SIGNAL ON will also appear in the Driver Information Control (DIC). To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

(Headlamp High/Low Beam Changer): To change the headlamps from low to high beam, push the lever toward the instrument panel. To return to low-beam headlamps, pull the multifunction lever toward you. Then release it.



When the high beams are on, this indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will also be on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets you use the high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if the headlamps are in the automatic position.

To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.

If the headlamps are in the automatic position or on low beam, the high-beam headlamps will turn on. They will stay on as long as you hold the lever toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.

For vehicles with High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlamps, the low-beam headlamps must be on for the flash-to-pass feature to work.

Windshield Wipers

Turn the band with the wiper symbol to control the windshield wipers.

(Mist): Turn to mist for a single wiping cycle. Hold it there until the wipers start. Then let go. The wipers stop after one wipe. Hold the band on mist longer, for more wipe cycles.

(Off): Turns the wipers off.

(Delay): Turn the band to adjust the delay time. The delay between wiping cycles becomes shorter as the band is moved to the top of the lever. This can be very useful in light rain or snow.

(Low Speed): For steady wiping at low speed.

(High Speed): For high-speed wiping.

Clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they are frozen to the windshield, gently loosen or thaw them. Damaged wiper blades may not clear the windshield well, making it harder to see and drive safely. If the blades do become damaged, install new blades or blade inserts. For more information, see *Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 6-54*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. A circuit breaker will stop the motor until it cools down. Clear away snow or ice to prevent an overload.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rainsense™ II Wipers

The vehicle has Rainsense™ II windshield wipers. These wipers automatically turn on when a sensor, mounted next to the inside rearview mirror, detects moisture on the windshield. When active, these wipers are able to detect moisture on the windshield and automatically turn on the wipers.

To turn on the Rainsense™ feature, the wipers must be set to one of the five delay settings. Each of the five settings adjusts the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Since different drivers have different setting preferences, it is recommended that the mid-range setting, position three, be used initially. For more wipes, select the higher settings; for fewer wipes, select the lower settings located closer to the off position on the multifunction lever.

The rain sensor will automatically control the frequency of the wipes from off to high speed according to the weather conditions. The wipers can be left in a Rainsense™ mode even when it is not raining.

When Rainsense™ II is active, the headlamps will turn on automatically after approximately eight wipes. The headlamps will turn off if the wiper switch is set to a delay position, and there have been no wipes for approximately three minutes, or if the wiper switch is turned to the off position. If it is dark outside, the headlamps will remain on.

Notice: **Going through an automatic car wash with the wipers on can damage them. Turn the wipers off when going through an automatic car wash.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Washer

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

(Washer Fluid): There is a paddle marked with the windshield washer symbol at the top of the multifunction lever. To spray washer fluid on the windshield, push the paddle. The wipers will clear the window and then either stop or return to your preset speed.

(Heated Windshield Washer): For vehicles with this feature, the button is located in the switchbank under the climate controls. Press while the ignition is turned on to activate the heated windshield washer fluid system. This activation will initiate four heated wash/wipe cycles. The first heated wash/wipe cycle may take up to 40 seconds to occur, depending on outside temperature. After the first wash/wipe cycle, it may take up to 20 seconds for each of the remaining cycles to begin. Press the button again to turn off the heated windshield washer fluid system or it will automatically turn off after four wash/wipe cycles have been completed.

When the heated windshield washer fluid system is activated under certain outside temperature conditions, steam may flow out of the washer nozzles for a short period of time before washer fluid is sprayed. This is a normal condition.

HEATING WASH FLUID WASH WIPES PENDING is displayed on the DIC when the washer system is heating the fluid. WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID is displayed when the washer fluid is low. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Window Wiper/Washer

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

The rear wiper control is located on the turn signal/multifunction lever.

To turn the rear wiper on, slide the lever to a wiper position.

◯ **(Off):** Turns the wiper off.

(Rear Wiper Delay): Turns on the rear wiper delay.

(Rear Wiper): Turns on the rear wiper.

(Rear Wiper Wash): To turn on the rear wiper wash, push the button on the end of the turn signal/ multifunction lever to spray washer fluid on the rear window. The wipers will clear the rear window and either stop or return to your preset speed. For more washer cycles, press and hold the button.

The rear window wiper/washer will not operate if the liftgate or liftglass is open or ajar. If the liftgate or liftglass is opened while the rear wiper is on, the wiper will return to the parked position and stop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

⚠ CAUTION:

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

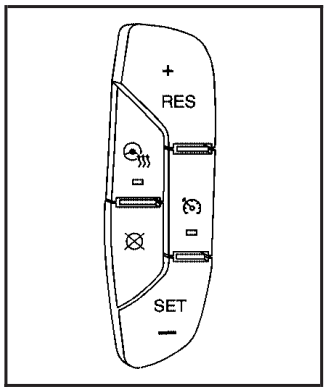
With cruise control, a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

When the brakes are applied, cruise control is turned off.

For vehicles with an Allison® or Hydra-Matic 6-speed automatic transmission, see “Grade Braking and Cruise Grade Braking (Allison Transmission) under *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33* for an explanation of how cruise control interacts with the Range Selection Mode, tow/haul and grade braking systems.

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak®, and the system begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will automatically disengage. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6*. When road conditions allow the cruise control to be safely used again, it can be turned back on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Cruise Control shown with Heated Steering Wheel Button (If Equipped)

The cruise control buttons are located on left side of the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Turns the system on or off. The indicator light is on when cruise control is on and turns off when cruise control is off.

+ RES (Resume/Accelerate): Press to make the vehicle accelerate or resume to a previously set speed.

SET – (Set/Coast): Press to set the speed or make the vehicle decelerate.

(Cancel): Press to cancel cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Setting Cruise Control

Cruise control will not work if the parking brake is set, or if the master cylinder brake fluid level is low.

The cruise control light on the instrument panel cluster comes on after the cruise control has been set to the desired speed.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Press the button.
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press the SET– button located on the steering wheel and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, this shuts off the cruise control. But it does not need to be reset.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, press the +RES button on the steering wheel. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and stays there.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

To increase the cruise speed while using cruise control:

- Press and hold the +RES button on the steering wheel until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press the +RES button. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

To reduce the vehicle speed while using cruise control:

- Press and hold the SET– button on the steering wheel until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, press the SET– button on the steering wheel briefly. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previous set cruise speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle's speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle's speed down. When the brakes are applied the cruise control turns off.

Ending Cruise Control

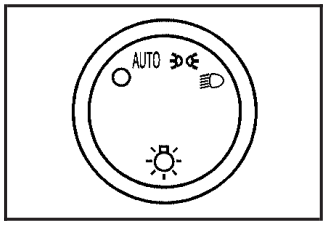
There are three ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press the ⊗ button on the steering wheel.
- Press the button on the steering wheel.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed memory is erased when the cruise control or the ignition is turned off.

Exterior Lamps



The exterior lamps control is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

It controls the following systems:

- Headlamps
- Taillamps
- Parking Lamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The exterior lamps control has four positions:

(Off): Turns off the automatic headlamps and daytime running lamps (DRL). Turning the headlamp control to the off position again will turn the automatic headlamps or DRL back on.

For vehicles first sold in Canada, the off position only works when the vehicle is shifted into the P (Park) position.

AUTO (Automatic): Automatically turns on the headlamps at normal brightness, together with the following:

- Parking Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

(Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps together with the following:

- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps together with the following lamps listed below.

- Parking Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

When the headlamps are turned on while the vehicle is on, the headlamps will turn off automatically 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off. When the headlamps are turned on while the vehicle is off, the headlamps will stay on for 10 minutes before automatically turning off to prevent the battery from being drained. Turn the headlamp control to off and then back to the headlamp on position to make the headlamps stay on for an additional 10 minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IntelliBeam® Intelligent High-Beam Headlamp Control System

For vehicles with this feature, be sure to read this entire section before using it.

IntelliBeam® is an enhancement to the vehicle's headlamp system. Using a digital light sensor on the rearview mirror, this system will turn the vehicle's high-beam headlamps on and off according to surrounding traffic conditions.

The IntelliBeam® system turns the high-beam headlamps on when it is dark enough, there is no other traffic present, and the IntelliBeam® system is enabled.

Turning On and Enabling IntelliBeam®

Press and release the IntelliBeam® button on the inside rear view mirror. The IntelliBeam® indicator on the mirror will turn on to let you know the system has been turned on. Once the system has been turned on, it will remain on each time the vehicle is started. Additionally, the IntelliBeam® system must be enabled.

To enable the IntelliBeam® system, turn the exterior lamp control to AUTO, with the turn signal/multifunction lever in its neutral position. The High-Beam On Light will appear on the instrument panel cluster when the high-beams are on. See *Highbeam On Light on page 3-46*.

Driving with IntelliBeam®

IntelliBeam® will only activate your high-beams when driving over 20 mph (32 km/h).

The high-beam headlamps will remain on, under the automatic control of IntelliBeam®, until any of the following situations occur:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's taillamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that high-beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 15 mph (24 km/h).
- The headlamp stalk is moved forward to the high-beam position. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8*.

  When either of these conditions occur, the IntelliBeam® feature will be disabled and the IntelliBeam® light in the mirror will turn off until the high-beam stalk is returned to the neutral position.
- If IntelliBeam® was using low-beams prior to this action, the IntelliBeam® feature will be temporarily disabled until the stalk is returned to the neutral position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The exterior lamp control is turned to any setting except AUTO.

  When this occurs, IntelliBeam® will be disabled until the control is turned back to the AUTO position.
- The IntelliBeam® system is turned off at the inside rearview mirror.

IntelliBeam® may not turn off the high-beams if the system cannot detect other vehicle's lamps because of any of the following:

- The others vehicle's lamp(s) are missing, damaged, obstructed from view or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's lamp(s) are covered with dirt, snow and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's lamp(s) cannot be detected due to dense exhaust, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist or other airborne obstructions.
- Your vehicle's windshield is dirty, cracked or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the IntelliBeam light sensor.
- Your vehicle's windshield is covered with ice, dirt, haze or other obstructions.
- Your vehicle is loaded such that the front end of the vehicle points upward, causing the IntelliBeam sensor to aim high and not detect headlamps and taillamps.
- You are driving on winding or hilly roads.

You may need to manually disable or cancel the high-beam headlamps by turning the low-beam headlamps on, if any of the above conditions exist.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disabling and Resetting IntelliBeam® at the Rearview Mirror

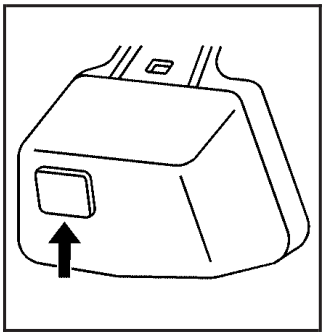
IntelliBeam® can be disabled by using the controls on the inside rearview mirror.

AUTO (On/Off): To disable the system, press this button on the inside rearview mirror. The IntelliBeam® indicator will turn off and will not come back on until the IntelliBeam® button is pressed again.

(Stalk Disable): When IntelliBeam® has turned on the high-beams, pull or push the high-beam stalk. This will disable IntelliBeam®. The IntelliBeam® indicator on the mirror will turn off. To re-enable IntelliBeam®, press the IntelliBeam® button on the mirror.

A different sensitivity setting is available for dealer diagnostics. This is done by pushing and holding this button for 20 seconds until the IntelliBeam® indicator light flashes three times. If you accidentally activate this, the vehicle's setting will automatically be reset each time the ignition is turned off and then on again.

Cleaning the IntelliBeam® Light Sensor



The light sensor is located on the inside of the vehicle in front of the inside rearview mirror.

Clean the light sensor window, periodically, using glass cleaner on a soft cloth. Gently wipe the sensor window. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the surface of the sensor window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlamps on Reminder

If a door is open, a reminder chime will sound when the headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on and the key is out of the ignition. To turn off the chime, turn the headlamp switch to off or AUTO and then back on, or close and re-open the door. In the AUTO mode, the headlamps turn off once the ignition is in LOCK/OFF or may remain on until the headlamp delay ends (if enabled in the DIC). See “Exit Lighting” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65*.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system will come on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamps control is in AUTO.
- The transmission is not in P (Park).
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL are on, only the DRL lamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarker, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on.

When it begins to get dark, the automatic headlamp system will switch from DRL to the headlamps.

To turn off the DRL lamps, turn the exterior lamps control to the OFF position and then release. For vehicles first sold in Canada, the transmission must be in the P (Park) position, before the DRL lamps can be turned off.

Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside, the automatic headlamp system turns on the headlamps at the normal brightness, along with the taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, and the instrument panel lights. The radio lights will also be dim.

To turn off the automatic headlamp system, turn the exterior lamps switch to the off position and then release it. For vehicles first sold in Canada, the transmission must be in the P (Park) position, before the automatic headlamp system can be turned off.

The vehicle has a light sensor located on the top of the instrument panel in the defroster grille that regulates when the automatic headlamps turn on. Do not cover the sensor or the headlamps will come on whenever the ignition is on.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage, heavy overcast weather, or a tunnel. This is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the automatic headlamp systems so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp system is only affected when the light sensor detects a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system will come on immediately. Once the vehicle leaves the garage, it takes approximately one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is bright enough outside. During that delay, the instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-23*.

To idle the vehicle with the automatic headlamp system off, turn the control to the off position.

The headlamps will also stay on after you exit the vehicle. This feature can be programmed using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65*.

The regular headlamp system can be turned on when needed.

Fog Lamps

For vehicles with fog lamps, the control is located next to the exterior lamps control on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column.

(Fog Lamps): Press the button to turn the fog lamps on or off. A indicator light comes on in the instrument panel cluster. The ignition must be in the ON/RUN position for the fog lamps to come on.

When the fog lamps are turned on, the headlamps automatically turn on.

When the headlamps are changed to high-beam, the fog lamps also go off. When the high-beam headlamps go off, the fog lamps will come on again.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Brightness

(Instrument Panel Brightness): This feature controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights and is located next to the exterior lamp control.

Push the knob to extend out and then it can be turned.

Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to brighten or dim the instrument panel lights. Turning the knob to the farthest clockwise position turns on the dome lamps.

Dome Lamps

The dome lamps come on when any door is opened. They turn off after all the doors are closed.

The dome lamps can also be turned on by turning the instrument panel brightness knob, located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column, clockwise to the farthest position. In this position, the dome lamps remain on whether a door is opened or closed.

Dome Lamp Override

The dome lamp override button is located next to the exterior lamps control.

DOME OFF **(Dome Off):** Press the button in and the dome lamps remain off when a door is opened. Press the button again to return it to the extended position so that the dome lamps come on when a door is opened.

Entry Lighting

The vehicle has an illuminated entry feature.

When the doors are opened, the dome lamps will come on if the dome override button is in the extended position. If the dome override button is pressed in, the lamps will not come on.

Exit Lighting

The interior lamps come on when the key is removed from the ignition. They turn off automatically in 20 seconds. The lights do not come on if the dome override button is pressed in.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reading Lamps

If the vehicle has reading lamps, press the button located next to the lamp to turn it on or off.

The vehicle may also have reading lamps in other locations. The lamps cannot be adjusted.

Electric Power Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gage or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message might be displayed, such as BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE, BATTERY VOLTAGE LOW, or LOW BATTERY. If this message is displayed, it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery Run-Down Protection

This feature shuts off the dome lamps if they are left on for more than 10 minutes when the ignition is in LOCK/OFF. This helps to prevent the battery from running down.

Accessory Power Outlet(s)

The accessory power outlets let you plug in auxiliary electrical equipment, such as a cellular telephone.

The vehicle has three accessory power outlets. They are located inside the floor console storage bin, on the back of the floor console, and in the rear cargo area on the passenger side.

To use an accessory power outlet, remove the protective cap. When not in use, always cover the accessory power outlet with the protective cap.

Certain power accessory plugs may not be compatible to the accessory power outlet and could result in blown adapter or vehicle fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer/retailer for additional information on the accessory power plugs.

The accessory power outlets are powered, even when the ignition is in LOCK/OFF. Continuing to use power outlets while the ignition is in LOCK/OFF may cause the vehicle's battery to run down.

Notice: **Adding any electrical equipment to the vehicle can damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not use equipment exceeding maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding electrical equipment.**

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. Do not use equipment exceeding the maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes.

Notice: **Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter

The front ashtray and cigarette lighter are located in the center console near the cupholders, if the vehicle has them. Press on the access door to open it and use the ashtray and lighter.

Notice: **If papers, pins, or other flammable items are put in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage the vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

To remove the ashtray, pull it from the center console. Slide it back in and push down to be sure it is secure.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it in all the way, and let go. When it is ready, it will pop back out by itself.

Notice: **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating does not let the lighter back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating can occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.**

Analog Clock

The analog clock is not connected with any other vehicle system and runs by itself.

To adjust the clock, do the following:

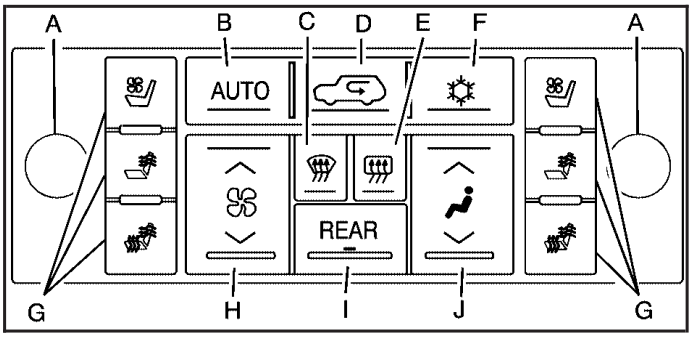
1. Locate the adjustment button, near the lower left corner of the clock.
2. Push and hold the adjustment button to advance the clock hands. Holding the button down will cause the clock to advance faster. Release the button before you get to the desired time.
3. Push and release the button to increase the time by one minute increments until the desired time is reached.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Controls

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, and ventilation in the vehicle can be controlled with this system. The vehicle also has a flow-through ventilation system described later in this section.



Climate Control with Cooled and Heated Seats shown

A. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
B. AUTO
C. Defrost
D. Recirculation
E. Rear Window Defogger
F. Air Conditioning
G. Heated and Cooled Seats
H. Fan Control
I. REAR
J. Air Delivery Mode Control

⏻ **(Off):** Press the driver side temperature knob to turn the climate control system off. Outside air still enters the vehicle, and is directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature knob. Press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the defrost button, the AUTO button, driver's side temperature knob, or the air conditioning button to turn the system on when it is off.

Driver and Passenger Side Temperature Knob

The driver and passenger side temperature knobs are used to adjust the temperature of the air coming through the system on the driver or passenger's side of the vehicle. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air always flows through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See "Recirculation" later in this section.

Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the cabin temperature. The display will show the temperature setting increasing or decreasing.

Set the passenger temperature setting to match the driver temperature setting by pressing the passenger temperature knob.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Operation

AUTO (Automatic): When automatic operation is active the system will control the inside temperature, the air delivery, and the fan speed.

Use the steps below to place the entire system in automatic mode:

1. Press the AUTO button.

   When AUTO is selected, the display will change to show the current temperature(s) and AUTO come on the display. The current delivery mode and fan speed will also be displayed for approximately five seconds.

   When AUTO is selected, the air conditioning operation and air inlet will be automatically controlled. The air conditioning compressor will run when the outside temperature is over about 40°F (4°C). The air inlet will normally be set to outside air. If it is hot outside, the air inlet may automatically switch to recirculate inside air to help quickly cool down the vehicle. The light on the button comes on in recirculation.

2. Set the driver's and passenger's temperature.

   To find your comfort setting, start with a 74°F (23°C) temperature setting and allow about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Use the driver or passenger temperature buttons to adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If a temperature setting of 60°F (15°C) is chosen, the system remains at the maximum cooling setting. If a temperature setting of 90°F (32°C) is chosen, the system remains at the maximum heat setting. Choosing either maximum setting will not cause the vehicle to heat or cool any faster.

Be careful not to cover the sensor located on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. This sensor regulates air temperature based on sun load and also turns on the headlamps.

To avoid blowing cold air in cold weather, the system will delay turning on the fan until warm air is available. The length of delay depends on the engine coolant temperature. Pressing the fan switch will override this delay and change the fan to a selected speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Operation

(Fan Control): Press the up or down arrows to increase or decrease the fan speed

Pressing this button when the system is off will turn the system on.

Pressing either arrow while using automatic operation will place the fan in manual operation. The fan setting will display and the AUTO light will turn off. The air delivery will remain in automatic operation.

(Air Delivery Mode Control): Press to change the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. Repeatedly press the button until the desired mode appears on the display.

When the system is turned off, the display goes blank after displaying the current status of the system.

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel and floor outlets. Some air is directed towards the windshield and side window outlets. Cooler air is directed to the upper vents and warmer air to the floor vents.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some to the windshield, side window outlets, and second row floor outlets. In this mode, the system automatically selects outside air.

(Defog): This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, floor outlets, and side window vents. In this mode, the system turns off recirculation and runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is close to freezing. The recirculation mode cannot be selected while in the defog mode.

(Defrost): This mode removes fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and side window vents, with some directed to the floor vents. In this mode, the system automatically forces outside air into the vehicle and runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is close to freezing. The recirculation mode cannot be selected while in the defrost mode.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning (A/C) compressor on and off. An indicator light comes on to show that the air conditioning is on.

Pressing this button when the outside temperature is too cool for air conditioning will make the air conditioning indicator flash three times and then turn off indicating the air conditioning mode is not available. If the air conditioning is on and the outside temperature drops below a temperature which is too cool for air conditioning to be effective, the air conditioning light turns off to show that the air conditioning mode has been canceled.

On hot days, open the windows long enough to let hot inside air escape. This helps to reduce the time it takes for the vehicle to cool down. It also helps the system to operate more efficiently.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip under the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

(Recirculation): Press to turn the recirculation mode on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that the recirculation is on.

This mode recirculates and helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle. It can be used to help prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle.

The recirculation mode cannot be used with floor, defog, or defrost modes. If recirculation is selected with one of those modes, the indicator light flashes three times and then turns off. The air conditioning compressor also comes on when this mode is activated. While in recirculation mode the windows may fog when the weather is cold and damp. To clear the fog, select either the defog or defrost mode and increase the fan speed.

The recirculation mode can also be turned off by turning off the ignition.

REAR: For vehicles with the rear heating and air conditioning controls. Press the REAR button to turn the rear climate control system on or off. See *Rear Air Conditioning and Heating System and Electronic Climate Controls on page 3-32*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. It automatically turns off after it has been activated. The defogger can also be turned off by turning off the engine. Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

Notice: **Do not use a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window. Do not adhere anything to the defogger grid lines in the rear glass. These actions may damage the rear defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**

Heated Mirrors: For vehicles with heated outside rearview mirrors, the mirrors heat to help clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror when the rear window defog button is pressed. See *Outside Heated Mirrors on page 2-42*.

Heated or Cooled Seats: For vehicles with heated seats or heated and cooled seats, see *Heated Seats on page 1-5* or *Heated and Cooled Seats on page 1-6*.

Outlet Adjustment

Use the air outlets located in the center and on the side of the instrument panel to direct the airflow.

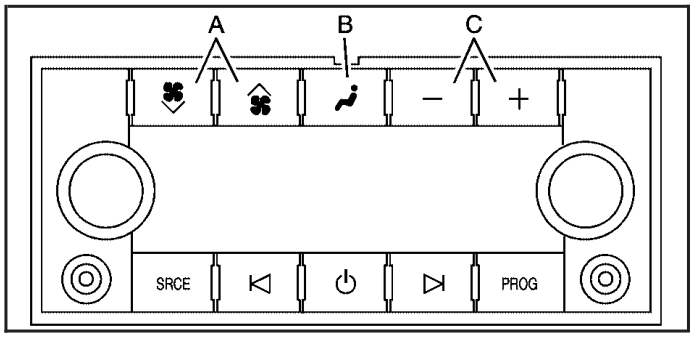
Operation Tips

- Keep the hood and front air inlets free of ice, snow, or any other obstruction (such as leaves). The heater and defroster will work far better, reducing the chance of fogging the inside of the windows.
- When you enter a vehicle in cold weather, press the fan up button to the maximum fan level before driving. This helps clear the intake ducts of snow and moisture, and reduces the chance of fogging the inside of the window.
- Keep the air path under the front seats clear of objects. This helps air to circulate throughout the vehicle.
- Adding outside equipment to the front of the vehicle, such as hood-air deflectors, may affect the performance of the heating and air conditioning system. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Air Conditioning and Heating System and Electronic Climate Controls

For vehicles with the rear heat and air conditioning controls, they are integrated with the rear seat audio controls located in the center console. The system can be controlled from the front controls as well as the rear controls.



Rear Climate Control with Rear Seat Audio Controls

A. Fan Control
B. Air Delivery Mode Control
C. Temperature Control

REAR: Press the REAR button on the front climate control system to turn the rear climate control system on or off. An indicator comes on when the rear system is on.

The rear climate control system can also be turned off by pressing and holding the button. To turn the system on from the rear seats, press any rear climate control button, except the button.

Mimic Mode: This mode matches the rear climate control to the front climate control airflow settings. It comes on when REAR is pressed the first time.

Independent Mode: This mode directs rear seating airflow according to the settings of the rear controls.

To turn the system on from the rear, press any rear climate control button, except the button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Operation, If Equipped.

AUTO: Press the air delivery mode button until this setting is selected to control the inside temperature, air delivery, and fan speed. AUTO appears in the display when automatic operation is active.

+/– (Increase/Decrease Temperature): Press the + or – buttons to increase or decrease the cabin temperature. The rear control temperature display will show the temperature setting increasing or decreasing.

The display only indicates climate control functions when the system is in rear independent mode.

Manual Operation

(Fan Control): Press these buttons on the rear seat audio control panel to increase or decrease the airflow. Pressing the fan up button when the system is off will turn the system on. The air delivery mode will remain under automatic control.

+/– (Temperature Control): Press these buttons to adjust the temperature of the air flowing into the passenger area. Press the + button for warmer air and press the – button for cooler air.

(Air Delivery Mode Control): Press the mode button to change the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. Repeatedly press the button until the desired mode appears on the display. Multiple presses will cycle through the delivery selections.

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gages could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

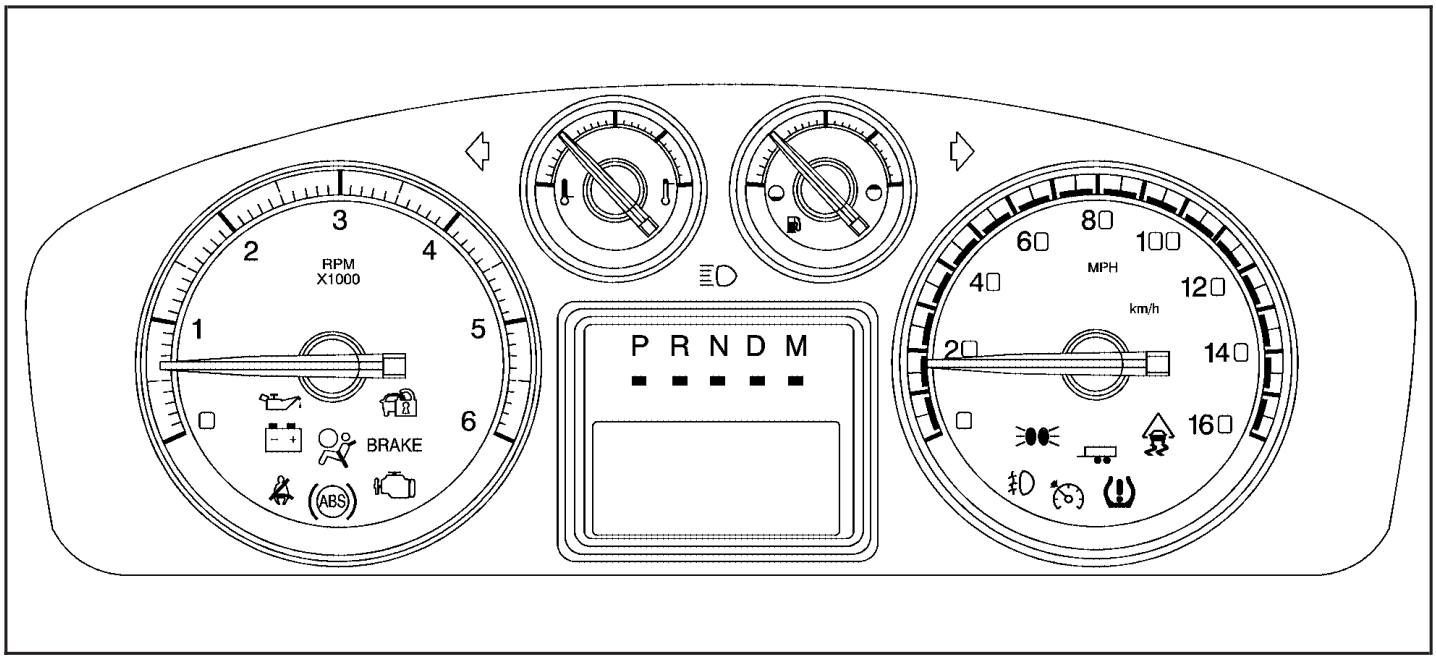
Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Cluster

The instrument panel cluster is designed to let show how the vehicle is running. It shows how fast the vehicle is going, about how much fuel the vehicle has and many other things needed to drive safely and economically.



United States version shown, Canada similar.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speedometer and Odometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h).

The vehicle's odometer works together with the Driver Information Center (DIC). The Trip odometer can be set. See "Trip Odometer" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

The odometer mileage can be checked while the vehicle is not running. Simply press the trip stem on the instrument panel cluster.

If the vehicle ever needs a new odometer installed, the new one will be set to the correct mileage total of the old odometer.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer can show how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last set to zero.

For more information see "Trip Odometer" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Safety Belt Reminders

Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind a driver to fasten the safety belt, unless the driver safety belt is already buckled.

The safety belt light comes on and stays on for several seconds, then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. If the driver safety belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

Several seconds after the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. This only occurs if the passenger airbag is enabled. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87* for more information. The passenger safety belt light, located on the instrument panel, comes on and stays on for several seconds and then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

The system checks the airbag's electrical system for possible malfunctions. If the light stays on it indicates there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 1-79*.

The airbag readiness light flashes for a few seconds when the engine is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

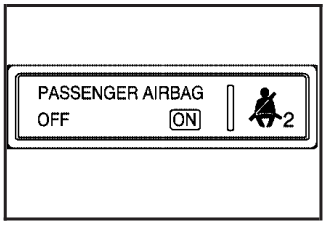
⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

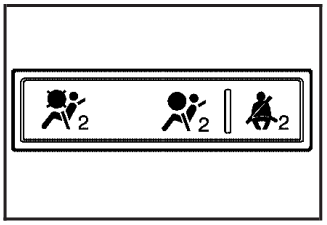
If there is a problem with the airbag system, an airbag Driver Information Center (DIC) message can also come on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* for more information.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-87* for important safety information. The overhead console has a passenger airbag status indicator.



United States



Canada

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. If you are using remote start to start the vehicle from a distance, if equipped, you may not see the system check.

Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger frontal airbag.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

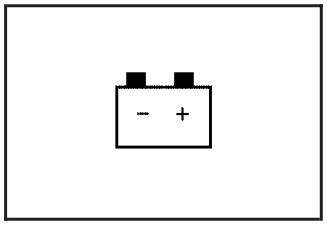
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer/retailer for service.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-36* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to START, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

The light should go out once the engine starts. If it stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the charging system. A charging system message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) can also appear. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* for more information. This light could indicate that there are problems with a generator drive belt, or that there is an electrical problem. Have it checked right away. If the vehicle must be driven a short distance with the light on, turn off accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

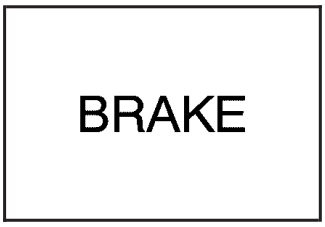
Brake System Warning Light

With the ignition on, the brake system warning light comes on when the parking brake is set. If the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged, a chime sounds when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

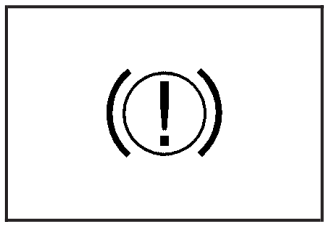
The vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part is not working, the other part can still work and stop the vehicle. For good braking both parts need to be working well.

If the warning light comes on and a chime sounds there could be a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected by your dealer/retailer.

This light can also come on due to low brake fluid. See *Brakes on page 6-36* for more information.



United States



Canada

This light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN. If it does not, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

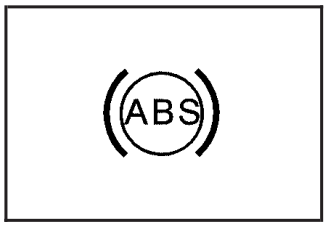
If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The pedal could be harder to push or could go closer to the floor. It can take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle on page 5-40*.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



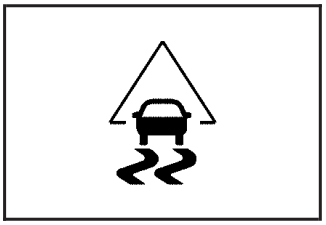
For vehicles with the Antilock Brake System (ABS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.

For vehicles with a Driver Information Center (DIC), see *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* for all brake related DIC messages.

StabiliTrak® Indicator Light



The StabiliTrak indicator light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

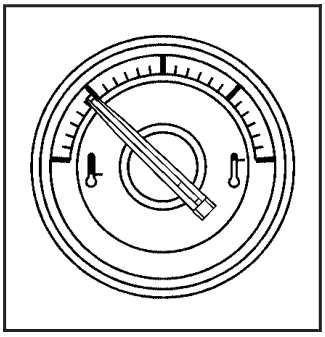
If the light comes on and stays on while driving, there might be a problem with the StabiliTrak® system and the vehicle may need service. When this warning light is on, the system is off and does not limit wheel spin.

The light flashes if the system is active and is working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

See *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage

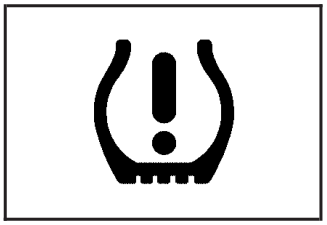


This gage shows the engine coolant temperature.

If the indicator on the gage moves towards the shaded area on the thermostat, it means that the engine coolant has overheated. If the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

See *Engine Overheating on page 6-30*.

Tire Pressure Light



For vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system, this light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

It provides information about tire pressures and the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

When the Light is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires is significantly underinflated.

A tire pressure message in the Driver Information Center (DIC), can accompany the light. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* for more information. Stop and check the tires as soon as it is safe to do so. If a tire is underinflated, inflate to the proper pressure. See *Tires on page 6-56* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

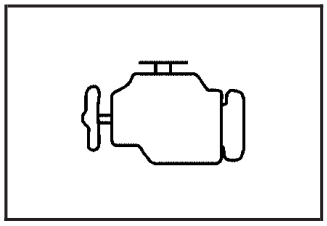
When the Light Flashes First and Then is On Steady

This indicates that there could be a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitor System. The light flashes for about a minute and stays on steady for the remainder of the ignition cycle. This sequence repeats with every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 6-64* for more information.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine Light

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It ensures that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.



This light should come on when the ignition is on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

If the check engine light comes on and stays on, while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, after a while, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle's fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 6-3*.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park the vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

An emission system malfunction might be corrected by doing the following:

- Make sure the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank on page 6-9*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- If the vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle of water, the vehicle's electrical system might be wet. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.
- Make sure to fuel the vehicle with quality fuel. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and can cause: stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

  If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

  See *Gasoline Octane on page 6-5*.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer/retailer can check the vehicle. The dealer/retailer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

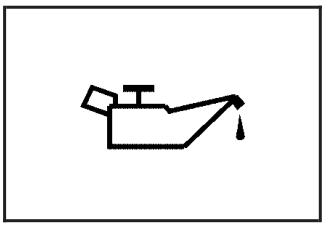
Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some state/provincial and local governments have or might begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on the vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things to know to help the vehicle pass an inspection:

- The vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on with the engine running, or if the key is in ON/RUN and the light is not on.
- The vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD II (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if the battery has recently been replaced or if the battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD II system readiness, your dealer/retailer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Oil Pressure Light



⚠ CAUTION:

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. The engine can become so hot that it catches fire. Someone could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced.

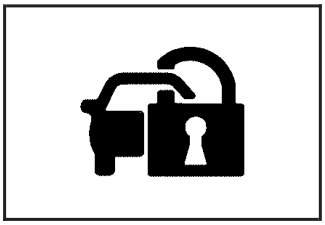
Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

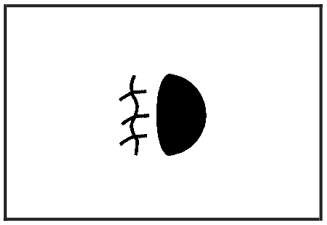
If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and it might have some other system problem.

Security Light



For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-21*.

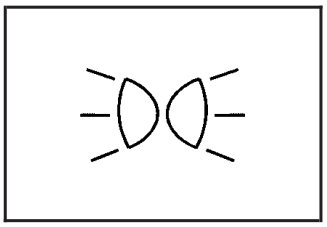
Fog Lamp Light



The fog lamp light comes on when the fog lamps are in use.

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps on page 3-22* for more information.

Lights On Reminder

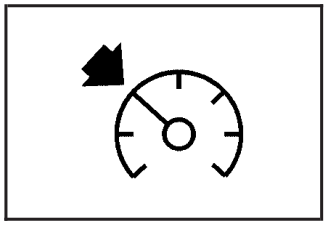


This light comes on whenever the parking lamps are on.

See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-16* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

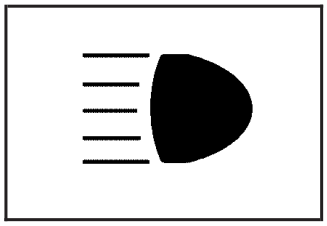
Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 3-13* for more information.

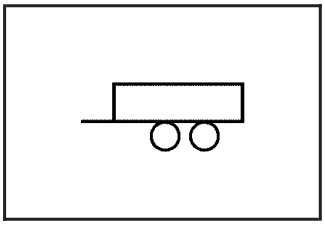
Highbeam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8* for more information.

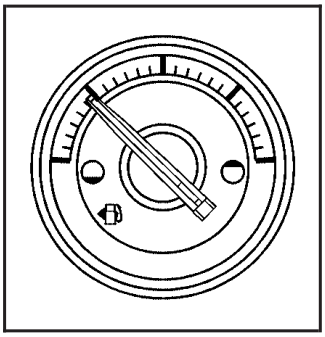
Tow/Haul Mode Light



This light comes on when the Tow/Haul mode has been activated.

For more information, see *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33*.

Fuel Gage



When the ignition is on, the fuel gage shows about how much fuel the vehicle has left in the tank.

An arrow on the fuel gage indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The gage will first indicate empty before the vehicle is out of fuel, but the vehicle's fuel tank should be filled soon.

Here are some situations owners may experience with the fuel gage. None of these indicate a problem with the fuel gage.

- At the gas station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the fuel gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Driver Information Center (DIC)

Your vehicle has a Driver Information Center (DIC).

The DIC displays information about your vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected. The DIC also allows some features to be customized. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

All messages will appear in the DIC display located in the center of the instrument panel cluster.

The DIC comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay, the DIC will display the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* and *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for the displays available.

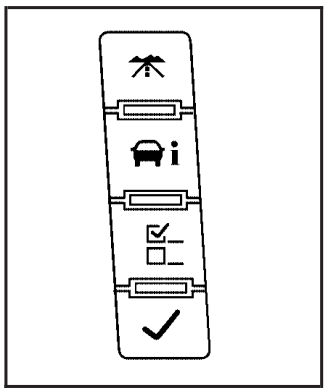
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIC Operation and Displays

The DIC has different displays which can be accessed by pressing the DIC buttons located on the instrument panel, next to the steering wheel.

The DIC displays trip, fuel, and vehicle system information, and warning messages if a system problem is detected. A digital speedometer also appears at the bottom of the DIC display. The digital speedometer can be enabled or disabled. See “DISPLAY DIGITAL SPEED” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

DIC Buttons



The buttons are the trip/fuel, vehicle information, customization, and set/reset buttons. The button functions are detailed in the following pages.

(Trip/Fuel): Press this button to display the odometer, trip odometer, fuel range, average economy, fuel used, timer, and transmission temperature. The compass and outside air temperature will also be shown in the display. The temperature will be shown in °F or °C depending on the units selected.

(Vehicle Information): Press this button to display the oil life, units, side blind zone system on/off, tire pressure readings for vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter programming, compass zone setting, and compass recalibration.

(Customization): Press this button to customize the feature settings on your vehicle. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

(Set/Reset): Press this button to set or reset certain functions and to turn off or acknowledge messages on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip/Fuel Menu Items

(Trip/Fuel): Press this button to scroll through the following menu items:

Odometer

Press the trip/fuel button until ODOMETER displays. This display shows the distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km).

To switch between English and metric measurements, see “Units” later in this section.

Trip Odometer

Press the trip/fuel button until TRIP displays. This display shows the current distance traveled in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km) since the last reset for the trip odometer.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the set/reset button while the trip odometer is displayed.

Fuel Range

Press the trip/fuel button until FUEL RANGE displays. This display shows the approximate number of remaining miles (mi) or kilometers (km) the vehicle can be driven without refueling. The display will show LOW if the fuel level is low.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle’s fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This estimate will change if driving conditions change. For example, if driving in traffic and making frequent stops, this display may read one number, but if the vehicle is driven on a freeway, the number may change even though the same amount of fuel is in the fuel tank. This is because different driving conditions produce different fuel economies. Generally, freeway driving produces better fuel economy than city driving. Fuel range cannot be reset.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Average Economy

Press the trip/fuel button until AVERAGE ECONOMY displays. This display shows the approximate average miles per gallon (mpg) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of mpg (L/100 km) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. To reset AVERAGE ECONOMY, press and hold the set/reset button.

Fuel Used

Press the trip/fuel button until FUEL USED displays. This display shows the number of gallons (gal) or liters (L) of fuel used since the last reset of this menu item. To reset the fuel used information, press and hold the set/reset button while FUEL USED is displayed.

Timer

Press the trip/fuel button until TIMER displays. This display can be used as a timer.

To start the timer, press the set/reset button while TIMER is displayed. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will return to zero.

To stop the timer, press the set/reset button briefly while TIMER is displayed.

To reset the timer to zero, press and hold the set/reset button while TIMER is displayed.

Transmission Temperature

Press the trip/fuel button until TRANS TEMP displays. This display shows the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid in either degrees Fahrenheit (°F) or degrees Celsius (°C).

Average Vehicle Speed

Press the trip/fuel button until AVERAGE SPEED displays. This display shows the average speed in miles per hour (MPH) or kilometers per hour (km/h).

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Information Menu Items

(Vehicle Information): Press this button to scroll through the following menu items:

Oil Life

Press the vehicle information button until OIL LIFE REMAINING displays. This display shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If you see 99% OIL LIFE REMAINING on the display, that means 99% of the current oil life remains. The engine oil life system will alert you to change the oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See "CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*. You should change the oil as soon as you can. See *Engine Oil on page 6-15*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4* for more information.

Remember, you must reset the OIL LIFE display yourself after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Also, be careful not to reset the OIL LIFE display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 6-18*.

Side Blind Zone Alert

If your vehicle has the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system, this display allows the system to be turned on or off. Once in this display, press the set/reset button to select between ON or OFF. If you choose ON, the system will be turned on. If you choose OFF, the system will be turned off. When the SBZA system is turned off, the DIC will display the SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM OFF message as a reminder that the system has been turned off. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* and *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) on page 2-44* for more information.

Units

Press the vehicle information button until UNITS displays. This display allows you to select between English or Metric units of measurement. Once in this display, press the set/reset button to select between ENGLISH or METRIC units. All of the vehicle information will then be displayed in the unit of measurement selected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), the pressure for each tire can be viewed in the DIC. The tire pressure will be shown in either pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa). Press the vehicle information button until the DIC displays FRONT TIRES PSI (kPa) LEFT ## RIGHT ##. Press the vehicle information button again until the DIC displays REAR TIRES PSI (kPa) LEFT ## RIGHT ##.

If a low or high tire pressure condition is detected by the system while driving, a message advising you to check the pressure in a specific tire will appear in the display. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56* for more information.

If the tire pressure display shows dashes instead of a value, there may be a problem with your vehicle. If this consistently occurs, see your dealer/retailer for service.

Battery Voltage

This display shows the current battery voltage. If the voltage is in the normal range, the value will display. For example, the display may read BATTERY VOLTAGE 13.2 VOLTS. If the voltage is low, the display will show LOW. If the voltage is high, the display will show HIGH. Your vehicle's charging system regulates voltage based on the state of the battery. The battery voltage may fluctuate when viewing this information on the DIC. This is normal. See *Charging System Light on page 3-38* for more information. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*.

Oil Pressure

This display will show the oil pressure in either pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Relearn Remote Key

This display allows you to match Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters to your vehicle. To match an RKE transmitter to your vehicle:

1. Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN REMOTE KEY displays.
2. Press the set/reset button until REMOTE KEY LEARNING ACTIVE is displayed.
3. Press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the first transmitter at the same time for about 15 seconds.

   On vehicles with memory recall seats, the first transmitter learned will match driver 1 and the second will match driver 2.

   A chime will sound indicating that the transmitter is matched.
4. To match additional transmitters at this time, repeat Step 3.

   Each vehicle can have a maximum of eight transmitters matched to it.
5. To exit the programming mode, you must cycle the key to LOCK/OFF.

Compass Zone Setting

This display allows for setting the compass zone. See *DIC Compass on page 3-53* for more information.

Compass Recalibration

This display allows for calibrating the compass. See *DIC Compass on page 3-53* for more information.

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

DIC Compass

Your vehicle may have a compass in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

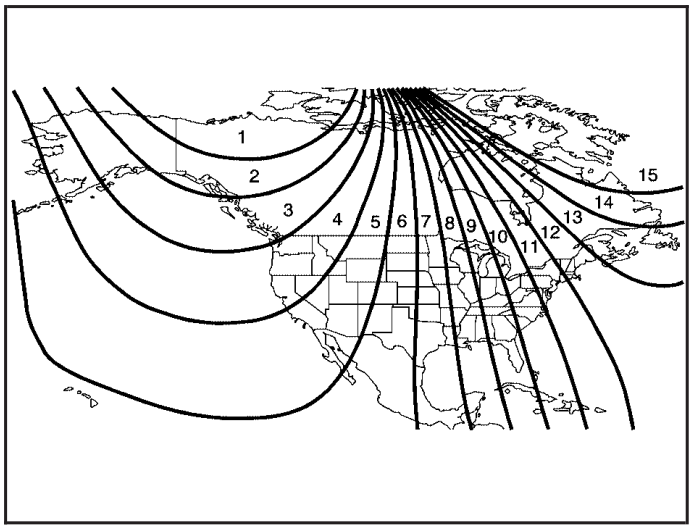
Compass Zone

The zone is set to zone eight upon leaving the factory. Your dealer/retailer will set the correct zone for your location.

Under certain circumstances, such as during a long distance cross-country trip or moving to a new state or province, it will be necessary to compensate for compass variance by resetting the zone through the DIC if the zone is not set correctly.

Compass variance is the difference between the earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If the compass is not set to the zone where you live, the compass may give false readings. The compass must be set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is traveling.

To adjust for compass variance, use the following procedure:



Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure

1. Do not set the compass zone when the vehicle is moving. Only set it when the vehicle is in P (Park).

   Press the vehicle information button until PRESS √ TO CHANGE COMPASS ZONE displays.

2. Find the vehicle's current location and variance zone number on the map.

   Zones 1 through 15 are available.

3. Press the set/reset button to scroll through and select the appropriate variance zone.
4. Press the trip/fuel button until the vehicle heading, for example, N for North, is displayed in the DIC.
5. If calibration is necessary, calibrate the compass. See "Compass Calibration Procedure" following.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass Calibration

The compass can be manually calibrated. Only calibrate the compass in a magnetically clean and safe location, such as an open parking lot, where driving the vehicle in circles is not a danger. It is suggested to calibrate away from tall buildings, utility wires, manhole covers, or other industrial structures, if possible.

If CAL should ever appear in the DIC display, the compass should be calibrated.

If the DIC display does not show a heading, for example, N for North, or the heading does not change after making turns, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic CB or cell phone antenna mount, a magnetic emergency light, magnetic note pad holder, or any other magnetic item. Turn off the vehicle, move the magnetic item, then turn on the vehicle and calibrate the compass.

To calibrate the compass, use the following procedure:

Compass Calibration Procedure

1. Before calibrating the compass, make sure the compass zone is set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is located. See “Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure” earlier in this section.

   Do not operate any switches such as window, sunroof, climate controls, seats, etc. during the calibration procedure.
2. Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO CALIBRATE COMPAS (Compass) displays.
3. Press the set/reset button to start the compass calibration.
4. The DIC will display CALIBRATING: DRIVE IN CIRCLES. Drive the vehicle in tight circles at less than 5 mph (8 km/h) to complete the calibration. The DIC will display CALIBRATION COMPLETE for a few seconds when the calibration is complete. The DIC display will then return to the previous menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIC Warnings and Messages

Messages are displayed on the DIC to notify the driver that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed by the driver to correct the condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

Some messages may not require immediate action, but you can press any of the DIC buttons on the instrument panel to acknowledge that you received the messages and to clear them from the display.

Some messages cannot be cleared from the DIC display because they are more urgent. These messages require action before they can be cleared. You should take any messages that appear on the display seriously and remember that clearing the messages will only make the messages disappear, not correct the problem.

The following are the possible messages that can be displayed and some information about them.

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. When you change the engine oil, be sure to reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 6-18* for information on how to reset the message. See *Engine Oil on page 6-15* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4* for more information.

CHECK TIRE PRESSURE

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires needs to be checked. This message also displays LEFT FRONT, RIGHT FRONT, LEFT REAR, or RIGHT REAR to indicate which tire needs to be checked. You can receive more than one tire pressure message at a time. To read the other messages that may have been sent at the same time, press the set/reset button. If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire Loading Information label. See *Tires on page 6-56*, *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*, and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62*. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48*. If the tire pressure is low, the low tire pressure warning light comes on. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-41*.

DRIVER DOOR OPEN

This message displays and a chime sounds if the driver door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE HOT A/C (Air Conditioning) TURNED OFF

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-41*. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

ENGINE OIL HOT IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine oil becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-41*.

ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 6-30* for more information.**

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-41*.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 6-33* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 6-30* for more information.**

This message displays and a chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays and a chime sounds when the cooling system temperature gets too hot and the engine further enters the engine coolant protection mode. See *Engine Overheating on page 6-30* for further information.

This message also displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays and a chime sounds if the fuel level is low. Refuel as soon as possible. See *Fuel Gage on page 3-46* and *Fuel on page 6-5* for more information.

HEATED WASHER FLUID SYSTEM OFF

This message displays when the heated windshield washer has been turned off. See *Windshield Washer on page 3-11* for more information.

HEATING WASH FLUID WASH WIPES PENDING

This message displays when the heated windshield washer system is heating the fluid. See *Windshield Washer on page 3-11* for more information.

HOOD OPEN

This message displays and a chime sounds if the hood is not fully closed. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the hood for obstructions, and close the hood again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when ice conditions are possible.

LEFT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message displays and a chime sounds if the driver side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine oil pressure is low, severe engine damage may occur. If a low oil pressure warning appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the cause of the low oil pressure is corrected. See *Engine Oil on page 6-15* for more information.**

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. See *Engine Oil on page 6-15*.

PARKING ASSIST OFF

After the vehicle has been started, this message displays to remind the driver that the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system has been turned off. Press the set/reset button to acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display. To turn the URPA system back on, see *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 2-42*.

PASSENGER DOOR OPEN

This message displays and a chime sounds if the front passenger door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

REAR ACCESS OPEN

This message displays and a chime sounds if the liftgate or liftglass is open while the ignition is in ON/RUN. Turn off the vehicle and check the liftgate and liftglass. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display.

REMOTE KEY LEARNING ACTIVE

This message displays while you are matching a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to your vehicle. See “Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* and *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays if a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter battery is low. The battery needs to be replaced in the transmitter. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*.

RIGHT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message displays and a chime sounds if the passenger side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

SERVICE AIR BAG

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Have your dealer/retailer inspect the system for problems. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-36* and *Airbag System on page 1-79* for more information.

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

On some vehicles, this message displays if there is a problem with the battery charging system. Under certain conditions, the charging system light may also turn on in the instrument panel cluster. See *Charging System Light on page 3-38*. Driving with this problem could drain the battery. Turn off all unnecessary accessories. Have the electrical system checked as soon as possible. See your dealer/retailer.

SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM

This message displays along with the brake system warning light if there is a problem with the brake system. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service as soon as possible. See your dealer/retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE BRAKES SOON

This message displays if there is a problem with the brake system. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service. See your dealer/retailer.

SERVICE LEFT HEADLAMP ASSEMBLY

On some models, this message will be displayed when the left headlamp is out and needs to be serviced. See *LED Lighting on page 6-51* for more information.

SERVICE PARKING ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system. Do not use this system to help you park. See *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 2-42* for more information. See your dealer/retailer for service.

SERVICE RIGHT HEADLAMP ASSEMBLY

On some models, this message will be displayed when the right headlamp is out and needs to be serviced. See *LED Lighting on page 6-51* for more information.

SERVICE SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM

If your vehicle has the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system and this message displays, both SBZA displays will remain on indicating there is a problem with the SBZA system. If these displays remain on after continued driving, the system needs service. See your dealer/retailer. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) on page 2-44* for more information.

SERVICE STABILITRAK

If your vehicle has StabiliTrak® and this message displays, it means there may be a problem with the StabiliTrak system. If you see this message, try to reset the system. Stop; turn off the engine for at least 15 seconds; then start the engine again. If this message still comes on, it means there is a problem. You should see your dealer/retailer for service. The vehicle is safe to drive, however, you do not have the benefit of StabiliTrak, so reduce your speed and drive accordingly.

SERVICE SUSPENSION SYSTEM

This message displays when the Road Sensing Suspension (RSS) system is not operating properly. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the theft-deterrent system. The vehicle may or may not restart so you may want to take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer before turning off the engine. See *PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation on page 2-23* for more information.

SERVICE TIRE MONITOR SYSTEM

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the TPMS is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-41*. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 6-65* for more information. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer/retailer.

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

If your vehicle has StabiliTrak, this message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). When this message displays, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See your dealer/retailer for service. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6* for more information.

SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM OFF

If your vehicle has the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system, this message displays when the SBZA system has been turned off. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) on page 2-44* and *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

SIDE BLIND ZONE SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE

If your vehicle has the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system, this message displays when the SBZA system is disabled because the sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in your blind zone. The sensor may be blocked by mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush. This message may also display during heavy rain or due to road spray. It may also come on when driving in isolated areas with no guardrails, trees, or road signs and light traffic. Your vehicle does not need service. For cleaning instructions, see *Washing Your Vehicle on page 6-100*. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) on page 2-44* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STABILITRAK OFF

If your vehicle has StabiliTrak, this message displays when you turn off StabiliTrak, or when the stability control has been automatically disabled. To limit wheel spin and realize the full benefits of the stability enhancement system, you should normally leave StabiliTrak on. However, you should turn StabiliTrak off if your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow and you want to rock your vehicle to attempt to free it, or if you are driving in extreme off-road conditions and require more wheel spin. See *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 5-31*. To turn the StabiliTrak system on or off, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6*.

There are several conditions that can cause this message to appear.

- One condition is overheating, which could occur if StabiliTrak activates continuously for an extended period of time.
- The message also displays if the brake system warning light is on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.
- The message could display if the stability system takes longer than usual to complete its diagnostic checks due to driving conditions.
- The message displays if an engine or vehicle related problem has been detected and the vehicle needs service. See your dealer/retailer.

The message turns off as soon as the conditions that caused the message to be displayed are no longer present.

TIGHTEN GAS CAP

This message may display along with the check engine light on the instrument panel cluster if the vehicle's fuel cap is not tightened properly. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*. Reinstall the fuel cap fully. See *Filling the Tank on page 6-9*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere.
A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn this light and message off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the TPMS is re-learning the tire positions on your vehicle. The tire positions must be re-learned after rotating the tires or after replacing a tire or sensor. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 6-69*, *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 6-64*, and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62* for more information.

TRACTION CONTROL OFF

If your vehicle has StabiliTrak, this message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6* for more information.

TRANSMISSION HOT IDLE ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the transmission fluid is overheating and the transmission temperature warning is displayed on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Do not drive your vehicle with overheated transmission fluid or while the transmission temperature warning is displayed.**

This message displays along with four chimes if the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears and the chime stops when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

TURN SIGNAL ON

This message displays and a chime sounds if a turn signal is left on for 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km). Move the turn signal/multifunction lever to the off position.

WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID

This message displays when the windshield washer fluid is low. Fill the windshield washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for the location of the windshield washer fluid reservoir. Also, see *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 6-34* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIC Vehicle Customization

Your vehicle may have customization capabilities that allow you to program certain features to one preferred setting. Customization features can only be programmed to one setting on the vehicle and cannot be programmed to a preferred setting for two different drivers.

All of the customization options may not be available on your vehicle. Only the options available will be displayed on the DIC.

The default settings for the customization features were set when your vehicle left the factory, but may have been changed from their default state since then.

The customization preferences are automatically recalled.

To change customization preferences, use the following procedure.

Entering the Feature Settings Menu

1. Turn the ignition on and place the vehicle in P (Park).

   To avoid excessive drain on the battery, it is recommended that the headlamps are turned off.

2. Press the customization button to scroll through the available customizable options.

Feature Settings Menu Items

The following are customization features that allow you to program settings to the vehicle:

DISPLAY IN ENGLISH

This feature will only display if a language other than English has been set. This feature allows you to change the language in which the DIC messages appear to English.

Press the customization button until the PRESS ✓ TO DISPLAY IN ENGLISH screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to display all DIC messages in English.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DISPLAY LANGUAGE

This feature allows you to select the language in which the DIC messages will appear.

Press the customization button until the DISPLAY LANGUAGE screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

ENGLISH (default): All messages will appear in English.

DEUTSCH: All messages will appear in German.

ITALIANO: All messages will appear in Italian.

FRANCAIS: All messages will appear in French.

ESPANOL: All messages will appear in Spanish.

ARABIC: All messages will appear in Arabic.

CHINESE: All messages will appear in Chinese.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

AUTO DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select when the vehicle's doors will automatically lock. See *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-11* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

SHIFT OUT OF PARK (default): The doors will automatically lock when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

AT VEHICLE SPEED: The doors will automatically lock when the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) for three seconds.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTO DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to select whether or not to turn off the automatic door unlocking feature. It also allows you to select which doors and when the doors will automatically unlock. See *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-11* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: None of the doors will automatically unlock.

DRIVER AT KEY OUT: Only the driver's door will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

DRIVER IN PARK: Only the driver's door will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

ALL AT KEY OUT: All of the doors will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

ALL IN PARK (default): All of the doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when locking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: There will be no feedback when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

LIGHTS ONLY: The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN ONLY: The horn will sound on the second press of the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN & LIGHTS (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter, and the horn will sound when the lock button is pressed again within five seconds of the previous command.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

LIGHTS OFF: The exterior lamps will not flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

LIGHTS ON (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

DELAY DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select whether or not the locking of the vehicle's doors and liftgate will be delayed. When locking the doors and liftgate with the power door lock switch and a door or the liftgate is open, this feature will delay locking the doors and liftgate until five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use. The key must be out of the ignition for this feature to work. You can temporarily override delayed locking by pressing the power door lock switch twice or the lock button on the RKE transmitter twice. See *Delayed Locking on page 2-10* for more information.

Press the customization button until DELAY DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: There will be no delayed locking of the vehicle's doors.

ON (default): The doors will not lock until five seconds after the last door or the liftgate is closed.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXIT LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select the amount of time you want the exterior lamps to remain on when it is dark enough outside. This happens after the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF.

Press the customization button until EXIT LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lamps will not turn on.

30 SECONDS (default): The exterior lamps will stay on for 30 seconds.

1 MINUTE: The exterior lamps will stay on for one minute.

2 MINUTES: The exterior lamps will stay on for two minutes.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

APPROACH LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select whether or not to have the exterior lights turn on briefly during low light periods after unlocking the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Press the customization button until APPROACH LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lights will not turn on when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

ON (default): If it is dark enough outside, the exterior lights will turn on briefly when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

The lights will remain on for 20 seconds or until the lock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed, or the vehicle is no longer off. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTO HIGH BEAMS

If your vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select to have the Intellibeam® system turned off or on. See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-16* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO HIGH BEAMS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): The Intellibeam® system will be turned off.

ON: The Intellibeam® system will be turned on.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

CHIME VOLUME

This feature allows you to select the volume level of the chime.

Press the customization button until CHIME VOLUME appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

NORMAL: The chime volume will be set to a normal level.

LOUD: The chime volume will be set to a loud level.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

There is no default for chime volume. The volume will stay at the last known setting.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARK TILT MIRRORS

This feature allows you to select whether or not the outside mirror(s) will automatically tilt down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). See *Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors on page 2-40* for more information.

Press the customization button until PARK TILT MIRRORS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): Neither outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

DRIVER MIRROR: The driver's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

PASSENGER MIRROR: The passenger's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

BOTH MIRRORS: The driver's and passenger's outside mirrors will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EASY EXIT RECALL

If your vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select your preference for the automatic easy exit seat feature. See *Memory Features on page 1-7* for more information.

Press the customization button until EASY EXIT RECALL appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

DOOR BUTTON ONLY: No automatic seat exit recall will occur. The recall will only occur after pressing the easy exit seat button.

BUTTON AND KEY OUT (default): If the features are enabled through the EASY EXIT SETUP menu, the driver's seat will move back, and if the vehicle has the power tilt wheel feature, the power steering column will move up when the key is removed from the ignition or after pressing the easy exit seat button.

The automatic easy exit seat movement will only occur one time after the key is removed from the ignition. If the automatic movement has already occurred, and you put the key back in the ignition and remove it again, the seat and steering column will stay in the original exit position, unless a memory recall took place prior to removing the key again.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EASY EXIT SETUP

If your vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select which areas will recall with the automatic easy exit seat feature. It also allows you to turn off the automatic easy exit feature. See *Memory Features on page 1-7* and “EASY EXIT RECALL” earlier for more information.

Press the customization button until EASY EXIT SETUP appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: No automatic seat exit will recall.

SEAT ONLY: The driver’s seat will recall.

TILT ONLY: The steering wheel tilt feature will recall.

ALL (default): The driver’s seat and the steering wheel tilt feature will recall.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

MEMORY SEAT RECALL

This feature allows you to select your preference for the remote memory seat recall feature. See *Memory Features on page 1-7* for more information.

Press the customization button until MEMORY SEAT RECALL appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): No remote memory seat recall will occur.

ON: The driver’s seat, and on some vehicles, the outside mirrors will automatically move to the stored driving position when the unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed. On some vehicles with the adjustable throttle and brake pedal feature, the pedals will also automatically move. See “Relearn Remote Key” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information on matching transmitters to driver ID numbers.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REMOTE START

If your vehicle has this feature, it allows you to turn the remote start off or on. The remote start feature allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-8* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE START appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The remote start feature will be disabled.

ON (default): The remote start feature will be enabled.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

DISPLAY DIGITAL SPEED

This feature allows you to enable or disable the digital speedometer on the DIC.

Press the customization button until DISPLAY DIGITAL SPEED appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The digital speedometer will be disabled.

ON (default): The digital speedometer will be enabled.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FACTORY SETTINGS

This feature allows you to set all of the customization features back to their factory default settings.

Press the customization button until FACTORY SETTINGS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

RESTORE ALL (default): The customization features will be set to their factory default settings.

DO NOT RESTORE: The customization features will not be set to their factory default settings.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS

This feature allows you to exit the feature settings menu.

Press the customization button until PRESS ✓ TO EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS appears in the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to exit the menu.

If you do not exit, pressing the customization button again will return you to the beginning of the feature settings menu.

Exiting the Feature Settings Menu

The feature settings menu will be exited when any of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is no longer in ON/RUN.
- The trip/fuel or vehicle information DIC buttons are pressed.
- The end of the feature settings menu is reached and exited.
- A 40 second time period has elapsed with no selection made.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System(s)

Determine which radio the vehicle has and read the following pages to become familiar with its features.

⚠ CAUTION:

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Do not give extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving.

This system provides access to many audio and non audio listings.

To minimize taking your eyes off the road while driving, do the following while the vehicle is parked:

- Become familiar with the operation and controls of the audio system.
- Set up the tone, speaker adjustments, and preset radio stations.

For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 5-2*.

Notice: **Contact your dealer/retailer before adding any equipment.**

Adding audio or communication equipment could interfere with the operation of the vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and could damage them. Follow federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone equipment.

The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-26* for more information.

Bluetooth®

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth capable cell phone with a Hands Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The system can be used while the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 30 ft. (9.1 m). Not all phones support all functions, and not all phones are guaranteed to work with the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See gm.com/bluetooth for more information on compatible phones.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice Recognition

The Bluetooth system uses voice recognition to interpret voice commands to dial phone numbers and name tags.

Noise: Keep interior noise levels to a minimum. The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

When to Speak: A short tone sounds after the system responds indicating when it is waiting for a voice command. Wait until the tone and then speak.

How to Speak: Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

Audio System

When using the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the audio system volume knob, during a call, to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. To prevent missed calls, a minimum volume level is used if the volume is turned down too low.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons located on the steering wheel to operate the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-115* for more information.

(Push To Talk): Press to answer incoming calls, to confirm system information, and to start speech recognition.

(Phone On Hook): Press to end a call, reject a call, or to cancel an operation.

Pairing

A Bluetooth enabled cell phone must be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system first and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the cell phone manufacturers user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls will be made using OnStar® Hands-Free Calling, if available. Refer to the OnStar owner's guide for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pairing Information:

- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- The in-vehicle Bluetooth system automatically links with the first available paired cell phone in the order the phone was paired.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system at a time.
- Pairing should only need to be completed once, unless changes to the pairing information have been made or the phone is deleted.

To link to a different paired phone, see Linking to a Different Phone later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Pair”. The system responds with instructions and a four digit PIN number. The PIN number will be used in Step 4.
4. Start the Pairing process on the cell phone that will be paired to the vehicle. Reference the cell phone manufacturers user guide for information on this process.

   Locate the device named “General Motors” in the list on the cellular phone and follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the four digit PIN number that was provided in Step 3.
5. The system prompts for a name for the phone. Use a name that best describes the phone. This name will be used to indicate which phone is connected. The system then confirms the name provided.
6. The system responds with “<Phone name> has been successfully paired” after the pairing process is complete.
7. Repeat Steps 1 through 7 for additional phones to be paired.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “List”. The system lists all the paired Bluetooth devices. If a phone is connected to the vehicle, the system will say “Is connected” after the connected phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Delete”. The system asks which phone to delete followed by a tone.
4. Say the name of the phone to be deleted. If the phone name is unknown, use the “List” command for a list of all paired phones. The system responds with “Would you like to delete <phone name>? Yes or No” followed by a tone.
5. Say “Yes” to delete the phone. The system responds with “OK, deleting <phone name>”.

Linking to a Different Phone

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Change phone”. The system responds with “Please wait while I search for other phones”.
   - If another phone is found, the response will be “<Phone name> is now connected”.
   - If another phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Storing Name Tags

The system can store up to thirty phone numbers as name tags that are shared between the Bluetooth and OnStar systems.

The system uses the following commands to store and retrieve phone numbers:

- Store
- Digit Store
- Directory

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Store Command

The store command allows a phone number to be stored without entering the digits individually.

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Store”. The system responds with “Store, number please” followed by a tone.
3. Say the complete phone number to be stored at once with no pauses.
   - If the system recognizes the number it responds with “OK, Storing” and repeats the phone number.
   - If the system is unsure it recognizes the phone number, it responds with “Store” and repeats the number followed by “Please say yes or no”. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. If the number is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the number to be re-entered.
4. After the system stores the phone number, it responds with “Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
5. Say a name tag for the phone number. The name tag is recorded and the system responds with “About to store <name tag>. Does that sound OK?”.
   - If the name tag does not sound correct, say “No” and repeat Step 5.
   - If the name tag sounds correct, say “Yes” and the name tag is stored. After the number is stored the system returns to the main menu.

Using the Digit Store Command

The digit store command allows a phone number to be stored by entering the digits individually.

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Store”. The system responds with “Please say the first digit to store” followed by a tone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Say the first digit to be stored. The system will repeat back the digit it heard followed by a tone. Continue entering digits until the number to be stored is complete.
   - If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.
   - To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time and the system will repeat them.
4. After the complete number has been entered, say “Store”. The system responds with “Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
5. Say a name tag for the phone number. The name tag is recorded and the system responds with “About to store <name tag>. Does that sound OK?”.
   - If the name tag does not sound correct, say “No” and repeat Step 5.
   - If the name tag sounds correct, say “Yes” and the name tag is stored. After the number is stored the system returns to the main menu.

Using the Directory Command

The directory command lists all of the name tags stored by the system. To use the directory command:

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Directory”. The system responds with “Directory” and then plays back all of the stored name tags. When the list is complete, the system returns to the main menu.

Deleting Name Tags

The system uses the following commands to delete name tags:

- Delete
- Delete all name tags

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Delete Command

The delete command allows specific name tags to be deleted.

To use the delete command:

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete”. The system responds with “Delete, please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag to be deleted. The system responds with “Would you like to delete, <name tag>? Please say yes or no”.
   - If the name tag is correct, say “Yes” to delete the name tag. The system responds with “OK, deleting <name tag>, returning to the main menu.”
   - If the name tag is incorrect, say “No”. The system responds with “No. OK, let’s try again, please say the name tag.”

Using the Delete All Name Tags Command

The delete all name tags command deletes all stored phone book name tags and route name tags for OnStar (if present).

To use the delete all name tags command:

1. Press and hold ✆ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete all name tags”. The system responds with “You are about to delete all name tags stored in your phone directory and your route destination directory. Are you sure you want to do this? Please say yes or no.”
   - Say “Yes” to delete all name tags.
   - Say “No” to cancel the function and return to the main menu.

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands:

- Dial
- Digit Dial
- Call
- Re-dial

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Dial Command

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial”. The system responds with “Dial using <phone name>”. “Number please” followed by a tone.
3. Say the entire number without pausing.
   - If the system recognizes the number, it responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number.
   - If the system does not recognize the number, it confirms the numbers followed by a tone. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number. If the number is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the number to be re-entered.

Using the Digit Dial Command

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Dial”. The system responds with “Digit dial using <phone name>, please say the first digit to dial” followed by a tone.
3. Say the digit to be dialed one at a time. Following each digit, the system will repeat back the digit it heard followed by a tone.
4. Continue entering digits until the number to be dialed is complete. After the whole number has been entered, say “Dial”. The system responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number.
   - If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.
   - To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time and the system will repeat them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Call Command

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Call”. The system responds with “Call using <phone name>. Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag of the person to call.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the name tag it responds with “OK, calling, <name tag>” and dials the number.
   - If the system is unsure it recognizes the right name tag, it confirms the name tag followed by a tone. If the name tag is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, calling, <name tag>” and dials the number. If the name tag is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the name tag to be re-entered.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the Re-dial Command

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Re-dial”. The system responds with “Re-dial using <phone name>” and dials the last number called from the connected Bluetooth phone.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Receiving a Call

When an incoming call is received, the audio system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

- Press ☎ and begin speaking to answer the call.
- Press ▽ to ignore a call.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

- Press ✆ to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press ✆ again to return to the original call.
- To ignore the incoming call, continue with the original call with no action.
- Press ▽ to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Three-Way Calling

Three-Way Calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

1. While on a call press ✆ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Three-way call”. The system responds with “Three-way call, please say dial or call”.
3. Use the dial or call command to dial the number of the third party to be called.
4. Once the call is connected, press ✆ to link all the callers together.

Ending a Call

Press ▽ to end a call.

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

To Mute a call

1. Press ✆ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Mute Call”. The system responds with “Call muted”.

To Cancel Mute

1. Press ✆ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Mute Call”. The system responds with “Resuming call”.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the in-vehicle Bluetooth system and the cell phone.

To Transfer Audio to the Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle:

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Transfer Call.” The system responds with “Transferring call” and the audio will switch from the vehicle to the cell phone.

To Transfer Audio to the In-Vehicle Bluetooth System

The cellular phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred. The connection process can take up to two minutes after the key is turned to the ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position.

During a call with the audio on the cell phone, press for more than two seconds. The audio switches from the cell phone to the vehicle.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice Pass-Thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone. See the cell phone manufacturers user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature. This feature can be used to verbally access contacts stored in the cell phone.

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Voice”. The system responds with “OK, accessing <phone name>”.
   - The cell phone’s normal prompt messages will go through its cycle according to the phone’s operating instructions.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers and numbers stored as name tags during a call. This is used when calling a menu driven phone system. Account numbers can be programmed into the phonebook for retrieval during menu driven calls.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sending a Number During a Call

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial”. The system responds with “Say a number to send tones” followed by a tone.
3. Say the number to send.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the number it responds with “OK, Sending Number” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.
   - If the system is not sure it recognized the number properly, it responds “Dial Number, Please say yes or no?” followed by a tone. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Sending Number” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.

Sending a Stored Name Tag During a Call

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Send name tag.” The system responds with “Say a name tag to send tones” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag to send.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the name tag it responds with “OK, Sending <name tag>” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.
   - If the system is not sure it recognized the name tag properly, it responds “Dial <name tag>, Please say yes or no?” followed by a tone. If the name tag is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Sending <name tag>” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained indefinitely. This includes all saved name tags in the phonebook and phone pairing information. For information on how to delete this information, see the above sections on Deleting a Paired Phone and Deleting Name Tags.

Other Information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Overhead)

The vehicle may have an Overhead DVD Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. The RSE system works with the vehicle's audio system. The DVD player is part of the front radio. The RSE system includes a radio with a DVD player, a video display screen, and if the vehicle has a third row seat, it could have a second video display screen, audio/video jacks, two wireless headphones, and a remote control. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information on the vehicle's audio/DVD system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver Control of the Audio System

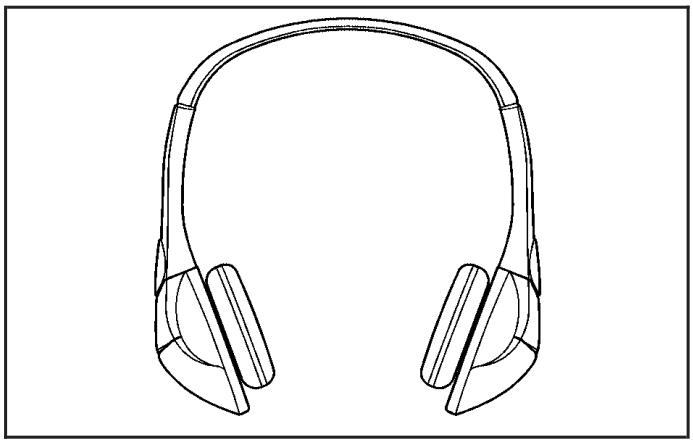
The driver has basic control of the whole audio system. Press and hold ⏻ for more than two seconds to turn off the radio, RSE, and the RSA (rear seat audio). See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

Before Driving

The RSE is designed for rear seat passengers only. The driver cannot safely view the video screen while driving and should not try to do so.

In severe or extreme weather conditions the RSE system might not work until the temperature is within the operating range. The operating range for the RSE system is above –4°F (–20°C) or below 140°F (60°C). If the temperature of the vehicle is outside of this range, heat or cool the vehicle until the temperature is within the operating range of the RSE system.

Headphones



The RSE includes two 2-channel wireless headphones that are dedicated to this system. Channel 1 is dedicated to the DVD player, while Channel 2 is dedicated to RSA selections. These headphones are used to listen to media such as CDs, DVDs, MP3s, DVDAs, radio, any auxiliary source connected to A/V jacks, or the auxiliary input jack, if the vehicle has this feature. The wireless headphones have an On/Off button, channel 1/2 switch, and a volume control.

If the vehicle has a third row video screen display, it has two additional headphones.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Push the power button to turn on the headphones. An indicator light located on the headphones comes on. If the light comes on but, there is intermittent sound and/or static on the headphones, or if the indicator light does not come on, the batteries might need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section for more information. Switch the headphones to Off when not in use.

The infrared transmitters are located at the rear of the RSE overhead console. The headphones shut off automatically to save the battery power if the RSE system and the RSA are shut off or if the headphones are out of range of the transmitters for more than 3 minutes. If you move too far forward or step out of the vehicle, the headphones lose the audio signal.

The headphones automatically turn off after four hours of continuous use.

To adjust the volume on the headphones, use the volume control located on the right side.

For optimal audio performance, the headphones must be worn correctly. Headphones should be worn with headband over the top of the head for best audio reception. The symbol L (Left) appears on the upper left side, above the ear pad and should be positioned on the left ear. The symbol R (Right) appears on the upper right side, above the ear pad and should be positioned on the right ear.

Notice: **Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.**

If the foam ear pads attached to the headphones become worn or damaged, the pads can be replaced separately from the headphone set. See your dealer/retailer for more information.

Battery Replacement

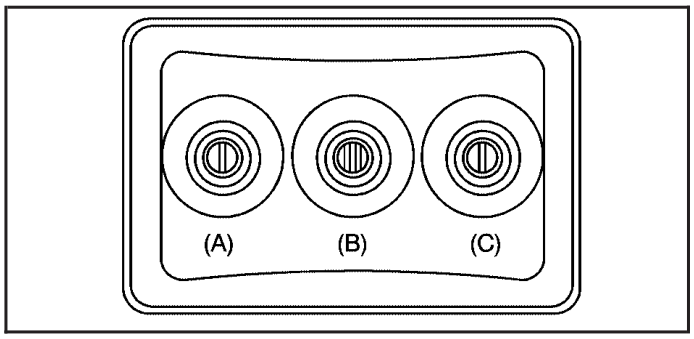
To change the batteries on the headphones:

1. Turn the screw to loosen the battery door located on the left side of the headphones. Slide the battery door open.
2. Replace the two batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Replace the battery door and tighten the door screw.

If the headphones are to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio/Video (A/V) Jacks



The A/V jacks are located on the rear of the floor console. The A/V jacks allow audio or video signals to be connected from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game unit to the RSE system. Adapter connectors or cables (not included) may be required to connect the auxiliary device to the A/V jacks. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper usage.

The A/V jacks are color coded to match typical home entertainment system equipment. The yellow jack (A) is for the video input. The white jack (B) is for the left audio input. The red jack (C) is for the right audio input.

Power for auxiliary devices is not supplied by the radio system.

To use the auxiliary inputs of the RSE system, connect an external auxiliary device to the color-coded A/V jacks and turn both the auxiliary device and the video screen power on. If the video screen is in the DVD player mode, pressing the AUX (auxiliary) button on the remote control switches the video screen from the DVD player mode to the auxiliary device. The radio plays the audio of the connected auxiliary device by sourcing to auxiliary. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

For optimal sound quality, increase the portable audio device's volume to the loudest level. Higher levels of volume decreases audio distortion.

It is always best to power a portable audio device through its own battery while playing.

How to Change the RSE Video Screen Settings

The screen display mode (normal, full, and zoom), screen brightness, and setup menu language can be changed from the on screen setup menu. To change any feature, perform the following:

1. Press the ▢ button on the remote control.
2. Use the remote control ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶ navigation arrows and the ◀↵ button to use the setup menu.
3. Press the ▢ button again to remove the setup menu from the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio Output

Audio from the DVD player or auxiliary inputs can be heard through the following possible sources:

- Wireless Headphones
- Vehicle Speakers
- Vehicle wired headphone jacks on the rear seat audio system, if the vehicle has this feature.

The RSE system always transmits the audio signal to the wireless headphones, if there is audio available. See “Headphones” earlier in this section for more information.

The DVD player is capable of outputting audio to the wired headphone jacks on the RSA system, if the vehicle has this feature. The DVD player can be selected as an audio source on the RSA system. See *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) on page 3-113* for more information.

When a device is connected to the A/V jacks, the rear seat passengers are be able to hear audio from the auxiliary device through the wireless or wired headphones. The front seat passengers are able to listen to playback from this device through the vehicle speakers by selecting AUX as the source on the radio.

Video Screen(s)

The video screen(s) are located in the overhead console.

To use the video screen(s):

1. Push the release button located on the overhead console.
2. Move the screen to the desired position.

When the video screen is not in use, push it up into its locked position.

If a DVD is playing and the screen is raised to its locked position, the screen remains on, this is normal, and the DVD continues to play through the previous audio source. Use the remote control power button or eject the disc to turn off the screen.

The overhead console contains the IR (infrared) transmitters for the wireless headphones and the IR receivers for the remote control. They are located at the rear of the console.

Notice: **Avoid directly touching the video screen, as damage may occur. See “Cleaning the Video Screen” later in this section for more information.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Control

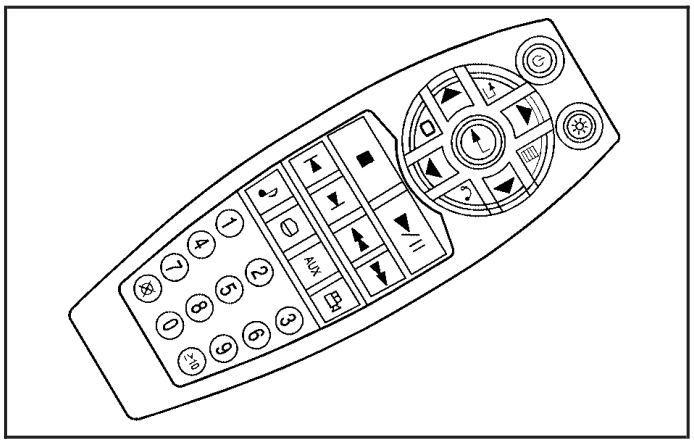
To use the remote control, aim it at the transmitter window at the rear of the overhead console and press the desired button. Direct sunlight or very bright light can affect the ability of the RSE transmitter to receive signals from the remote control. If the remote control does not seem to be working, the batteries may need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section. Objects blocking the line of sight can also affect the function of the remote control.

If a CD or DVD is in the Radio DVD slot, the remote control power button can be used to turn on the video screen display and start the disc. The radio can also turn on the video screen display. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

Notice: **Storing the remote control in a hot area or in direct sunlight can damage it, and the repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the remote control stored in a cool, dry place.**

If the remote control becomes lost or damaged, a new universal remote control can be purchased. If this happens, make sure the universal remote control uses a code set of Toshiba®.

Remote Control Buttons



⏻ **(Power):** Press to turn the video screen on and off.

☼ **(Illumination):** Press to turn the remote control backlight on. The backlight automatically times out after 7 to 10 seconds if no other button is pressed while the backlight is on.

(Title): Press to return the DVD to the main menu of the DVD. This function can vary for each disc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Main Menu): Press to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the navigation arrows to move the cursor around the DVD menu. After making a selection press the enter button. This button only operates when using a DVD.

▲, ▼, ◀, ▶ (Menu Navigation Arrows): Use the arrow buttons to navigate through a menu.

(Enter): Press to select the choice that is highlighted in any menu.

(Display Menu): Press to adjust the brightness, screen display mode (normal, full, or zoom), and display the language menu.

(Return): Press to exit the current active menu and return to the previous menu. This button operates only when the display menu or a DVD menu is active.

(Stop): Press to stop playing, fast reversing, or fast forwarding a DVD. Press twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

(Play/Pause): Press to start playing a DVD. Press while a DVD is playing to pause it. Press again to continue playing the DVD.

When the DVD is playing, depending on the radio, perform slow play by pressing the play/pause button then pressing the fast forward button. The DVD continues playing in a slow play mode. Depending on the radio, perform reverse slow play by pressing the play/pause button and then pressing the fast reverse button. To cancel slow play mode, press the play/pause button.

(Previous Track/Chapter): Press to return to the start of the current track or chapter. Press again to go to the previous track or chapter. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Next Track/Chapter): Press to go to the beginning of the next chapter or track. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Fast Reverse): Press to fast reverse the DVD or CD. To stop fast reversing a DVD video, press the play/pause button. To stop fast reversing a DVD audio or CD, release the fast reverse button. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Fast Forward): Press to fast forward the DVD or CD. To stop fast forwarding a DVD video, press the play/pause button. To stop fast forwarding a DVD audio or CD, release the fast forward button. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Audio): Press to change audio tracks on DVDs that have this feature when the DVD is playing. The format and content of this function vary for each disc.

(Subtitles): Press to turn ON/OFF subtitles and to move through subtitle options when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function varies for each disc.

AUX (Auxiliary): Press to switch the system between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

If the vehicle has a third row video screen, the AUX button controls the source display on the second row video screen, and the third row video screen as described in the table below:

Aux Button Press	Second Row Screen	Third Row Screen
Default State (No Press)	DVD Media	DVD Media
First Press	Aux Video Source	Aux Video Source
Second Press	DVD Media	Aux Video Source
Third Press	Aux Video Source	DVD Media
Fourth Press	Return to Default State	Return to Default State

(Camera): Press to change camera angles on DVDs that have this feature when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function varies for each disc.

1 through 0 (Numeric Keypad): The numeric keypad provides the capability of direct chapter or track number selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⊗ **(Clear):** Press within three seconds after entering a numeric selection, to clear all numeric inputs.

≧ **10 (Double Digit Entries):** Press to select chapter or track numbers greater than 9. Press this button before entering the number.

Battery Replacement

To change the remote control batteries:

1. Slide the rear cover back on the remote control.
2. Replace the two batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Replace the battery cover.

If the remote control is to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Problem	Recommended Action
No power.	The ignition might not be turned ON/RUN or in ACC/ACCESSORY.
The picture does not fill the screen. There are black borders on the top and bottom or on both sides or it looks stretched out.	Check the display mode settings in the setup menu by pressing the display menu button on the remote control.
In auxiliary mode, the picture moves or scrolls.	Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.
The remote control does not work.	Check to make sure there is no obstruction between the remote control and the transmitter window. Check the batteries to make sure they are not dead or installed incorrectly.
After stopping the player, I push Play but sometimes the DVD starts where I left off and sometimes at the beginning.	If the stop button was pressed one time, the DVD player resumes playing where the DVD was stopped. If the stop button was pressed two times the DVD player begins to play from the beginning of the DVD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problem	Recommended Action
The auxiliary source is running but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the RSE video screen is in the auxiliary source mode. Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.
Sometimes the wireless headphone audio cuts out or buzzes.	Check for obstructions, low batteries, reception range, and interference from cellular telephone towers or by using a cellular telephone in the vehicle. Check that the headphones are on correctly using the L (left) and R (right) on the headphones.
I lost the remote and/or the headphones.	See your dealer/retailer for assistance.
The DVD is playing, but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the RSE video screen is sourced to the DVD player.

DVD Display Error Messages

The DVD display error message depends on which radio the vehicle has. The video screen might display one of the following:

Disc Load/Eject Error: Displays when there are disc load or eject problems.

Disc Format Error: Displays if the disc is inserted with the disc label wrong side up, or if the disc is damaged.

Disc Region Error: Displays, if the disc is not from a correct region.

No Disc Inserted: Displays, if no disc is present when ⏏ or DVD AUX is pressed on the radio.

DVD Distortion

Video distortion may occur when operating cellular phones, scanners, CB radios, Global Position Systems (GPS)*, two-way radios, mobile fax, or walkie talkies.

It might be necessary to turn off the DVD player when operating one of these devices in or near the vehicle.

*Excludes the OnStar® System.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cleaning the RSE Overhead Console

When cleaning the RSE overhead console surface, use only a clean cloth dampened with clean water.

Cleaning the Video Screen

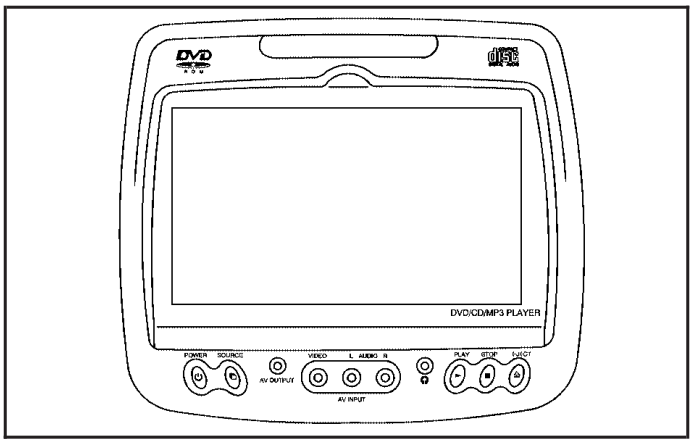
When cleaning the video screen, use only a clean cloth dampened with clean water. Use care when directly touching or cleaning the screen, as damage can result.

Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Headrest DVD)

Vehicles with an RSE system include two head restraint video display screens with integrated DVD players, auxiliary inputs, two wireless headphones, and a remote control. This system works independently from the vehicle's Overhead DVD RSE system. See the vehicle's owners manual for information about the Overhead DVD RSE system.

The vehicle has a feature called Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the RSE system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See "Retained Accessory Power (RAP)" in the owners manual for more information.

Video Display Screens

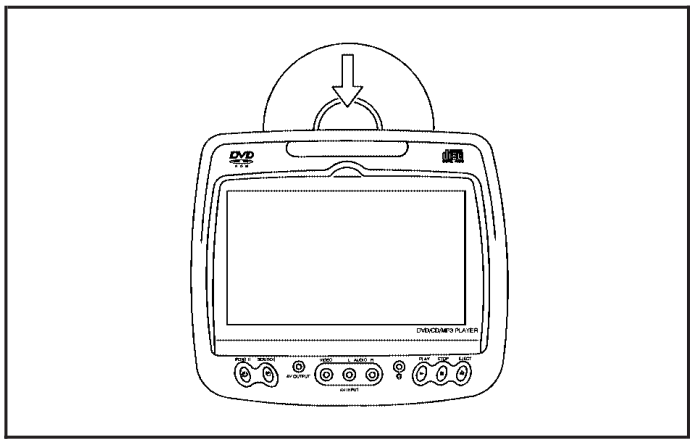


The video display screens are located on the backside of each head restraint.

Notice: **Avoid directly touching the video screen, as damage can occur. See "Cleaning the Video Screens" later in this section for more information.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the RSE System



DVD Player: The loading slot for the DVD player is located at the top of the head restraint. Insert the disc partially into the loading slot with the printed side facing the rear of the vehicle. The DVD player automatically draws the disc in, “Loading” displays on the screen along with a disc indicator, and playback starts. If the disc is inserted incorrectly, the DVD player ejects the disc and No Disc displays.

Some DVDs do not allow fast forwarding or skipping of the copyright information or previews. If the DVD does not begin playing at the main title, refer to the on-screen instructions.

The DVD player can be controlled by using the buttons located below the video display screen or by using the buttons on the system’s remote control. See “Remote Control” later for more information.

The following discs are compatible with the DVD player:

- DVD-Video: A DVD that has video.
- CD-DA: A CD that has music or sound content only.
- CD-Video: A CD that has a movie.
- CD-R/RW: A disc that has audio files such as CD-R with downloaded MP3 files, MPEG, or JPEG files.

The DVD player and discs are coded by global region. The DVD players are set to Region 1. Discs with other region codes will not work in the players.

If an error message displays on the video screen, see “DVD Messages” later in this section.

While the vehicle is moving, passengers should not unfasten their safety belts to make adjustments to the video screen control buttons. See “Safety Belts” under, Seats and Restraint Systems in the vehicle’s owner manual. Use the remote control for any necessary adjustments. See “Remote Control” later in this supplement.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

POWER ⏻ : Press to turn the power on or off. Each video screen can be powered on or off independently.

EJECT ⏏ : Press to eject a disc from the DVD slot.

If a disc is ejected from the player, but not removed, it will automatically reload into the player. Another way to reload a disc that has been ejected, but not removed from the DVD player, is to press the eject button or the play button.

PLAY ▶ : Press this button located below the video display screen to start playback of a disc. On DVDs and video CDs with playback control (PBC), menu screens can display automatically. It might be necessary to press the play button again to begin play.

There is a play position memory feature for DVD and video CD only. If the DVD player is turned off and then turned back on, the DVD player resumes playback where the disc stopped. The play position memory is erased if the disc is removed.

STOP ■ : Press once to stop playing a DVD.

There is a pre-stop feature for DVD and video CD only. This feature resumes playback of the disc where it was stopped. Press the stop button once during disc playback and ■ displays on the DVD startup screen. This icon disappears after a few seconds. Press the stop button a second time, or eject the disc, to cancel the pre-stop feature and to clear the disc position memory.

SOURCE: Press to select between Monitor 3, Monitor 4, or the AV INPUT.

Each video display screen can be adjusted independently, as well as display information from both DVD players and both A/V inputs.

Infrared Remote Sensor: Located in the top center of the video display screen. Do not block the signal from the remote to the sensor.

Infrared Transmitters: Located in the top center of the video display screen. Do not block the signal from the headphones to the transmitter.

Video Display Screen: Located on the back of each headrest.

AV OUTPUT (Audio/Video Output Jack): Located on the lower left side of the screen and is identified on the video screen panel as the AV OUTPUT.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headphone Jack: Wired headphones can be plugged into the headphone jack with one-eighth inch stereo plugs.

AV INPUT: (Audio/Video Input Jack): The audio/video input jack is located below the video display screen and allows viewing of auxiliary sources such as portable DVD players, game stations, or video cameras, on each screen.

- Video Input — The yellow connector is used for video input.
- L Audio — The white connector is used for the left side audio.
- R Audio — The red connector is used for the right side audio.

Level Lock and Release Latch: The viewing angle of the video screen can be adjusted by releasing the latch and gently moving the screen. Then lock it into a secure position.

Vehicle Speakers

Audio from the DVD player or an auxiliary device can be heard through the vehicle speakers or the wireless/wired headphones, while the radio is tuned to one of the six frequencies selected on the Sound Around portion of the system's remote control. See "Remote Control" later in this supplement.

Only one audio source can be heard through the vehicle's speakers at a time. The audio source being used is specified by the A/V (audio/video) source selected on the driver side head restraint video display screen.

To turn the RSE system audio output to the vehicle's speakers, press Sound Around ON, on the system's remote control. The audio from the RSE system can be heard through the wireless/wired headphones and the vehicle's speakers at the same time. The volume on the radio can vary when switching between the radio, CD, DVD, MP3, or an auxiliary device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wireless Headphones

The two wireless headphones included with the Headrest DVD RSE system will only work with the Headrest DVD RSE system and are marked for channel 3 and 4. The wireless headphones must be used within a line of sight of the transmitter that is located above the video display screen.

3-4 Channel Selector: This is located on the right earpiece. Either Channel 3 or 4 can be selected with the channel selector. The driver side monitor is designated as Channel 3, and the passenger side as Channel 4. Set the channel selector switch according to the video display screen being viewed. The message, “To listen to this monitor tune your headphones to Channel 3 (or 4)” displays for five seconds then disappears when the video display screen is turned on.

OFF/ON (Power): Turn the power switch located on the earpiece to turn the wireless headphones on or off. Each headphone has a light to indicate ON. If the light does not come on, the batteries may need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” under Rear Seat Entertainment System in the vehicle’s owner manual.

The headphones shut off automatically if the RSE system is turned off or if the headphones are out of range of the transmitter for more than three minutes.

VOL ► (Volume): Use to adjust the volume on the headphones.

Notice: **Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.**

Remote Control

To use the remote control, aim at the remote sensor located on top center of the video display screen and press the desired button.

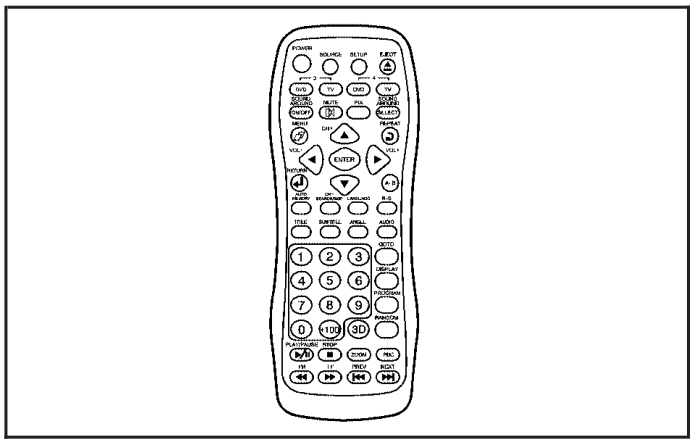
Objects blocking the line-of-sight can affect the function of the remote control. Direct or very bright light can affect the ability of the transmitter to receive signals from the remote control. If the remote control does not seem to be working, the batteries might need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” following this section.

The remote control provided with the Headrest DVD RSE system, is not a universal remote control and will not control other equipment.

Notice: **Storing the remote control in a hot area or in direct sunlight can damage it, and the repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the remote control stored in a cool, dry place.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Control Buttons



POWER: Press to turn the Headrest DVD RSE system on and off.

SOURCE: Press to select between Monitor 3, Monitor 4, or AV INPUT. Any video equipment connected to the AV inputs automatically overrides the source selection.

SETUP: Press to change the default settings, see “Using the RSE On-Screen Display (OSD) Menus” later in this manual. There are four main menu screens, each screen displays a menu to select different setting options. The screens are:

1. General Setup — adjusts screen settings.
2. Audio Setup — sets the language.
3. Preference Screen — sets the subtitles and parental controls.
4. Password Setup — allows a password to be set.

Press SETUP again to exit.

EJECT ⏏ : Press to eject or reload a disc.

DVD-Video Screen 3: Press the DVD button located under 3 to transmit IR codes for DVD mode on Video Screen 3.

TV-Video Screen 3: This button is not used with the system.

DVD-Video Screen 4: Press the DVD button located under 4 to transmit IR codes for DVD mode on Video Screen 4.

TV-Video Screen 4: This button is not used with the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SOUND AROUND ON/OFF: Press to turn the FM Transmitter power on or off.

MUTE ⊠ (For DVD Only): Press to turn off the headphone sound. Press again to turn the sound on again.

PIX (Picture Selection): Press to adjust the picture's On Screen Display (OSD). Each time this button is pressed, the picture adjustment OSD, cycles through bars for BRIGHTNESS, CONTRAST, COLOR, and TINT. Use the right/left navigation arrows to adjust the setting. This feature automatically shuts off id another button is pressed or adjustments are not made within six seconds.

SOUND AROUND SELECT: Press to select an FM transmitter channel. The SOUND AROUND SELECT lets the DVD audio play over the vehicle's sound system by tuning the radio to one of the six FM frequencies listed below.

- CH1: 88.3MHz
- CH2: 88.7MHz
- CH3: 89.1MHz
- CH4: 89.5MHz
- CH5: 89.9MHz
- CH6: 90.3MHz

MENU: Press to enter the DVD disc menu while the disc is playing.

▲, ▼, ◀, ▶ (Navigation Arrows): Press to navigate through menus.

ENTER: Press to enter a selected function or to begin playback of the disc.

REPEAT ↻: Press to repeat part or all of a chapter, title, track, or the entire disc after using the A-B button to setup repeat preset sections.

RETURN ↵: This button is not used with the system.

A-B: This button is used to setup repeat preset sections. Press this button once while the disc is playing to select the starting position. Press a second time to select the end position. Press a third time to turn the function off. To view the preset section, press ↻.

AUTO MEMORY: This button is not used with the system.

SEARCH/SKIP: This button is not used with the system.

ERASE/ADD: This button is not used with the system.

R-S: This button is not used with the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TITLE: Press to enter the disc title mode. The title feature is disc-specific, and may not be available on all discs.

SUBTITLE: Press to change the subtitle language to another available language or to turn subtitles off.

ANGLE: Press to select a different viewing angle for discs that are recorded with different camera angles.

AUDIO: Press to select a different language for discs that are recorded with different languages.

0-9 (Numbers): The numbers located on the lower left side of the remote control can be used to enter numbered menu options, channels, or track numbers.

GOTO: Press to enter the GOTO menu to choose a desired title, chapter, track, or song inside the disc.

DISPLAY: Press to scroll through display information on the upper left corner of the screen, such as title, chapter/track, time elapsed, and time remaining, or to turn off the display

PROGRAM: Press to edit a playback program containing desired titles in the DVD or tracks in the CD-DA.

3D: Press to change between different 3D audio modes for DVD or CD.

The options for DVD are: Off, Rock, Pop, Live, Dance, Techno, Classic, and Soft.

The options for CD are: Off, Concert, Living room, Hall, Bathroom Cave, Arena, and Church.

RANDOM: Press to play titles randomly.

PLAY/PAUSE ▶ / ❚❚ : Press to start playback of the disc, or to pause playback.

STOP ■ : Press to stop playback of a disc.

- To resume disc playback, press PLAY.
- To start playback from the beginning of the disc, press STOP, STOP, then PLAY.

ZOOM: Press to either enlarge the viewed image by 2X, 3X, and 4X, or reduce the image by 1/2X, 1/3X, and 1/4X.

PBC (Playback Control): Press to turn video CD playback control on or off.

FR ◀◀ (Fast Reverse): Press to fast reverse the disc. Press multiple times to choose between 2X, 4X, 8X, 16X, and 32X speeds.

FF ▶▶ (Fast Forward): Press to fast forward the disc. Press multiple times to choose between 2X, 4X, 8X, 16X, and 32X speeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PREV ⏮ (Previous): Press to play the previous chapter or track. To return to previous chapters or tracks one at a time, press and release multiple times until the desired chapter or track is reached.

NEXT ⏭ : Press to play the next chapter or track. To go to the next chapter or track one at a time, press and release multiple times until the desired chapter or track is reached.

Battery Replacement

To change batteries in the remote control:

1. Turn the remote control face down.
2. Press down on the ridged area of the battery cover and slide it off.
3. Install two AAA batteries into the battery compartment.
4. Slide the cover back on until it clicks.

If the remote control is to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep it in a cool, dry place.

Using the RSE On-Screen Display (OSD) Menus

Use the OSD setup display menus for:

- Initial setup
- Display setup
- Parental control setup
- Adjusting the picture quality
- Setting the various outputs
- On-screen display language

To use the OSD menus while using the DVD player or an auxiliary device:

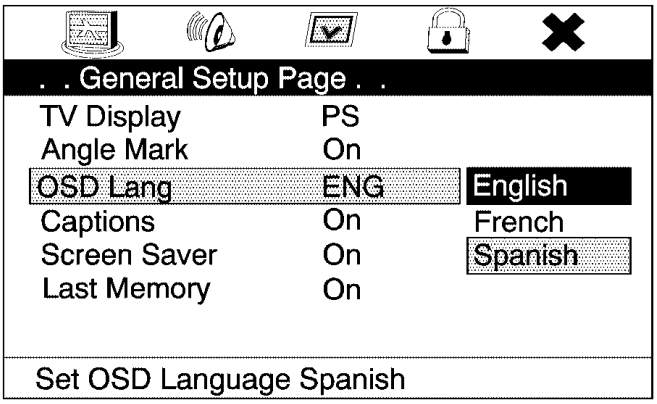
1. Press the SETUP button on the remote control to display the icons and pages on the display screen.
2. Select the desired page by using the left/right navigation arrows to move the cursor.
3. Press the SETUP button again on the remote control to cancel use of the setup display.

Not all DVDs support all of the feature defaults in the setup menus. If a feature is not supported, the defaults are provided by the DVD media.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To set the language for the OSD:

1. Press the SETUP button on the remote control.
2. Use the left/right navigation arrows to navigate the General Setup Page, then use the down navigation arrow to select the OSD language.
3. Press the right navigation arrow and then use the up/down navigation arrows to select English, French, or Spanish.



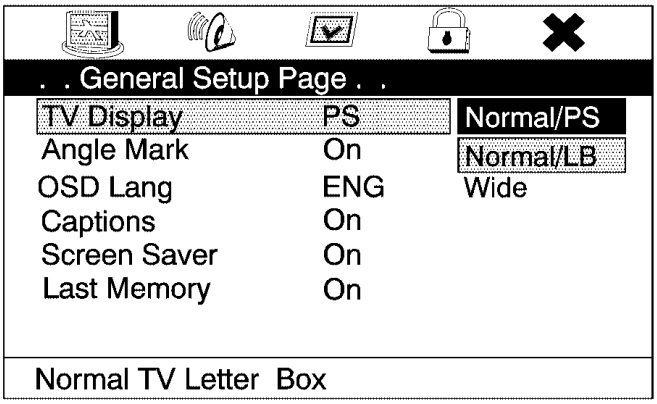
To set the TV display:

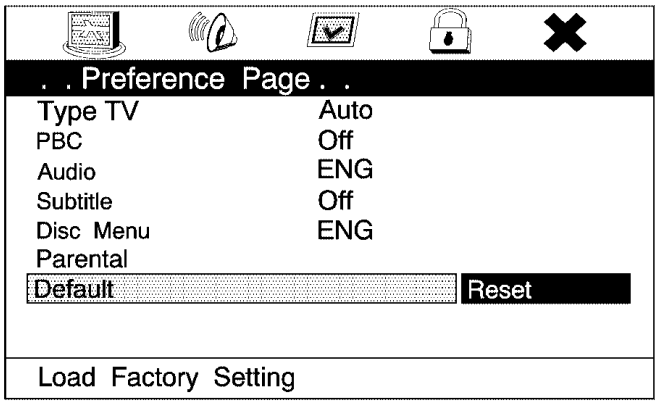
1. Press the SETUP button on the remote control.
2. Use the left/right navigation arrows to navigate the General Setup Page.
3. Press the down navigation arrow to select TV Display sub-menu and to adjust the screen setting.
4. Press the right navigation arrow and then use the up/down navigation arrows to select a display option.

   The display options are:

   - Normal/PS (Pan and Scan): This displays the wide picture on the screen with a portion of the left and right sides removed.
   - Normal/LB (Letter-Box): This displays the wide picture with black bands on the upper and lower portions of the screen.
   - Wide (16:9): This option is chosen if the video screen panel is wide screen.
5. Press ENTER on the remote control to confirm the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





To reset all options to factory defaults:

1. Press the SETUP button on the remote control.
2. Use the left/right and down navigation arrows on the remote control to select the Default sub-menu under the Preference Page.
3. Press the right navigation arrow, then press ENTER to reset.

This function will not affect the parental setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Settings for Parental Control

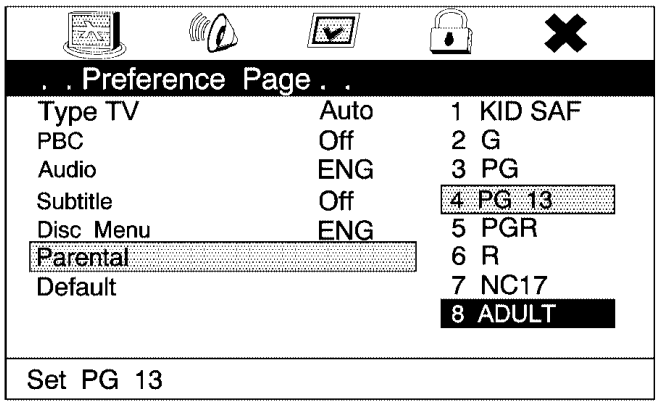
Use the SETUP MENU to access the parental control feature. It allows for control of the type of movie rating content (from G to Adult) that can be viewed and is only accessible when no disc is loaded.

To setup the Parental Control:

1. Press the SETUP button on the remote control.
2. Use the left/right and down navigation arrows on the remote control to select the Parental sub-menu under the Preference Page.
3. Press the SETUP button, and use the right and up/down navigation arrows to select any one of the available Rating settings from the display menu.

   The Rating settings are:

   - Kid SAF
   - G
   - PG 13
   - PG R
   - R
   - NC 17
   - ADULT
4. Press the ENTER button to confirm the selection.



If a disc is inserted into the DVD compartment slot and it exceeds the Parental Setting, the following message appears on display:

The Parental Setting of this player prohibits play. Would you like to allow this disc to play?

If yes if selected, the six digit password must be entered for the disc to play. If the wrong password is entered, the following message appears:

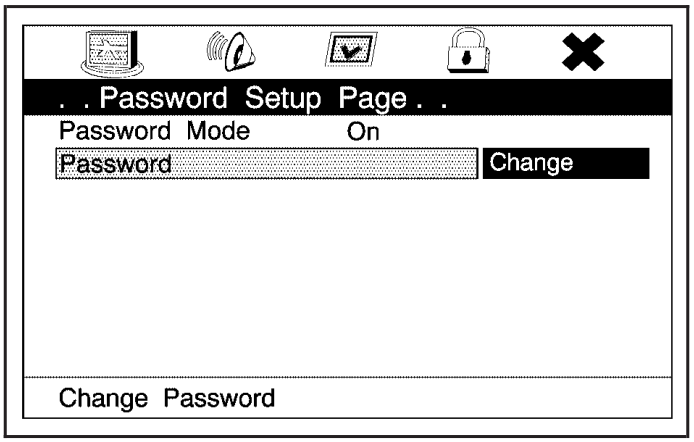
This movie will not play due to the Parental Setting of the player.

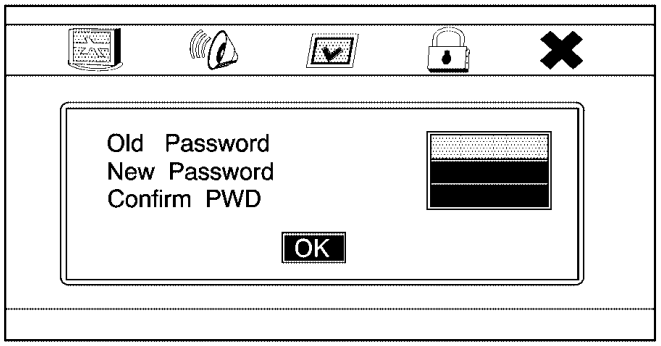
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To create a six digit password, use the numeric keypad on the remote control. Press the ENTER button to confirm. *The default password is 136900.*

To change the Parental Control Password:

1. Press the SETUP button on the remote control
2. Navigate to the Password sub-menu under the Password Setup Page.
3. Press the right navigation arrow, then press ENTER.
4. At the Old Password option, enter the old password or the default password (136900).
5. At the New Password option, enter the new password (six digits) using numeric buttons.
6. At the Confirm PWD option, confirm the new password by entering the new password again.
7. Scroll to the OK button and press ENTER. The message “Your password has been changed” displays.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Audio CD

When an audio CD is playing, the display shows the current track and the amount of time that track has been playing, the total amount of time on the disc, and the current time running on the disc.

DISPLAY: Press to choose from the following display options:

1. Press DISPLAY once and Single Elapsed appears along with the current track playing and the length of time for that track.
2. Press DISPLAY twice and Single Remain appears along with the current track playing and the amount of time left on the track.
3. Press DISPLAY three times and Total Elapsed appears along with the current track playing and the total time that has played on the CD.
4. Press DISPLAY four times and Total Remain appears along with the current track playing and the amount of time left on the CD.

REPEAT: Press to toggle between Track and All. The default for repeat is OFF.

- Track repeats the track that is playing.
- All repeats the disc that is playing.

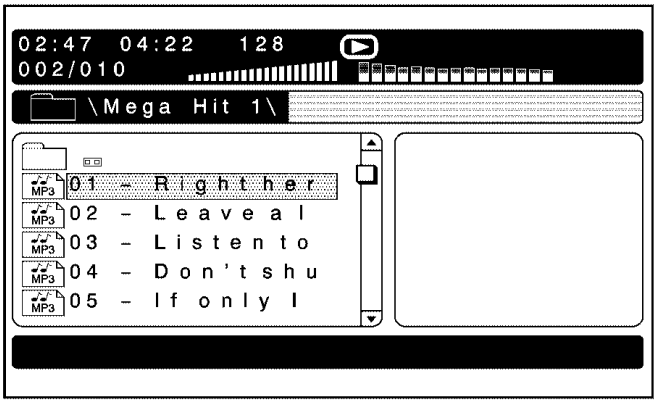
Playing MP3 CD

MP3 is the format for storing digital audio. An audio CD quality song can be compressed into the MP3 format with very little loss of quality, while taking up much less space. CD-R/RW discs that have been encoded in MP3 format can be played on the DVD player. See “Using an MP3” under the Audio System(s) section in the vehicle’s owner manual.

Selecting Folders and Songs

When an MP3 disc is inserted in the player, the navigation screen appears. The folders and songs can be changed by navigating through the file system. The DVD player plays the songs in the order they were burned to the disc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1. Press STOP if a disc is playing. Press the up or down navigation arrows on the remote control to go through the folder list on the left side of the screen.
2. Press ENTER when the desired folder is highlighted.
3. Press the up or down navigation arrows to go through the song list and highlight the desired song. Press ENTER to begin the playback of the selected song.

Skipping a Song

NEXT: Press to go to the next song.

PREV (Previous): Press to return to the beginning of the song that is currently playing. Press PREV twice to go to the previous song.

Selecting a Play Mode

The order the songs are played can be temporarily chosen on a disc. The FOLDER play mode is the default. Press the REPEAT button to access the play mode options.

The play mode options are:

- Single — Play a selected song.
- Folder — Play the folder in the order the songs were recorded.
- Shuffle — Play the songs in random order, from within the selected folder.

Using the REPEAT Feature

REPEAT: Press to change between Repeat One and Repeat Folder.

- Repeat One — Repeats the song that is playing.
- Repeat Folder — Repeats the folder that is playing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tips and Troubleshooting Chart

Problem	Recommended Action
IR Sensor Inoperative	• Check that the batteries are good in the remote control. • Check that the remote Control IR Sensor is not blocked. • Aim the remote control toward the IR Sensor being controlled. • Select the correct screen, 3 or 4.
No picture	• Check that the correct video input mode is selected. • Check that the video cable is plugged into the jack securely.
No Sound	• Check that the correct audio input mode is selected. • Check that the audio cable is securely plugged into the jack.

Cleaning the Video Screens

The video display screens are made of a specially coated glass and can be scratched or damaged by abrasive products, solvents, or ammonia-based window cleaners. Clean with a soft, lint-free, cotton cloth that has been slightly dampened with warm water. Dry the screens by wiping with a clean dry cotton cloth.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cleaning the Components

Use care when touching or cleaning the components such as the DVD player or the discs.

Do not use DVD lens cleaners for DVD players because the lens of the DVD optics can become contaminated by lubricants.

Handle CDs and DVDs carefully. Store them in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The DVD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD or DVD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD or DVD may not play properly or not at all. If the surface of a CD or DVD is soiled, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Do not touch the bottom side of a CD or DVD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs or DVDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

Rear Seat Audio (RSA)

Vehicles with this feature allow the rear seat passengers to listen to and control any of the music sources: radio, CDs, DVDs, or other auxiliary sources. The rear seat passengers can control the same music sources the front seat passengers are listening to (dual control) or a different source. For example, rear seat passengers can listen to and control a CD through the headphones, while the driver listens to the radio through the speakers. The rear seat passengers have control of the volume for each set of headphones.

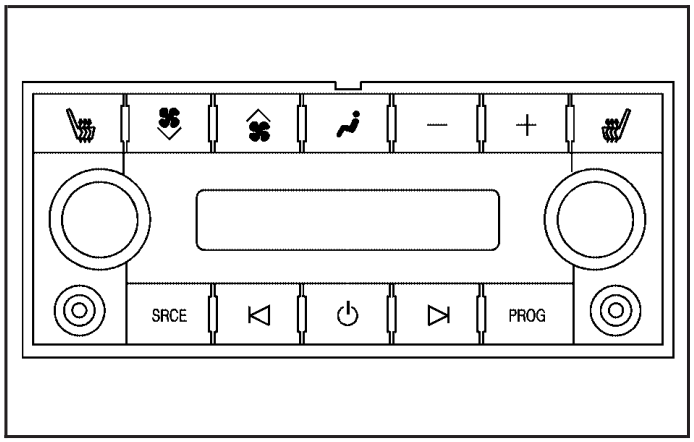
RSA functions can be operated even when the main radio is off.

Audio can be heard through wired headphones (not included) plugged into the jacks on the RSA. If the vehicle has this feature, audio can also be heard on Channel 2 of the wireless headphones.

The audio system allows the rear speakers to continue playing even when the RSA audio is active through the headphones.

To listen to an iPod or portable audio device through the RSA, attach the iPod or portable audio device to the auxiliary input (if available), located below the RSA. Turn the iPod on, then choose the auxiliary input with the RSA SRCE button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



⏻ **(Power):** Press the ⏻ button to turn RSA on and off.

Volume: Turn this knob to increase or to decrease the volume of the wired headphones. The left knob controls the left headphones and the right knob controls the right headphones.

SRCE (Source): Press this button to switch between the radio (AM/FM), XM™ (if equipped), CD, and if the vehicle has these features, DVD, and rear auxiliary.

⏮ ⏭ **(Seek):** When listening to FM, AM, or XM (if equipped), press either the left ⏮ or right ⏭ seek arrow to go to the previous or to the next station or channels and stay there. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

Press and hold either the left ⏮ or right ⏭ seek arrow until the display flashes, to tune to an individual station. The display stops flashing after the buttons have not been pushed for more than two seconds. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

While listening to a disc, press the right ⏭ seek arrow to go to the next track or chapter on the disc. Press the left ⏮ seek arrow to go back to the start of the current track or chapter (if more than ten seconds have played). This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the disc.

When a DVD video menu is being displayed, press either the left ⏮ or right ⏭ seek arrow to perform a cursor up or down on the menu. Hold the left ⏮ or right ⏭ seek arrow to perform a cursor left or right on the menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PROG (Program): Press this button to go to the next preset radio station or channel set on the main radio. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

When a CD or DVD audio disc is playing, press this button to go to the beginning of the CD or DVD audio. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the disc.

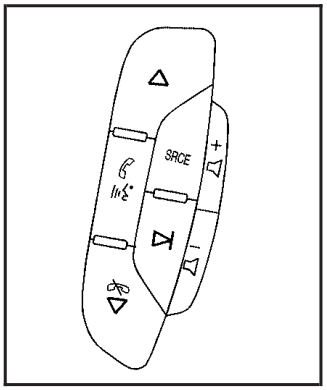
When a disc is playing in the CD or DVD changer, press this button to select the next disc, if multiple discs are loaded. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the disc.

When a DVD video menu is being displayed, press the PROG button to perform the menu function, enter.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of the vehicle's radio by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). The radio does not operate if it is stolen or moved to a different vehicle.

Audio Steering Wheel Controls



Vehicles with audio steering wheel controls could differ depending on the vehicle's options. Some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

△ **(Next):** Press to go to the next radio station stored as a favorite, or the next track if a CD/DVD is playing.

▽ **(Previous/End):** Press to go to the previous radio station stored as a favorite, the next track if a CD/DVD is playing, to reject an incoming call, or end a current call.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Mute/Push to Talk): Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on.

For vehicles with OnStar® or Bluetooth systems press and hold for longer than two seconds to interact with those systems. See *OnStar® System on page 2-52* and *Bluetooth® on page 3-75* for more information.

SRCE (Source/Voice Recognition): Press to switch between the radio (AM, FM, XM), CD, DVD, and rear auxiliary (if equipped).

Press and hold this button for longer than one second to initiate voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition on page 4-86* for more information.

+ – (Volume): Press to increase or to decrease the radio volume.

(Seek): Press to go to the next radio station while in AM, FM, or XM™. Press to go to the next track or chapter while sourced to the CD or DVD slot. Press the if multiple discs are loaded to go to the next disc while sourced to a CD player.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

FM Stereo

FM signals only reach about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM signal for a period of time.

Cellular Phone Usage

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with the vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery, or simply having the phone on. This interference causes an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If static is received while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

Rear Side Window Antenna

The AM-FM antenna is located in the passenger rear side windows. Make sure the inside surfaces of the rear side windows are not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surfaces are damaged, they could interfere with radio reception.

If a cellular telephone antenna needs to be attached to the glass, make sure that the grid lines for the AM-FM antenna are not damaged. There is enough space between the grid lines to attach a cellular telephone antenna without interfering with radio reception.

Notice: **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside of the rear side windows may affect radio reception or damage the rear side window antenna. Repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Do not clear the inside of the rear side windows with sharp objects.**

Notice: **Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to the antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by the warranty.**

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

The XM Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of the vehicle. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear radio reception.

If the vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 4 Navigation System

Overview 4-2
- Navigation System Overview 4-2
- Getting Started 4-4
- Cleaning the Display 4-12

Features and Controls 4-13
- Using the Navigation System 4-13
- Maps 4-15
- Symbols 4-19
- Destination 4-25
- Configure Menu 4-43
- Global Positioning System (GPS) 4-59
- Vehicle Positioning 4-60
- Problems with Route Guidance 4-61
- If the System Needs Service 4-61
- Ordering Map DVDs 4-61
- Database Coverage Explanations 4-62

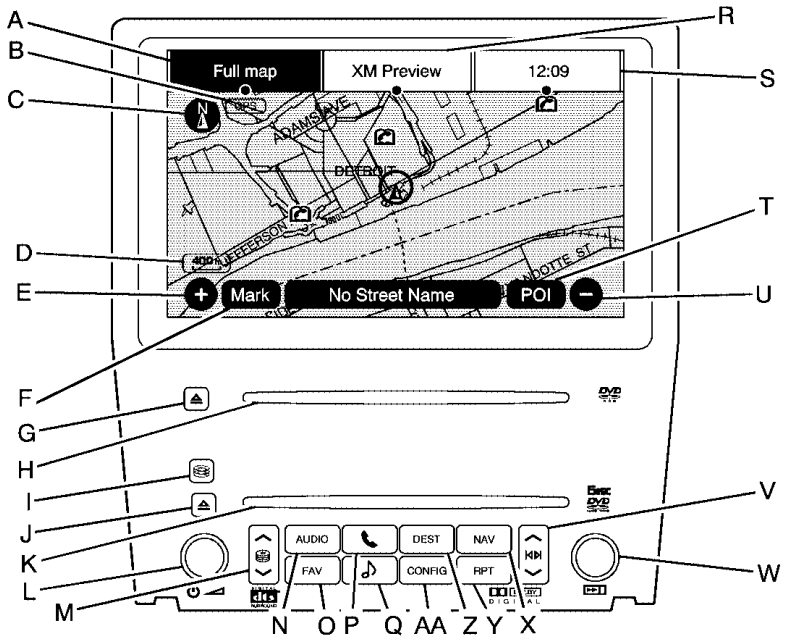
Navigation Audio System 4-62
- CD Player 4-71
- DVD Player 4-78
- Care of Your CDs and DVDs 4-84
- Auxiliary Devices 4-85

Voice Recognition 4-86

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Overview

Navigation System Overview



Screen shown with Map Disc Inserted

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Source (AM, FM, XM, CD, etc.) Touch Screen Button. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

B. Clock Touch Screen Button. See “Setting the Clock” under *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for more information.

C. POI (Point of Interest) Touch Screen Button. See “Displaying Points of Interest (POI) on the Map Screen” under *Symbols on page 4-19* for more information.

D. (Zoom Out) Touch Screen Button. See “Map Scales” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

E. (Seek) Key (Previous/Next). See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

F. (Tune) Knob. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

G. NAV (Navigation) Key. See “Hard Keys” under *Using the Navigation System on page 4-13* for more information.

H. RPT (Repeat) Key. See “Hard Keys” under *Using the Navigation System on page 4-13* for more information.

I. DEST (Destination) Key. See *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

J. CONFIG (Configure) Key. See *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for more information.

K. (Sound) Key. See “Sound Menu” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

L. (Phone) Key. See *OnStar® System on page 2-52* and *Bluetooth® on page 3-75* for more information.

M. FAV (Favorite) Key. See “Storing Radio Station Presets” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

N. AUDIO Key. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

O. (Disc Up/Down) Key. See “Hard Keys” under *Using the Navigation System on page 4-13* for more information.

P. / (Power/Volume) Knob. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

Q. CD/DVD Video/Audio Slot. See *CD Player on page 4-71* or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

R. (CD/DVD Video/Audio Eject) Key. See *CD Player on page 4-71* or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

S. (Load) Key. See *CD Player on page 4-71* or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

T. Map DVD Slot. See “Installing the Map DVD” under *Maps on page 4-15* for information on how to install and eject a map DVD.

U. ⏏ (DVD Map Disc Eject) Key. See *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

V. Mark Touch Screen Button. See “Adding Destinations to the Address Book” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

W. ⊕ (Zoom In) Touch Screen Button. See “Map Scales” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

X. Map Scale. See “Map Scales” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

Y. North Up/Heading Up Symbol. See *Symbols on page 4-19* for more information.

Z. No GPS Symbol. See *Symbols on page 4-19* for more information.

AA. FULL MAP Touch Screen Button. See “NAV” under “Hard Keys” under *Using the Navigation System on page 4-13* for more information.

Getting Started

Read this manual thoroughly to become familiar with how the navigation system operates.

The navigation system includes navigation and audio functions.

While entering the vehicle or when turning the vehicle off, some DVD Map Disc noise is normal.

Keeping your eyes on the road and your mind on the drive is important for safe driving. The navigation system has built-in features intended to help keep your eyes on the road and mind on the drive. Some features may be disabled while driving. Note that these functions will be grayed-out. A grayed-out function indicates it is not available when the vehicle is moving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

All functions are available when the vehicle is parked. Do the following before driving:

- Become familiar with the navigation system operation, hard keys on the faceplate, and touch-sensitive screen buttons of the navigation system.
- Set up the audio by presetting favorite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up the navigation features before beginning driving, such as entering an address or a preset destination.
- Set up your phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily with the press of a single button or a single voice command (for navigation systems equipped with phone capability).

⚠ CAUTION:

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often while using the navigation system could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Focus your attention on driving.

⚠ CAUTION:

Avoid looking too long or too often at the moving map on the navigation screen. This could cause a crash and you or others can be injured or killed. Use the turn-by-turn voice guidance directions whenever possible.

Use the navigation system to:

- Plan a route.
- Select a destination using various methods and choices.
- Follow turn-by-turn route and map guidance with voice prompts, only if permitted by traffic laws, controls, and conditions.

You should always be alert and obey traffic and roadway laws and instructions, regardless of the guidance from the navigation system. Because the navigation system uses street map information that does not include all traffic restrictions or the latest road changes, it may suggest using a road that is now closed for construction or a turn that is prohibited by signs at the intersection. Because the system uses limited information, you must always evaluate whether following the system's directions is safe and legal for the current conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the navigation system is turned on, a screen may appear with the information below, and you must read and acknowledge the information it contains.

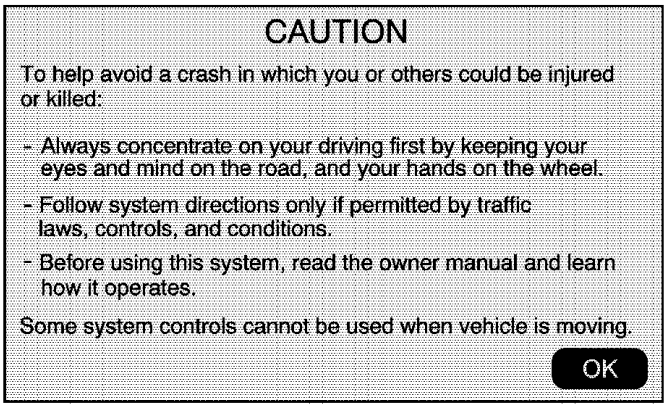
⚠ CAUTION:

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others.

To help avoid a crash in which you or others could be killed:

- Always concentrate on your driving first by keeping your eyes and mind on the road, and your hands on the wheel.
- Follow system directions only if permitted by traffic laws, controls, and conditions.
- Before using this system, read the owner manual and learn how it operates.
- Some system controls cannot be used the when vehicle is moving.

After you acknowledge the start up information you will be able to access the NAV (navigation) and DEST (destination) functions. Once accessed, you can enter or delete information in the navigation system or access other functions. See instructions later in this section.


CAUTION
To help avoid a crash in which you or others could be injured or killed:
- Always concentrate on your driving first by keeping your eyes and mind on the road, and your hands on the wheel.
- Follow system directions only if permitted by traffic laws, controls, and conditions.
- Before using this system, read the owner manual and learn how it operates.
Some system controls cannot be used when vehicle is moving.
OK

Every fifty times the vehicle is started and the navigation system is turned on, the Caution screen appears. After reading the caution, select OK to load the map DVD information. If OK is not selected, all hard keys except for NAV (Navigation) and DEST (Destination) can be accessed. You can also press the NAV hard key to have this Caution screen appear.

When getting started, set the navigation system to your preference or delete information you may have entered using various options.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Language — English/Metric

To change the language of the navigation screens, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47* for more information.

To change the navigation screens from English or metric, see *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

Deleting Personal Information

This navigation system can record and store personal information such as names and addresses. Delete this information when selling your vehicle or returning a leased vehicle. See “Edit Address Book — Edit/View” under *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for deleting information from the address book.

Limit Features While Driving

The navigation system may have this feature.

Touch the Limit Features While Driving screen button to turn the ability to limit functions on and off while driving. When this screen button is highlighted, the following functions are limited while driving:

- Music Navigator Scrolling
- Radio Category Scrolling
- Navigation Menu Scrolling and some functions

See “Category” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information. See “From Map” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

Some functions will remain limited regardless of the setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing Radio Station Presets

To set preset radio stations, do the following:

1. Press ⏻ to turn the system on.
2. Press the AUDIO hard key and select the desired band (AM, FM, or XM (if equipped)).
3. Use the ▷▷| (tuning) knob or the SEEK arrows to tune to the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the five preset screen buttons, at the bottom of the screen, until a beep is heard or if the station displays on the selected preset button.
5. Repeat the steps for each preset.

See “Storing Radio Station Presets” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

Setting the Clock

The navigation system time and the analog clock operate independently. Changing the time through the navigation system does not change the time on the analog clock. See *Analog Clock on page 3-26* to change the analog clock time.

To set the time for the navigation system:

1. Press the CONFIG key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until the time is selected or touch the time screen button.
2. Press the Hours and Minutes – (minus) and + (plus) signs to decrease or to increase the time.

See “Setting the Clock” under *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Entering an Address and Point of Interest, and Storing Preset Destinations

Entering an Address

Enter a destination by inputting the city name first:

1. If the radio is already on with a map disc inserted, skip to Step 5.
2. Press ⏻ to turn the system on.
3. Insert the DVD map disc. See “Installing the Map DVD” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.
4. A caution may appear. Touch the OK screen button to proceed.
5. Press the DEST hard key.
6. Press the Address Entry screen button.
7. Select the state/province screen button, if needed, to change the current state or province. A list of all of the available states and provinces appear. Select the state or province.
8. Once a state or province has been selected the City name category is automatically selected for entry.

   If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This number represents the number of available cities. Select this button to view the list and select a city.
9. Once a city has been selected the Street name category is automatically selected for entry.

   If five or less streets are available for the selected city, the system displays the list of streets. If more than five streets are available the system displays the alpha keyboard. Start entering the street name. If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This button represents the number of available streets. Select this button to view the list and select a street.
10. Once a street has been selected, select the House # screen button to enter the house number. The system displays the house number range that is available for the street.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

11. Select the Go screen button. A map screen, with the destination marked appears.
12. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
13. Select the Start Guidance screen button. You are now ready to start your route.

See “Address Entry ” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

Entering a Point of Interest (POI)

To set a destination by entering a Point of Interest (POI), do the following:

1. If the radio is already on with a map disc inserted, skip to Step 5.
2. Press ⏻ to turn the system on.
3. Insert the DVD map disc. See “Installing the Map DVD” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.
4. A caution may appear. Touch the OK screen button to proceed.
5. Press the DEST hard key.
6. Press the Point of Interest screen button.
7. Select the state/province screen button, if needed, to change the current state or province. A list of all of the available states and provinces appear. Select the state or province.
8. Enter the specific title of the POI in the POI name space (e.g. Washington Monument).

   If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This button represents the number of available POIs. Select this button to view the list.
9. Select the Go screen button next to the POI. A map screen, with the destination marked appears.
10. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
11. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

See “Point of Interest (POI)” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing Preset Destinations

1. If the radio is already on with a map disc inserted, skip to Step 5.
2. Press ⏻ to turn the system on.
3. Insert the DVD map disc. See “Installing the Map DVD” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.
4. A caution may appear. Touch the OK screen button to proceed.
5. Press the DEST hard key.

   Enter a destination. See *Destination on page 4-25* for more information on how to enter a destination.
6. Press the DEST hard key, the Route screen displays. Press the Final Destination or Stopover screen button. The information screen displays for that location. Press the Add to Address Book screen button. The address book screen appears.
7. Select the Name screen button. An alpha-keyboard displays. Enter the name. Select the Back screen button.
8. Press and hold one of the screen buttons at the bottom of the screen until the name appears in the screen button on the display.

   The name appears in that preset destination screen button and is now available to select from the Destination Entry screen. See “Using Your Stored Preset Destinations” next in this section to select it as a destination.

   See “Adding or Changing Preset Destinations” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information on how to add preset destinations.

Using Your Stored Preset Destinations

These destinations are available for selection while driving.

1. If the radio is already on with a map disc inserted, skip to Step 5.
2. Press ⏻ to turn the system on.
3. Insert the DVD map disc. See “Installing the Map DVD” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. A caution may appear. Touch the OK screen button to proceed.
5. Press the DEST hard key.
6. Select one of the available preset destination screen buttons. A map screen, with the destination marked appears.
7. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
8. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

See “Preset Destination” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

Canceling Guidance

Guidance is canceled once the final destination is reached. To cancel guidance prior to arrival at the final destination:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Press the Cancel Guidance screen button.
3. Press OK to confirm.

Guidance Volume

Adjust the volume of voice guidance prompts:

1. Press the CONFIG hard key to enter the menu options, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Nav is selected or touch the Nav screen button.
2. Press the Voice Prompt screen button.
3. Press the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or to decrease the volume of the voice prompts. The system responds with the adjusted voice level.

See “Voice Prompt ” under *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for more information.

Cleaning the Display

Use a soft clean cotton cloth dampened with clean water.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Features and Controls

Using the Navigation System

This section presents basic information needed to operate the navigation system.

Use the hard keys located on the navigation system along with the available touch-sensitive screen buttons on the navigation screen to operate the system. See *Navigation System Overview on page 4-2* for more information.

Once the vehicle is moving, various functions are disabled to reduce driver distractions.

Hard Keys

The following hard keys are located on the navigation system:

/ (Power/Volume): Press to turn the system on and off. Turn to increase or decrease the volume to the audio system.

Press and hold for more than two seconds to turn off the navigation system, the Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE), and Rear Seat Audio (RSA). If the vehicle has not been tuned off, the RSE and the RSA can be turned back on by pressing this knob and continues play of the last active source.

(Tune): Turn to go to the next or previous radio station or disc track or chapter. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62*, *CD Player on page 4-71*, or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

(DVD Map Disc Eject): Press to eject the DVD map disc. This button is located next to the upper disc slot. See *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

(Load): Press to load CDs or audio/video DVDs. See *CD Player on page 4-71* or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

(CD/DVD Eject): Press to eject CDs or audio/video DVDs. This button is located under the load button. See *CD Player on page 4-71* or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

(Disc Up/Down): Press the up or down arrows to go to the next or previous disc.

AUDIO: Press access the full Audio screen to change AM, FM, XM™ Satellite Radio Service (if equipped), CD/DVD, and auxiliary input. See “Audio” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

FAV (Favorite): Press to access the preset stations. See “Storing Radio Station Presets” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Phone): Press to access calling through OnStar®. See *OnStar® System on page 2-52* and *Bluetooth® on page 3-75* for more information.

(Sound): Press to access the Sound screen to adjust bass, midrange, treble, and Digital Signal Processing (DSP). See “Sound Menu” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

DEST (Destination): Press to access the Destination Entry screen to plan a destination. See *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

CONFIG (Configure Menu): Press to adjust features for sound, radio, navigation, and the display. See *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for more information.

NAV (Navigation): Press to view your vehicle’s current position on the map screen. Each press of this key cycles through Full Map and the tab that displays the current audio source (AM, FM, CD, etc.). Full Map displays the screen in full map view. Selecting the audio tab splits the screen between the map screen and the current audio source screen menu. See “Audio” under *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

RPT (Navigation Repeat): Press to repeat the last voice guidance prompt.

(Seek): Press the seek arrows to seek and scan radio stations, to seek tracks on a CD, and to seek chapters on a DVD. See *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62*, *CD Player on page 4-71*, or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

Touch-Sensitive Screen Buttons

Touch-sensitive screen buttons are located on the screen. When a screen button has been selected, a beep sounds. Screen buttons are highlighted when a feature is available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

Letters of the alphabet, symbols, punctuation, and numbers, when available, displays on the navigation screen as an alpha or numeric keyboard. The alpha keyboard displays when the system requires entry of a city or street name.

All characters are touch-sensitive screen buttons. Touch a character to select it.

A-Y (Accent Alphabet): Select to enter letters with accent symbols. This button may toggle to A-Z.

A-Z (Alphabet): Select to enter letters from the alphabet. This button may toggle to A-Y.

0-9 (Numbers): Select to enter numbers.

(Space): Select to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

Backspace: Select if an incorrect character has been entered.

To make name entries easier, the system only highlights the characters that can follow the last one entered. For example, if a Z is entered, a T may not be available for selection.

If a name does not display after entry, it may need to be entered differently or the map DVD disc may not contain that information. See *Database Coverage Explanations on page 4-62* for more information.

Maps

This section includes basic information that you need to know about the map database.

The maps are stored on a DVD. The United States, Canada, and Puerto Rico are contained on one disc.

Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street address, turn restrictions, etc. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include points of interest (POI) such as: restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, gas stations, tourist attractions, historical monuments, etc. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after the production of the disc. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Limited Guidance Areas

Any area that is not classified as detailed, is a limited guidance area. Limited guidance streets are displayed on the map but route guidance may not be given on these streets. Some POI categories, such as the city center POI category, and some street addresses are included in the limited guidance areas.

The navigation system informs through voice prompts when you are traveling into a limited guidance area where route guidance is not available. The street maps and the directional arrow displayed on the navigation system can then be used to determine the remaining route to your destination.

Installing the DVD Map Disc

When a DVD Map Disc is installed, noise from the disc may occur, this is normal system operation.

The navigation system in this vehicle uses a DVD to store map information. When the system loads data from the disc, you may hear a very slight buzz sound from the navigation system. The sound is similar to that of a CD player seeking through different tracks. This is normal operation and may occur more frequently with the use of XM NavTraffic.

Your dealer/retailer may have installed the map DVD. If the map DVD was not installed, do the following to load it:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press the ⏻ (power) knob to turn the navigation system on or press the NAV, DEST, or MENU hard keys. If the MENU hard key is selected, press and hold until the NAV screen is active, or select the NAV tab manually.
3. Load the map DVD partway into the slot located just below the screen. The system will pull it in.
4. Touch the OK screen button to agree to the Caution screen, if it appears. If the map is in split screen mode, you must push the NAV tab button to get the full map screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DVD Map Disc Messages

If Disc Read Error appears on the display and/or the map disc comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- If the map disc was installed into the CD slot. See “Installing the DVD Map Disc” previously.
- It is very hot, when the temperature returns to normal, the map disc should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the map disc should play.
- The map disc is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer.

Ejecting the DVD Map Disc

⏏ **(DVD Map Disc Eject):** Press to eject the DVD map disc. This button is located next to the upper disc slot.

Handling the DVD Map Disc

When handling the DVD map disc, be careful of the following:

- Handle the disc very carefully to avoid contamination or flaws. Signals may not read out properly if the disc gets contaminated or flawed.
- If the disc gets soiled, use a soft cloth to gently wipe it out from the center of the disc to the outside. Do not use photographic record cleaner, solvents, or other cleaners.
- Do not use the disc to rest on while writing or drawing using any writing utensil or attach a seal to any of the sides or the disc.
- Do not keep the disc in direct sunlight, high temperatures, or humidity.
- After using the disc, place it back into the original case.

Map Adjustments

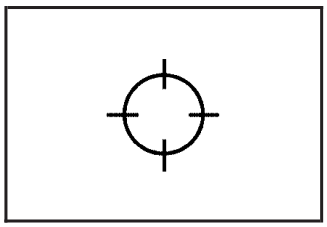
The system lets you adjust the scale of view on the map. Also, as you drive, the map scrolls automatically based on the direction of travel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Map Scales

+ / – (Zoom In/Zoom Out): Touch the zoom in or out screen buttons or the scale on the bar to change the level of map detail. The scale appears on the screen once the zoom in or zoom out screen buttons are selected. The system adjusts the map accordingly. The scale of a map can range from 1/32 mi. (50 m) to 256 mi. (400 km). To change English or metric, see *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

Scrolling the Map



Touch anywhere on the map screen and the scroll symbol appears. Use this feature to scroll across the map.

Move your finger in any direction on the map screen and the map continues to scroll in that direction until you remove your finger from the screen.

If scrolling while the vehicle is in P (Park), the system scrolls initially at a slower rate. It increases if you continue touching the map screen.

If scrolling while the vehicle is in motion, there is one scroll speed and a limited distance to scroll. Keep touching the map screen to scroll for a longer distance.

If you have used the scroll feature to scroll the map and the vehicle icon disappears off the screen, press the NAV (Navigation) key to return to the current vehicle location on the map.

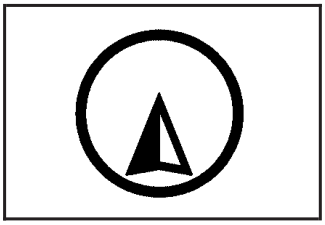
The scroll feature on the map can be used to set a destination. See “From Map” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

While scrolling on the map, press the GO screen button to calculate the route from the current position to the destination mark.

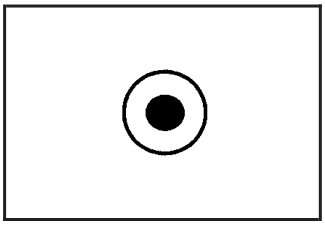
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbols

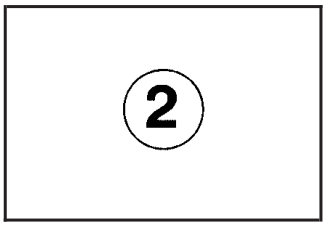
The following symbols are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.



The vehicle is shown as this symbol. It indicates the current position and the direction the vehicle is traveling on the map.

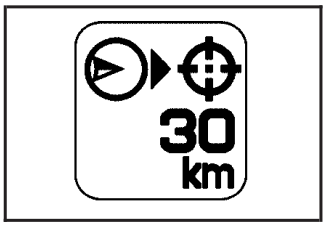


The destination symbol appears on the map, after a route has been planned, marking the final destination.



The stopover symbol displays on the map after a stopover has been added to the route.

The stopover symbols are numbered one through three, depending on how many stopovers have been set.

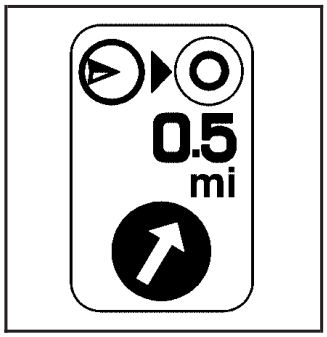


The distance to destination symbol indicates the distance to the final destination.

This symbol appears when the time to the destination is not available or while you are scrolling on the map.

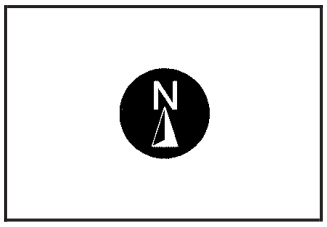
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The distance and time to destination symbol indicates the distance and the estimated time remaining to the final destination, depending on the option selected.



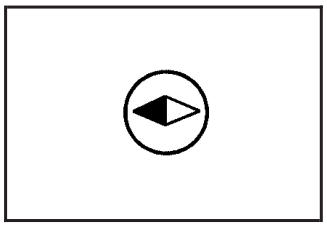
The straight line to distance symbol indicates the straight-line distance to the destination.

This symbol appears before you start driving on the route or if on a road where navigation guidance cannot be given.



The north up symbol indicates the map with North Up, known as North Up mode.

While in North Up mode, the vehicle icon follows the north direction on the map regardless of which direction the vehicle is traveling. Select this screen symbol to switch between North Up, Heading Up, and 3–D view modes.

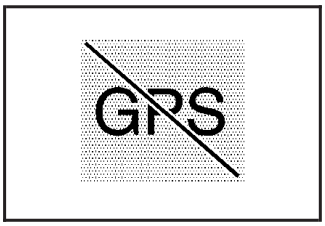


The heading up symbol indicates that the vehicle is traveling up on the map and is known as Heading Up mode.

The shaded triangle indicates the North direction. While in Heading Up mode the direction at the top of the screen and the way the vehicle icon is heading indicates the direction the vehicle is traveling. Select this screen symbol to switch between Heading Up, North Up, and 3–D view modes.

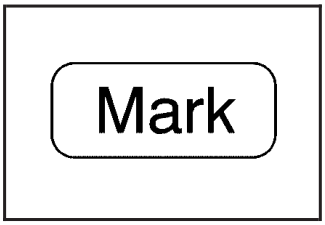
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Three-dimensional (3–D) view mode changes the appearance of the map display to a road level view.



The No GPS symbol appears when the vehicle is acquiring or not receiving a Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal.

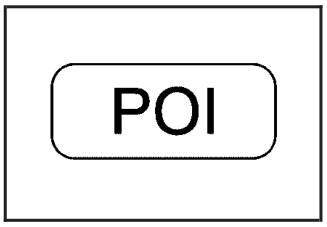
See *Global Positioning System (GPS) on page 4-59* for more information.



Select the Mark screen button to store the location on the screen in the address book.

The system automatically stores the point in the address book. See “Adding Destinations to the Address Book” under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

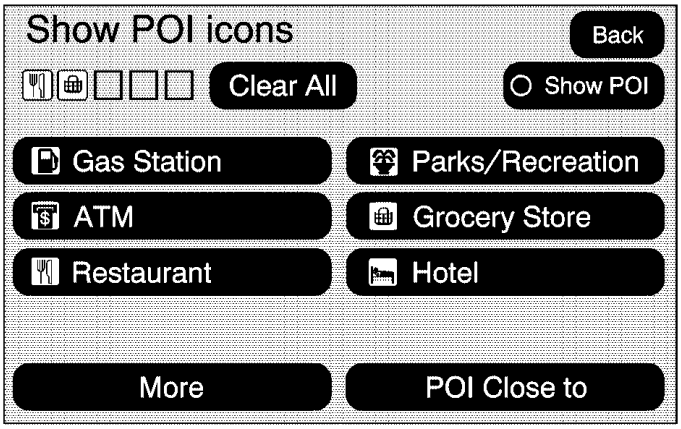
Displaying Points of Interest (POI) on the Map Screen



Select the POI screen button to display or delete POI icons from the map.

Displaying POI icons on the map shows where POIs (e.g. restaurants, gas stations, etc.) are located. This screen appears after selecting the POI screen button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

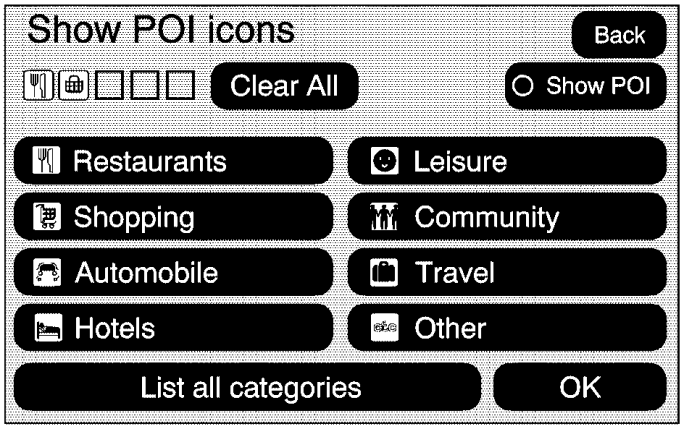


1. Select one of the POI categories to display the POI icon at the top of the map screen. Select the POI category again to delete the POI icon.
2. Up to five categories can display on the map screen.
3. Press the Show POI screen button to add more POI icons.

More: Select to view more POI categories.

POI Close to:

1. Once a category has been selected, touch this button to display the list of available POIs for the selected POI category. The list provides the POI icon, the name, the direction, and the distance to the POI from the vehicle's current position.



2. Use the scroll arrows to move up and down the list.
3. Use the sorting screen buttons: Dist (distance), Icon, Name, and on Route as needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Go: Select this screen button, next to the desired POI, to make this POI a destination or a stopover.

Select a POI name to receive information about the POI. From this screen you can select: Address Book, Go, Map, or Call (if Bluetooth® or OnStar® personal calling is activated).

Address Book: Press to add this POI to the address book. See “Nav” under *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for information on editing address book entries.

Go: Select to make this POI a destination or a stopover.

Map: Select to display the map showing the location of the POI.

Call: Select to dial the phone number using your Bluetooth® phone (if “paired” with the vehicle) or the OnStar HandsFree Calling system. For more information about Bluetooth calling, see *Bluetooth® on page 3-75*. For more information about OnStar HandsFree calling, see the OnStar Owner Guide.

OK: Select to display the map screen.

Show POI: Select to display or remove the POI icons from the map screen.

List all Categories: Select to list all POIs sorted alphabetically.

Delete: To delete a specific POI category, select the category.

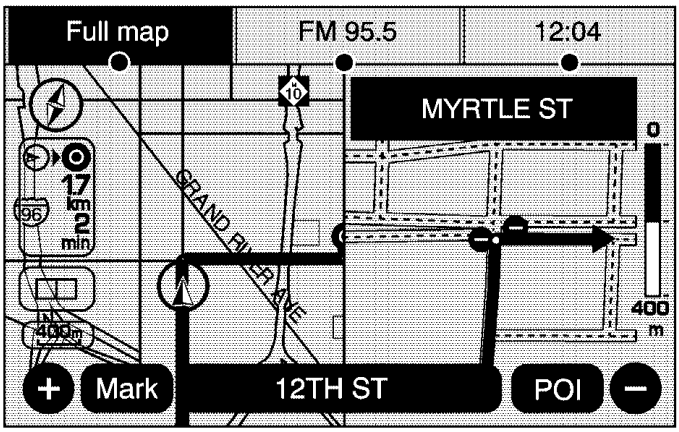
Clear All: Select this screen button to clear all selected POI categories.

Driving on a Route

When driving on a routed destination, the map screen automatically displays the next maneuver.

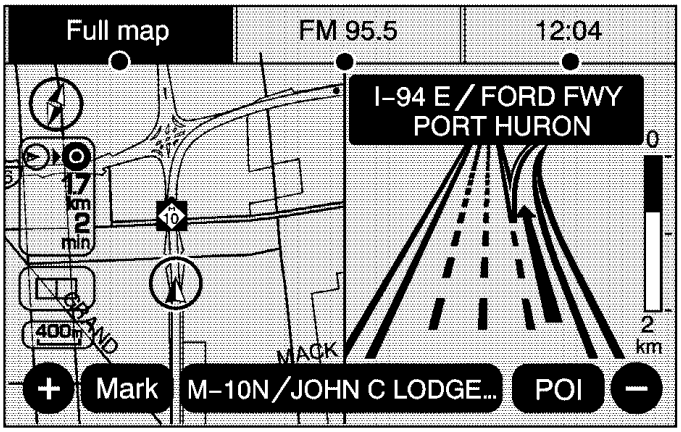
The pop-up displays the next maneuver direction and the distance from it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When approximately 1/4 mi (400 m) from the next maneuver, the screen displays the name and a detailed view of it.

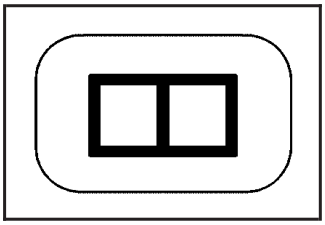
3–D Lane Guidance



Some major metropolitan areas may include a 3–D lane guidance feature for highway exits and junctions. This feature gives you an enhanced representation of the exits and junctions on the route. Cities that include this feature are New York, Los Angeles, Chicago, Detroit, and San Francisco, and may also include Philadelphia, Washington D.C., and other major highway junctions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Mode



This dual screen symbol displays when the screen is in dual mode.

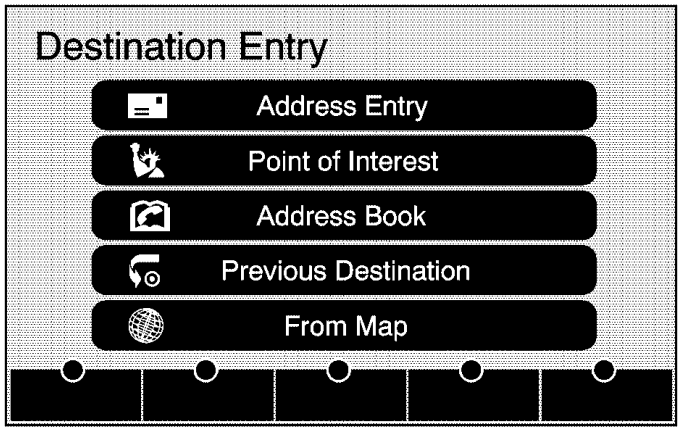
Dual mode displays the route on half of the screen and a maneuver or Interstate Exit list on the other half. The Interstate Exit list advises of approaching exits. Press this button to switch between dual screen and full screen which displays the entire route.

Auto Reroute

When a destination is set but is off the planned route, the system automatically plans a new route and begins to reroute. The new route is highlighted on the screen.

Destination

Press the DEST key to access the Destination Entry screen. From this screen, you can select from several options to plan a route by entering destination points.

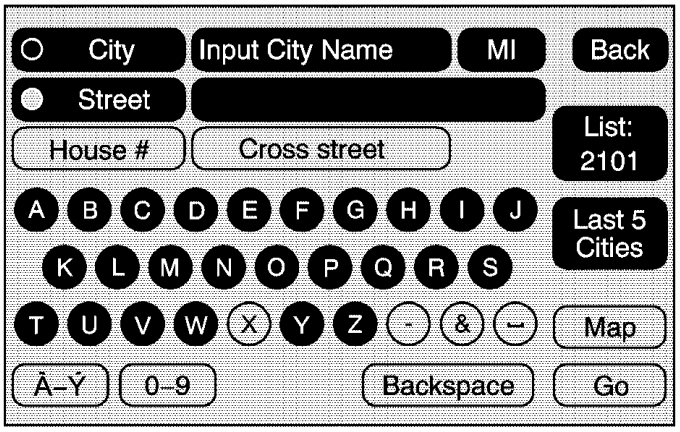


To enter a destination, choose from one of the following destination entry methods:

Address Entry

Address Entry: Enter either a city or street to use the address entry destination method.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To enter a destination by inputting the city name first:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button.
3. Select the state/province screen button, if needed, to change the current state or province. A list of all of the available states and provinces appear. Select the state or province.
4. Once a state or province has been selected the City name category is automatically selected for entry.

   Enter the City Name or touch the Last 5 Cities screen button.

   The Last 5 Cities screen displays a list of the last five city names that had been entered. Select a city from the list and it appears in the City name area.

   If using the alpha keyboard, finish entering the city name. If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This number represents the number of available cities. Select this button to view the list and select a city.
5. Once a city has been selected the Street name category is automatically selected for entry.

   Start entering the street name. If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This number represents the number of available streets. Select this button to view the list.
6. Once a street has been selected, press the House # screen button to enter the house number. The system displays the house number range that is available for the street.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7. Select the Go screen button. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
8. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
9. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

To enter a destination by entering the street name first:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button.
3. Select the state/province screen button, if needed, to change the current state or province. A list of all of the available states and provinces appear. Select the state or province.
4. Select the Street screen button and start entering the street name or touch the Last 5 Streets screen button.

   If the street name is common, the city might need to be entered first.

   The Last 5 Streets screen displays a list of the last five street names that had been entered. Select a street from the list and it appears in the Street name area.

   If using the alpha keyboard, finish entering the street name. If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This number represents the number of available streets. Select this button to view the list and select a street.
5. Once a street has been selected, select the House # screen button to enter the house number. The system displays the house number range that is available for the street.
6. Once the house number is selected, the city name automatically populates. If there is more than one city available for selection, a list of cities display. Select the city.
7. Select the Go screen button. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
8. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
9. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To enter a destination by entering a cross street:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button.
3. Select the state/province screen button, if needed, to change the current state or province. A list of all of the available states and provinces appear. Select the state or province.
4. Select the Street screen button and start entering the street name or touch the Last 5 Streets screen button.

   If the street name is common, the city might need to be entered first.

   The Last 5 Streets screen displays a list of the last five street names that had been entered. Select a street from the list and it appears in the Street name area.

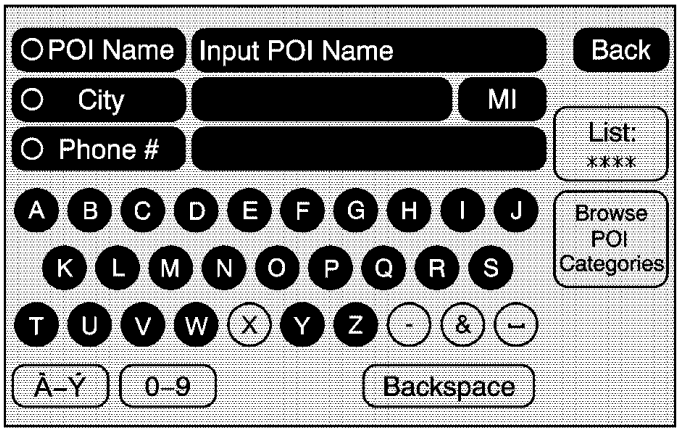
   If using the alpha keyboard, finish entering the street name. If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This number represents the number of available streets. Select this button to view the list and select a street.
5. Once a street has been selected, select the Cross Street screen button and start entering the cross street name. If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This number represents the number of available streets. Select this button to view the list and select a street.
6. Select the Go screen button. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
7. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
8. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Point of Interest (POI)

The Point of Interest (POI) destination entry method lets you select a destination from the POI list.



Point of Interest: Touch to access the POI (Point of Interest) screen. From this screen you have two options to select/enter a destination. Enter the name using the alpha keyboard or select a category from the category list.

To use the point of interest destination entry method by entering the name:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button.
3. Select the state/province screen button, if needed, to change the current state or province. A list of all of the available states and provinces appear. Select the state or province.
4. Enter the POI name.

   If five or less names are available, a list displays. If more than five are available, the List screen button displays a number. This number represents the number of available POIs. Select this button to view the list.
5. Select the Go screen button next to the POI. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
6. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
7. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use the point of interest destination entry method by selecting a category:

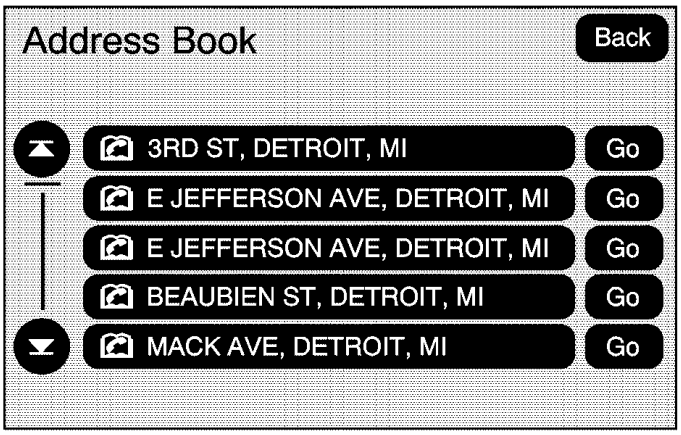
1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button.
3. Select the Browse POI Categories screen button to view the list of POI categories.
4. Select a category.

   The system displays available POI names in the selected category.
5. Select the Go screen button next to the POI. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
6. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
7. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

Address Book

The address book entry method lets you select a destination by selecting an address that has been stored in the address book.



Address Book: Touch to access the Address Book screen. From this screen an address that already exists can be selected as the destination.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use the address book entry method:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button.

   A list of the address book addresses display.
3. Select the Go screen button next to the destination. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
4. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
5. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

   See “Adding Destinations to the Address Book” later in this section.

Previous Destination

The previous destination entry method lets you select a destination from a list of previous destination points.

Previous Destination: Touch to access the Previous Destination screen. The system stores up to 20 points that have been previously entered. As new destinations are entered, the system automatically deletes the oldest destinations and adds the new destinations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

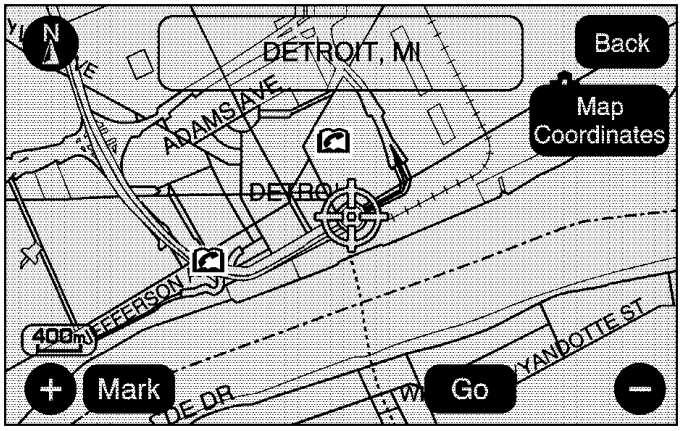
To use the previous destination entry method:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button.
3. Select a previous destination from the list. Use the arrow to the right of the destination to view the entire destination name as necessary. Use the scroll arrows to the left to scroll through the list.
4. Select the Go screen button next to the destination. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
5. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
6. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

From Map

This destination entry method allows you to select a destination by scrolling on the map.



From Map: Touch to enter the From Map destination entry method.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use this destination entry method:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the screen button. A map screen displays with the scrolling symbol.
3. Use the ⊕ / ⊖ screen buttons and touch on the map to find the area that you would like to select as your destination.

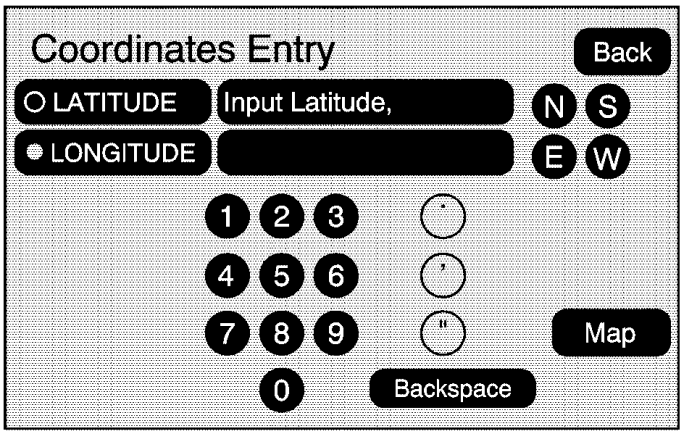
   Pressing/holding and dragging your finger on the map activates fast scrolling.
4. Press/touch once on the area that you would like to set as your destination.

   The map screen displays the address information.
5. Select the Go screen button. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
6. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
7. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

Map Coordinates

The coordinates destination entry method lets you select a destination by entering latitude and longitude coordinates.



Map Coordinates: Touch to access the Coordinates Entry screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

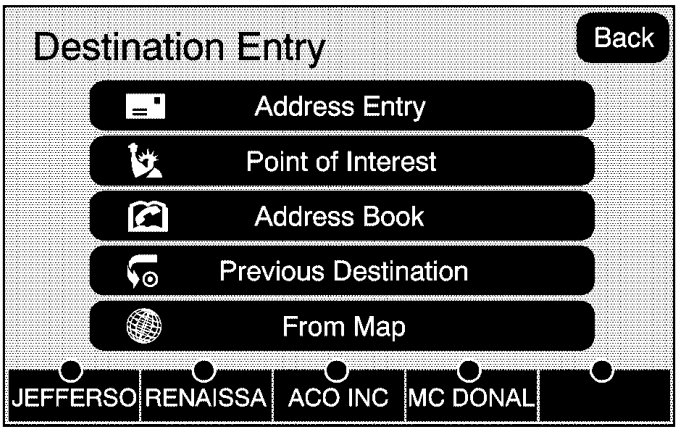
To use the coordinates destination entry method:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the From Map screen button.
3. Select the Map Coordinates screen button.
4. Select Latitude and select either N (north) or S (south) to enter the direction of the latitude coordinate. Enter the numeric portion of the latitude coordinate.
5. Select Longitude and select either E (east) or W (west) next to enter the direction of the longitude coordinate. Enter the numeric portion of the longitude coordinate.
6. Once both coordinates are entered, select the Go screen button. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
7. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
8. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

Preset Destination

The preset destination entry method lets you set a destination by selecting from one of five previously stored destinations. Besides voice tagged destinations, these are the only destinations available to set while the vehicle is moving. If a destination is not set for one of the screen buttons, the button is dimmed and not available for use. See “Adding or Changing Preset Destinations” later in this section for information on how to add a preset destination.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use the preset destination entry method:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the desired preset destination screen button. The screen buttons are labeled with the name that was selected for the destination when it was stored. The map screen, with the destination marked displays.
3. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
4. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

   See “Getting Started on Your Route” later in this section for more information.

Map Destination Screen Functions

If the map screen is used to show destination, it will have map screen capabilities such as Go, Mark, Zoom, Scroll, etc. The address is shown at the top of the screen.

Destination Map Screen

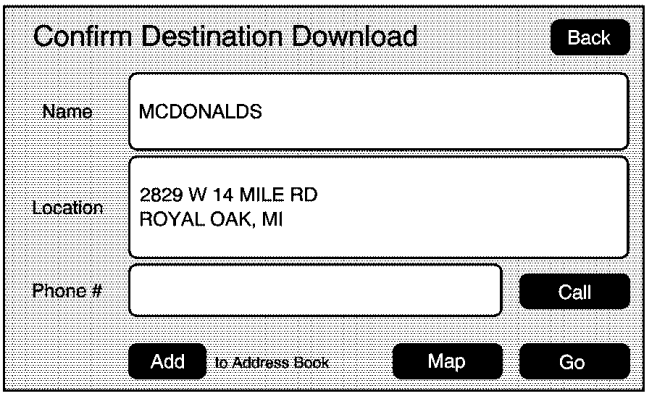
OnStar® Destination Download

OnStar® Destination Download (if equipped) is a service available for OnStar* subscribers that makes operating your navigation system much simpler. It allows subscribers to request and receive navigation assistance on-the-go.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using OnStar® Destination Download

Press the blue OnStar button and an Advisor can locate a point-of-interest or an address and download the necessary information or coordinates to your navigation system. Once the destination is downloaded, the navigation system will search for the address in the mapping disc's database. When the address is found, it will be shown on your navigation system's screen along with the buttons described below.



OnStar Download Screen

- Select Go, the navigation system calculates route(s). Select a route (i.e. Shortest Route), and Start Guidance.
- Select Map, the navigation system displays the Destination Map Screen.
- Select Call, the navigation system initiates a call to your destination with your Bluetooth phone (if available) or OnStar Hands-Free Calling (if minutes are available).
- Select Add to Address Book, the navigation system copies the downloaded destination to the address book and displays the new address book entry.
- Select Back, the navigation system cancels your OnStar Destination Download and returns to the previous screen. The downloaded address will not be added to the previous destinations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Route Guidance Not Active

If an OnStar destination is downloaded while route guidance is not active, the navigation system displays an OnStar Destination Download Screen and operations will continue as outlined in the Using OnStar Destination Download section:

Route Guidance Active

If OnStar downloads a destination while route guidance is already active, the navigation system adds the downloaded destination as the next waypoint in the existing route. All features such as Call and Add to Address Book will be available for the waypoint. Refer to the section on Waypoints for more information.

Previous Destinations

Previous OnStar Destination Downloads are saved under Previous Destinations in the navigation system where they can be accessed or saved to the address book.

Important Notes regarding OnStar Destination Download:

- If the navigation system is turned off when the destination download is attempted, the navigation system will automatically turn on and display the OnStar Destination Download Screen. The radio will remain on after the download occurs.
- If OnStar downloads a destination and the address is not found in the mapping disc's database and routing by coordinates is not available, the Go and Map buttons gray out and routing will not be available. Press the blue OnStar button for further assistance.
- The Call button grays out when there is no phone number available for your destination and while connected to OnStar.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

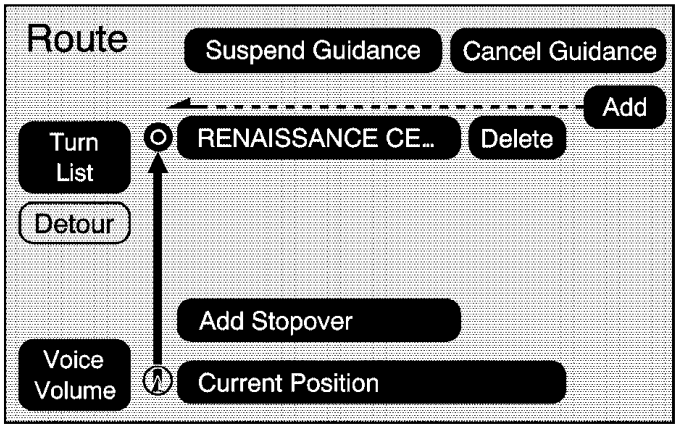
Map Destination Screen Functions

If the map screen is used to show destination, it will have map screen capabilities such as Go, Mark, Zoom, Scroll, etc. The address is shown at the top of the screen.

Destination Map Screen

Getting Started on Your Route

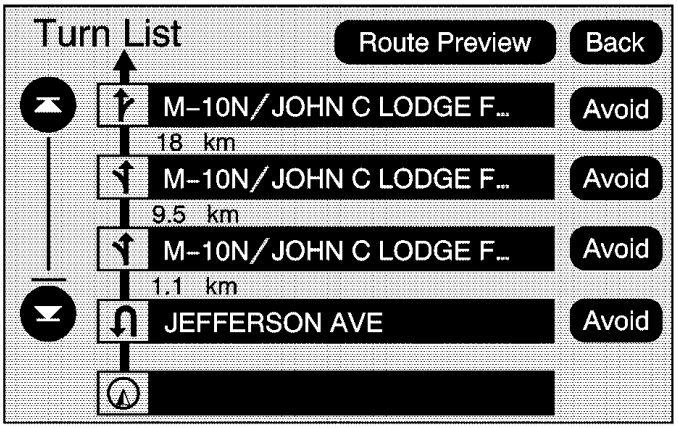
Once a destination has been entered, there are several functions that can be performed. Press the DEST hard key to access the Route screen.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn List

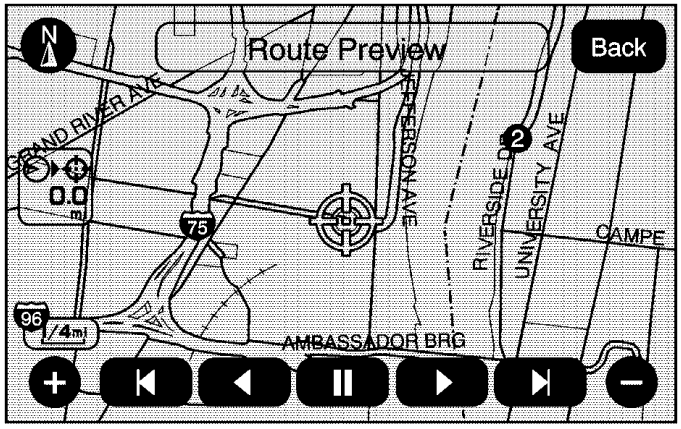
Turn List: Touch to view the list of turn maneuvers for the entire route and to avoid turns on the route.



/ (Scroll Arrows): Touch the up and down arrows to scroll through the list of maneuvers.

Avoid: Touch this screen button, next to the adjacent street name, to avoid the maneuver.

The map screen displays. The route recalculates without this maneuver.



Route Preview: Select to preview the entire route in either direction.

(Reverse Skip): Select to go back to the start point or previous stopover.

/ (Reverse Scroll): Select to scroll to the start point or previous stopover. The (reverse skip) button changes to a fast reverse screen button.

(Pause): Select to pause the route preview, while in reverse or fast forward scroll.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▶ / ▶▶ **(Fast Forward Scroll):** Select to scroll to the next stopover or to the final destination. The ▶| (fast forward skip) button changes to a fast speed fast forward.

▶| **(Fast Forward Skip):** Select to go to the next stopover or to the final destination.

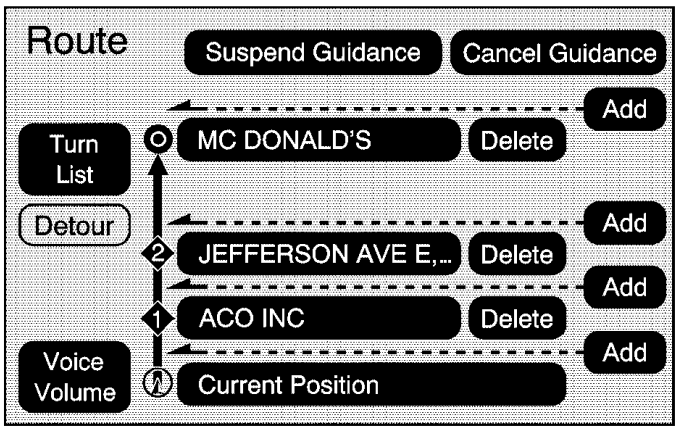
Detour

Detour: Select this screen button from the Route screen, then select to detour 1 mile, 3 miles, or 5 miles (1 km, 3 km, 5 km) around the current route. This can also be selected to detour the whole route if necessary. The detour option is only available while driving on a current planned route.

Voice Volume

Select this screen button from the Route screen to turn voice guidance on or off and to change the volume of voice prompts. See “Nav” under *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for more information.

Add Stopover



Add Stopover: Select this screen button from the Route screen. This feature allows up to three stopovers to be added to the current route between the start point and final destination. Once a stopover has been added, the points can be edited or deleted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To add a stopover:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the Add Stopover screen button. This button only appears if a route has been calculated.
3. Using the desired method of entering a destination, enter the stopover. See “Destination” previously for more information.
4. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
5. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.
6. To add the second and third stopovers, press the DEST hard key, then select the Add screen button, where the next waypoint should appear on the route.
7. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
8. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

To delete a stopover from the current route:

1. Press the DEST hard key.
2. Select the Delete screen button for the desired stopover to delete.
3. The system displays a pop-up confirmation message. Touch Yes to delete the stopover; touch No to cancel this operation.
4. Select the route preference (Fastest, Shortest, or Other). The system calculates and highlights the route.
5. Select the Start Guidance screen button. The route is now ready to be started.

Suspend Guidance

Press this screen button, from the Route screen, to put the current route on hold.

Resume Guidance

Press this screen button, from the Route screen, to resume guidance on the current route.

Cancel Guidance

Press this screen button, from the Route screen, to cancel the current route.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Destinations to the Address Book

There are two ways to add a destination to the address book:

- To add the current vehicle position to the address book, press the Mark screen button from the map screen. The system automatically saves the current vehicle information in the address book. When scrolling on the map the Mark screen button automatically adds the current scrolled position information in the address book.
- Press the Add to Address Book screen button when available on POI information screens, Destination Entry screens, or POI screens. The system automatically saves this information in the address book.

See “Nav” under *Configure Menu on page 4-43* for information on editing address book entries.

Adding or Changing Preset Destinations

This feature allows additions or changes one of five preset destinations. When a destination has been added as a preset destination, it is available to select from the Destination Entry screen. See “Preset Destination” previously for information on how to select a preset destination as a final destination.

To store the current vehicle position as a preset destination:

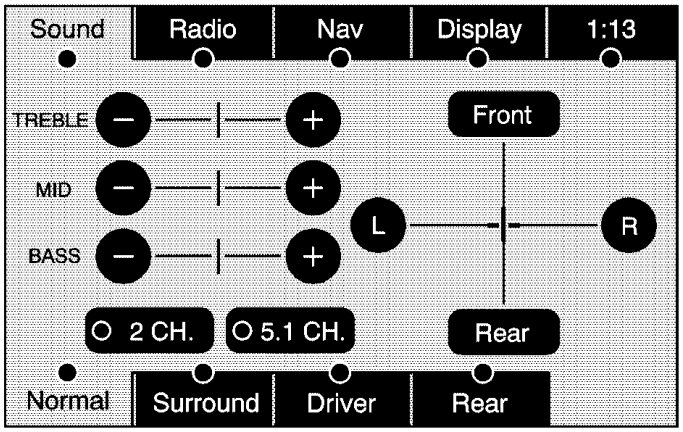
1. Select the Mark screen button from the map screen to add the current vehicle position to the address book. The Address Book screen appears.
2. Select the Name screen button. An alpha-keyboard displays. Enter the name. Press the OK screen button then the Back screen button to return to the address book information screen.
3. Press and hold one of the buttons at the bottom of the screen until the name appears in that preset destination screen button. It is now available to select from the Destination Entry screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To store an address book entry as a preset destination:

1. Select the CONFIG hard key.
2. Select the Nav screen button or press the CONFIG key until Nav is selected or touch the Nav screen button.
3. Select the Edit/View screen button.
4. Select the address book entry to be stored as the preset destination. Select the Name screen button to add a name, if needed.
5. Press and hold one of the buttons at the bottom of the screen until the name appears in that preset destination screen button. It is now available to select from the Destination Entry screen.

Configure Menu



Press the CONFIG (Configure) hard key to adjust several of the system's features and preferences. The last selected CONFIG screen is the screen that displays: Sound, Radio, Nav (navigation), Display, or Time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

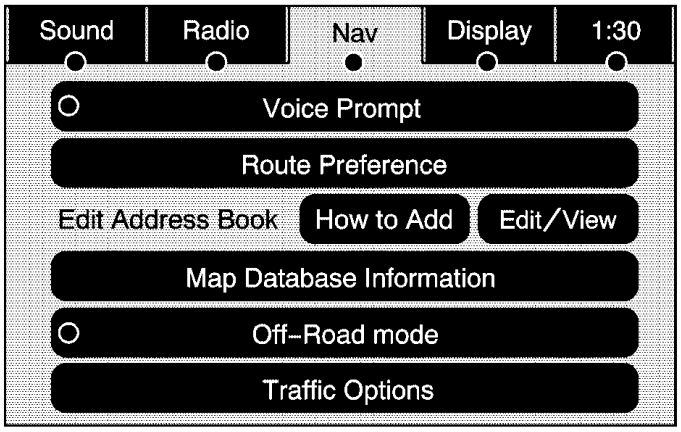
Sound

Press the CONFIG key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Sound is selected or touch the Sound screen button to make speaker and DSP (Digital Signal Processing) adjustments. See “Sound Menu” under, *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

Radio

Press the CONFIG key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Radio is selected or touch the Radio screen button to make changes for radio information displayed, preset pages, XM™ categories, and Bose® AudioPilot®. See “Radio Menu” under, *Navigation Audio System on page 4-62* for more information.

Nav (Navigation)



Press the CONFIG key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Nav is selected or touch the Nav screen button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice Prompt

Voice Prompt: Touch the Voice Prompt screen button to change the volume of the voice prompts or to turn voice guidance on and off.

Volume: Touch the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or to decrease the volume of the voice prompts. The system will respond with the adjusted voice level.

Voice Guidance: Touch the On or Off screen buttons to turn voice instructions on and off while traveling on a planned route.

Route Preference

Touch the Route Preference screen button to change route options when the system calculates a route.

Allow Major Roads: This feature allows the system to use major roads when calculating a planned route.

Allow toll road: This feature allows the system to use toll roads when calculating a planned route.

Allow ferry: This feature allows the system to use ferries when calculating a planned route.

Allow time and seasonal restricted road: This feature allows the system to use time restricted and seasonal roads when calculating a planned route.

Edit Address Book — How to Add

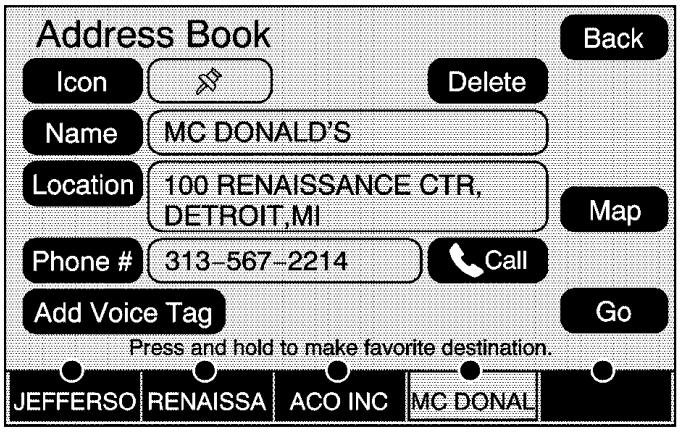
To add an address to the address book, see “Adding Destinations to the Address Book” under *Destination on page 4-25*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Edit Address Book — Edit/View

To edit the name of an address book:

1. Select the CONFIG hard key.
2. Select the NAV screen button.
3. Select the Edit/View Address Book screen button.
4. Select the Address book entry.



5. Touch the Name screen button and use the alpha keyboard to edit or add the name.
6. Touch the OK screen button to save your changes, then touch the Back screen button to return to the Address Book information screen.

To add or change the phone number of an address book entry:

1. Select the CONFIG hard key.
2. Select the NAV screen button.
3. Select the Edit/View Address Book screen button.
4. Select the address book entry to change.
5. Touch the Phone # screen button and use the numeric keyboard to input or change the phone number.
6. Touch the OK screen button to save your changes, then touch the Back screen button to return to the Address Book information screen.

To change the map icon of an address book entry:

1. Select the CONFIG hard key.
2. Select the NAV screen button.
3. Select the Edit/View Address Book screen button.
4. Select the address book entry to change.
5. Select the Icon screen button.
6. Select an icon from the list.

To add a voice tag to an address book entry:

1. Select the CONFIG hard key.
2. Select the NAV screen button.
3. Select the Edit/View Address Book screen button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Select the Add Voice Tag screen button.
5. The system will ask for you to state the name. You will have four seconds to state the name. The system will respond back with the name and prompt you to repeat the name for confirmation.

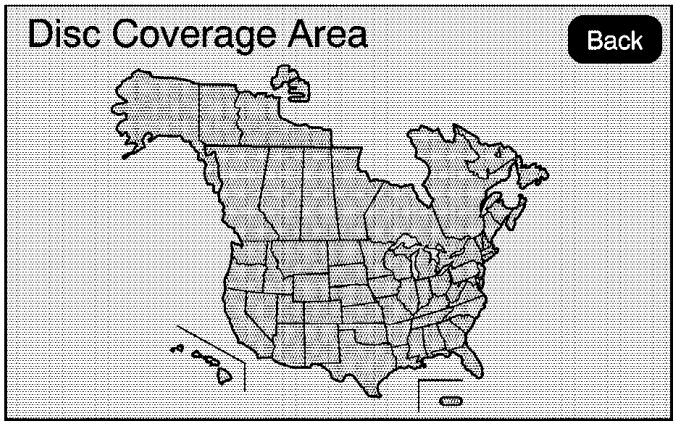
To delete an address book entry:

1. Select the CONFIG hard key.
2. Select the NAV screen button.
3. Select the Edit/View Address Book screen button.
4. Select the address book entry to delete.
5. Press the Delete screen button to delete the address book entry.
6. A confirmation pop-up will display. Select Ok to delete; select Cancel to cancel the operation.

To delete the entire address book:

1. Select the CONFIG hard key.
2. Select the NAV screen button.
3. Select the Edit/View Address Book screen button.
4. A list of all the address book entries will display. Press and hold the Clear All screen button.
5. A confirmation pop-up will display. Select Ok to delete; select Cancel to cancel the operation.

Map Database Information



Touch the Map Database Information screen button to view the coverage areas of the map DVD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Off-Road Mode

To turn the Off-road mode on or off, do the following:

1. Press the CONFIG hard key.
2. Press the Nav screen button.
3. Press the Off-Road mode screen button. The button will be highlighted when the feature is on.

When the off-road mode is turned on, the navigation system will show the path being traveled by the vehicle when not on a marked road. This path will be a simulation since the map database coverage will not have these roads on the DVD. This path will be stored in the navigation system's memory, see "Previous Destination" under *Destination on page 4-25* for more information.

See "Off-Road Driving" in the Index of your vehicle's owner manual for more information about off-road driving.

Traffic Options

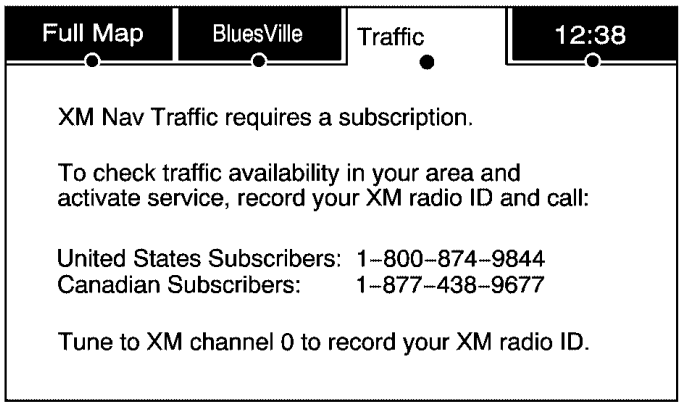
Read the following Options descriptions to understand how the XM NavTraffic™ operates.

XM NavTraffic™ (USA and Canada)

Vehicles with the navigation system have an XM NavTraffic™ receiver. XM NavTraffic™ is a subscription service provided via XM™ Satellite Radio. XM NavTraffic™ provides real-time traffic information fully integrated to the navigation system to display current traffic conditions for a driver's chosen route. XM NavTraffic™ allows drivers to make the most informed, timesaving routing decisions.

If the Traffic touch screen button is pressed or if an attempt is made to turn on the traffic display in the Navigation Setup Menu without a subscription, a Caution screen displays indicating that XM traffic is not activated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


Full Map
BluesVille
Traffic
12:38
XM Nav Traffic requires a subscription.
To check traffic availability in your area and activate service, record your XM radio ID and call:
United States Subscribers: 1–800–874–9844
Canadian Subscribers: 1–877–438–9677
Tune to XM channel 0 to record your XM radio ID.

Three types of traffic information for major roadways are displayed on the navigation system:

- Unscheduled traffic incident data, such as accidents and disabled vehicles
- Scheduled traffic incident data, such as road construction and road closures
- Traffic flow information (rate of speed data)

Traffic information is delivered to the vehicle by the XM™ Radio satellites. XM NavTraffic™ makes it possible for the navigation system to provide continuously updated traffic information personalized for a driver's needs.

XM NavTraffic™ currently broadcasts the traffic information for many markets nationally, and the service may be available in more cities in the future. Visit xmnavtraffic.com for more details on local coverage.

A service fee is required in order to receive the XM NavTraffic™ service.

Turning XM NavTraffic™ On and Off

To turn traffic on or off:

1. Press the CONFIG hard key, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Nav is selected or press the Nav screen button.
2. Touch the Traffic Options button.
3. Touch the Traffic button. This button is highlighted when it is active.

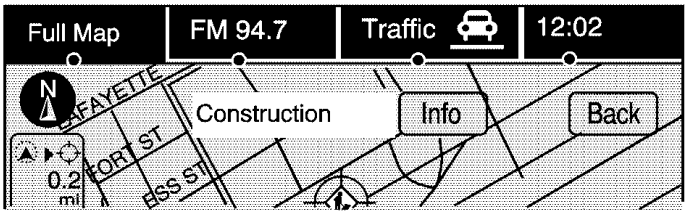
   Selecting Alert for Approaching Traffic Events enables the system to show a pop-up screen that notifies of possible traffic issues ahead.

   When this feature is highlighted, while traveling on a route, accidents located on the route are indicated and can be avoided.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Traffic Icon

The Traffic Icon appears on the Traffic Tab, next to the word Traffic, when traffic is found in the local area.



The Traffic Icon has three different condition displays. These are:

Condition	Traffic Status Icon
• No XM NavTraffic™ subscription. • No Traffic is found in the local area. • The Traffic Feature is turned off.	Traffic

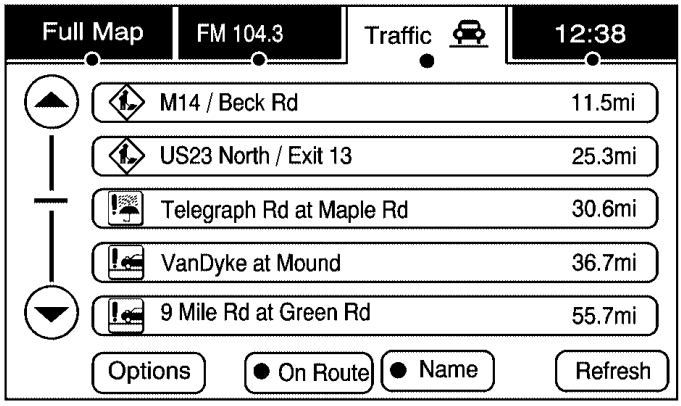
Condition	Traffic Status Icon
Traffic events are in the area, but none are on route.	Traffic
Traffic events are on route.	Traffic

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locations and Information of Traffic Conditions

The system may take some time to sort the information. The list of traffic conditions display in the order of distance from the vehicle, up to approximately 75 mi (125 km). With a route planned, the system defaults to list traffic events on your route. Without a route planned, if travelling on a major interstate, the system lists events immediately ahead on the interstate first. Then all other traffic events follow. Not all traffic conditions may be listed.

To view the traffic condition location and information on the map:



1. Press the NAV key, then press the NAV key repeatedly until Traffic is selected, or touch the Traffic screen button. A list of traffic conditions with distance from the vehicle's current position displays.

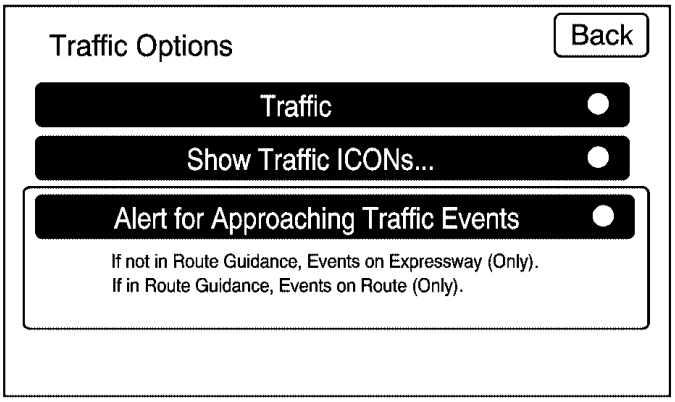
   An arrow may appear before the distance. The arrow indicates the distance is a straight line distance and it shows the direction of the event from the current vehicle's position. If no arrow appears, the distance indicates how far the event is ahead on current Interstate highway or route.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

While the vehicle is moving, the traffic list up or down, scroll arrows are limited to a maximum of four pages. No more than four pages of traffic events may be viewed while the vehicle is moving.

2. Select a traffic condition to get more detailed information of the event.

Options

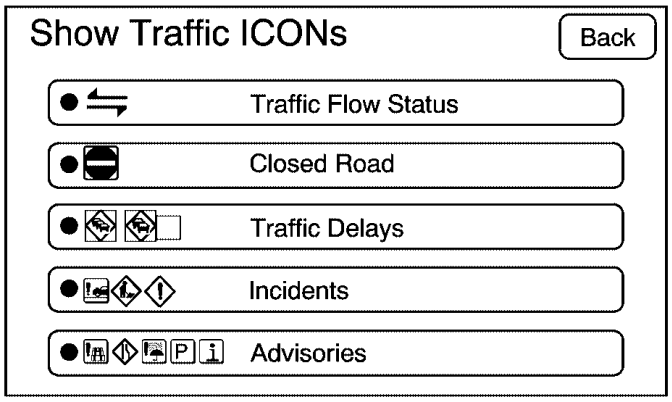

Traffic Options
Back
Traffic
Show Traffic ICONs...
Alert for Approaching Traffic Events
If not in Route Guidance, Events on Expressway (Only).
If in Route Guidance, Events on Route (Only).

Select the Options screen button. A Traffic Options menu displays. Select the desired traffic related option.

Traffic: Select to enable or disable the traffic function.

Show Traffic ICONS: Select to display traffic icons on the map screen. This function allows which traffic information displays.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Traffic Flow Status — This touch screen button is used to enable or disable the green, yellow, red and orange arrows shown beside the roads and used to show the traffic flow or extent of a traffic event.

- Black indicates a closed road segment
- Red indicates significantly impaired traffic flow with average speed of less than 25 mph.
- Yellow indicates slightly impaired traffic flow with average speed between 25 and 45 mph.
- Green indicates normal traffic flow with average speed above 45 mph.
- Orange indicates construction.

Traffic flow data arrows display on the map when scaled up to eight miles.

Closed Road, Traffic Delays, Incidents, and Advisories — These four touch screen buttons are used to select the traffic event ICONS that appear on the map screens.

Alert for Approaching Traffic Events: When On, if an approaching traffic event is within the alert range, one of two traffic alert pop-up screens display:

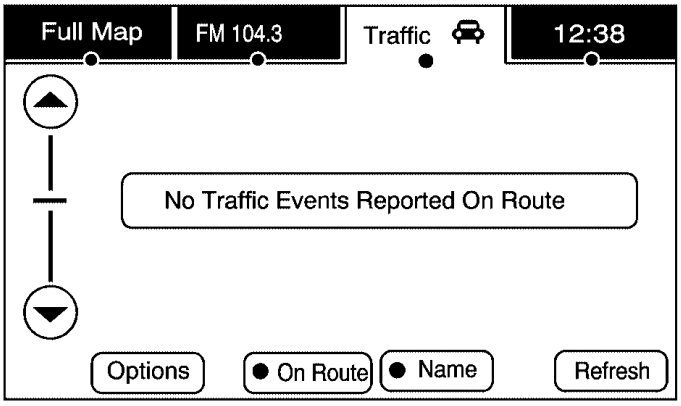
- With no route planned, while on expressways, Approaching Traffic Event without Avoid screen displays.
- With route planned, Traffic Event on Route screen displays.

If the Alert for Approaching Traffic Events is Off, the alert pop-up screen does not display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On-Route

Select the On Route touch screen button to display all events ahead on the current active route. If no traffic events have been reported on route, No Traffic Events Reported On route displays.



Name

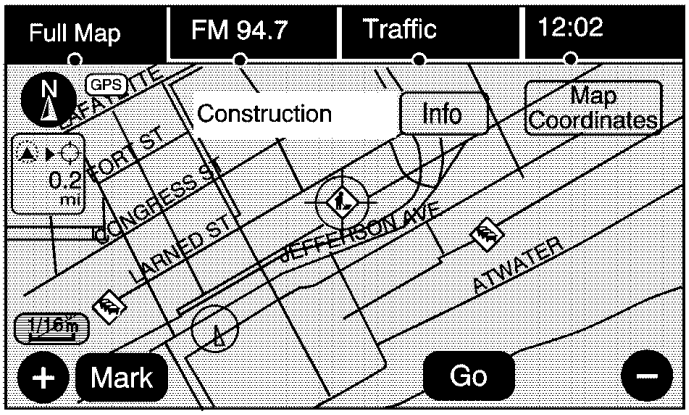
Select the Name touch screen button to display traffic events in the order of distance. The closest event is shown first.

Refresh

Select the Refresh touch screen button to update the screen with all of the latest traffic events, miles, etc.

Traffic events update approximately every two minutes. To update the events immediately, press the Refresh touch screen button.

Scrolling to Traffic Events on the Map



While scrolling the map, traffic condition icons may appear. Traffic events may appear up to 75 mi (125 km) from your current position. To receive information about the traffic condition, place the cross hairs over the traffic condition icon.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After selecting the INFO (information) screen button, the type of traffic condition, the street name, and a description of the traffic condition displays. See “Scrolling the Map” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

To display traffic events in another state or a great distance away, scroll to the desired area, and then stop scrolling. Wait for the traffic to update. It may take up to two minutes before traffic in this new area can be received and displayed.

Traffic Event Display Categories

The following are traffic condition categories and symbols that can appear on the display:

Category 1, Road Closure:

(Road Closed): Road and/or ramps closed.

Category 2, Traffic Delayed:

(Stopped Traffic): Traffic stopped, stop and go traffic, delayed and congested traffic.

Category 3, Incidents:

(Alert): Object in the roadway, disabled vehicle, or dangerous road conditions.

(Accident): Roadway obstructed due to accident.

(Road Works): Delayed traffic due to construction.

Category 4, Advisories:

/ (Road Condition): Delayed or stopped traffic, lane blocked or closed due to a road condition.

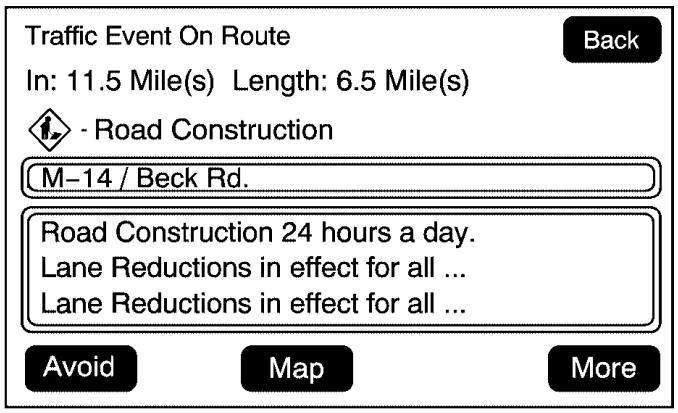
(Weather): Heavy rain, snow, or fog weather condition.

(Parking): Available parking area.

(Information): Special event, general information, or warning.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Detailed Traffic Event Screens



Traffic Event Screen

The detailed Traffic Event screens are used to display additional details of a traffic event condition. This screen may display if:

- Scrolling to an event on the map and then pressing INFO.
- Selecting a traffic event listed on the Traffic Event List screen.

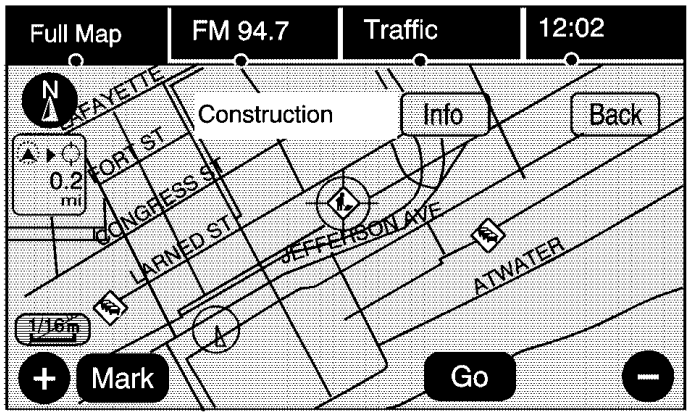
The Traffic Event screen may display when approaching a traffic event.

Back, Map, More, and Avoid

These buttons have common functions across all three Detailed Traffic Event screens.

Back: Press to return to the previous screen.

Map: If available, press to display the related traffic event on the map.



Map Traffic Event Icon with Back Screen

More: Press to display more of the traffic event description, if the whole event does not fit in the given display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Avoid: This button is used to avoid the location of an event on the route. If selected, a new route is calculated and the related traffic event is avoided. After the new route has been calculated, the navigation system goes to the full map screen and shows the new route.

The Avoid button is only available if the event is on the route ahead.

Traffic Voice Prompts

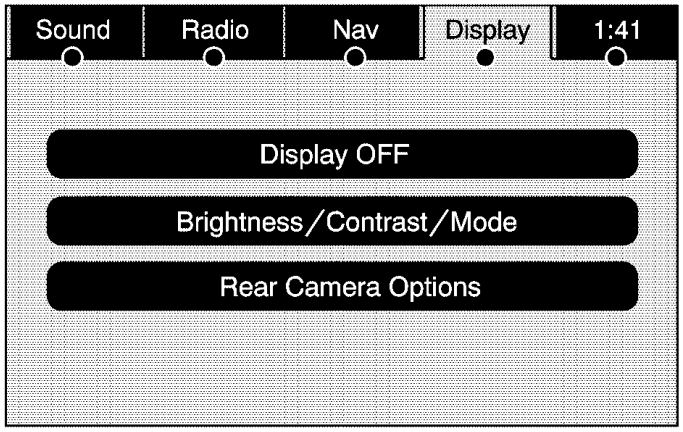
The traffic voice prompts are part of the current navigation voice prompts. If the navigation voice prompts are turned off, all traffic prompts are also turned off.

If the voice prompts are on, whenever an Alert for Approaching Traffic is displayed, the system gives the related voice prompt. The content of the voice prompt depends on actual traffic event data.

The RPT (Repeat) hard key is for navigation traffic maneuvers only. It is not used to repeat traffic prompts. During a traffic voice prompt, if RPT is pressed, the current prompt playback cancels.

Traffic prompts are disabled during OnStar® or Voice Recognition activity.

Display



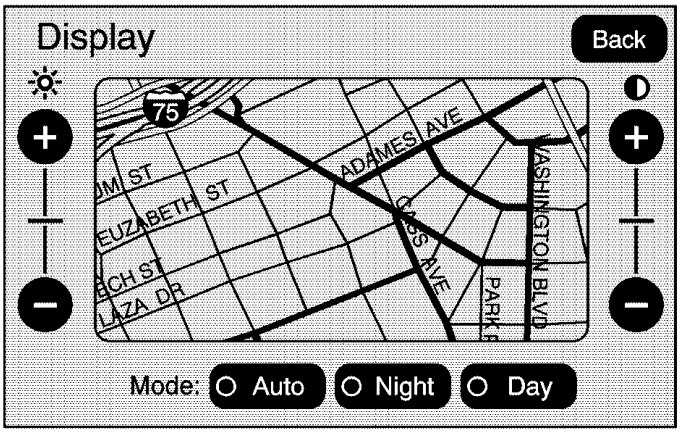
Press the CONFIG key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Display is selected or touch the Display screen button.

Display Off

Touch this screen button to turn the display off. Press any hard key to view the display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brightness/Contrast/Mode



Touch this screen button to change the brightness, contrast, and mode of the display.

☼ **(Brightness):** Touch the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or decrease the brightness of the screen.

◑ **(Contrast):** Touch the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or decrease the contrast of the screen.

Auto (Automatic): Touch this screen button for the system to automatically adjust the screen background depending on exterior lighting conditions.

Night: Touch this screen button and the system makes the map background darker.

Day: Touch this screen button and the system makes the map background brighter.

Setting the Clock

The navigation system time and the analog clock operate independently. Changing the time through the navigation system does not change the time on the analog clock. See *Analog Clock on page 3-26* to change the analog clock time.

Press the CONFIG key to enter the configure menu options, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until the time is selected or touch the time screen button.

Hours: Press the – (minus) or + (plus) signs to decrease or increase the hours.

Minutes: Press the – (minus) or + (plus) signs to decrease or increase the minutes.

12/24 Format: Select the 12 screen button for standard time; select the 24 screen button for military time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The navigation system determines the position of the vehicle by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interferences such as the satellite condition, road configuration, the condition of the vehicle and/or other circumstances can interfere with the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by the GPS Satellites of the United States Department of Defense. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. Refer to *Symbols on page 4-19*.

This system may not be available or interferences may occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Objects are located on the front dash of the vehicle.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.
- After-market glass tinting has been applied to the vehicle's windshield.

Notice: **Do not apply after-market glass tinting to the vehicle's windows. Glass tinting interferes with the system's ability to receive GPS signals and causes the system to malfunction. The window might have to be replaced to correct the problem. This would not be covered by the warranty.**

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *If the System Needs Service on page 4-61* and *Problems with Route Guidance on page 4-61*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map may be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- Road system has changed.
- Vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as in sand, gravel, and/or snow.
- Vehicle is traveling on winding roads.
- Vehicle is on a long straight road.
- Vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- Surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- Vehicle has just been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- Current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- Vehicle is traveling at high speed.
- Vehicle changes directions more than once, or when the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- Vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot or a garage.
- GPS signal is not received.
- Roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Vehicle is being driven with tire chains.
- Tires are replaced.
- Tire pressure for the tires is incorrect.
- Tires are worn.
- First time the map DVD is inserted.
- Battery is disconnected for several days.
- Vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

See your dealer/retailer if other problems occur.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance may occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- You have not turned onto the road indicated.
- Route guidance may not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route may not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places may be announced occasionally.
- It may take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting may display a route returning to the set stopover if you are heading for a destination without passing through a set stopover.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes may not be searched.
- The route to the destination may not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed on the map DVD. See *Ordering Map DVDs on page 4-61*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, see your dealer/retailer.

If the System Needs Service

If your system needs service and you have followed the steps listed here and still are experiencing problems, see your dealer/retailer for assistance.

Ordering Map DVDs

The map DVD in your vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when your vehicle was produced. The map DVD is updated periodically, provided that the map information has changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you have any questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, contact the GM Nav Disc Center toll-free phone number, 1-877-NAV-DISC (1-877-628-3472) or go to the center's website, gmnavdisc.com. If you need any updates or a replacement disc, because the current disc is lost, damaged, or needs to be updated, call the GM Nav Disc Center or order a new disc online. To order a disc, have your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) available. This helps the center make sure you receive the correct and most up-to-date DVD map disc for your vehicle. See "Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)" in the Index of your vehicle's owner manual for more information.

After receiving the updated disc, replace the old disc in the navigation system. See "Installing the DVD Map Disc" and "Ejecting the DVD Map Disc" under *Maps on page 4-15*. Dispose of the old disc to avoid confusion about which disc is the most current.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage area depends upon the map detail available. Some areas have greater map detail than others. The navigation system works only as well as the information provided on the map disc. See *Ordering Map DVDs on page 4-61* on how to obtain updated map information.

Navigation Audio System

Notice: **Before adding any sound equipment to the vehicle, such as an audio system, CD player, CB radio, mobile telephone, or two-way radio, make sure that it can be added by checking with your dealer/retailer. Also, check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units. If sound equipment can be added, it is very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment can interfere with the operation of the vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and even damage them. The vehicle's systems can interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added.**

Notice: **The chime signals related to safety belts, parking brake, and other functions of the vehicle operate through the navigation system. If that equipment is replaced or additional equipment is added to the vehicle, the chimes may not work. Make sure that replacement or additional equipment is compatible with the vehicle before installing it. See "Accessories and Modifications" in the Index of the vehicle's owner manual.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the Radio

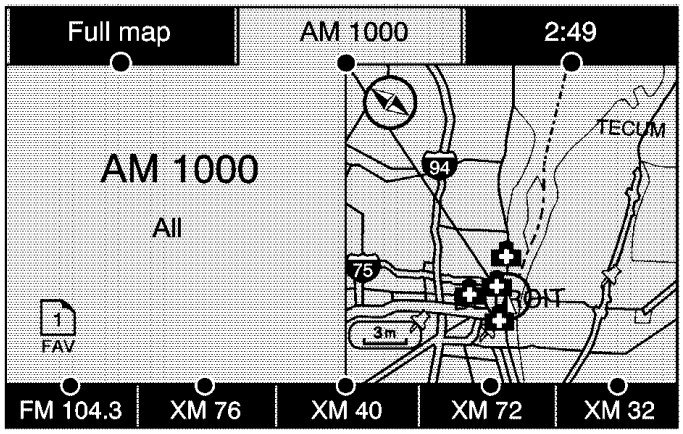
⏻ / **(Power/Volume):** Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to increase or to decrease the volume.

Press and hold for more than two seconds to turn off the navigation system, the Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) video screen, and Rear Seat Audio (RSA). If the vehicle has not been turned off, press this knob to turn RSE and RSA back on and to continue playback of the last active source.

(Tuning Knob): Turn to go to the next or previous frequency or disc track or chapter. See *CD Player on page 4-71* or *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information.

AUDIO: Press to display the audio screen. Press to switch between AM, FM, or XM, if equipped, DISC, or AUX (Auxiliary), or touch the screen button. See *CD Player on page 4-71*, *DVD Player on page 4-78*, and *Auxiliary Devices on page 4-85* for more information.

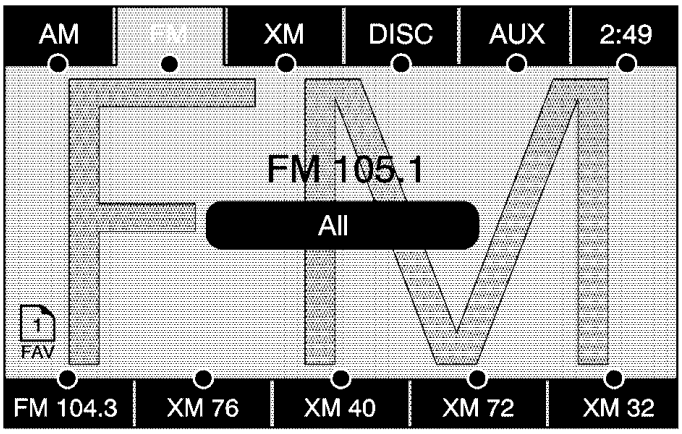
Finding a Station



AM source shown, other sources similar

If viewing a map screen, touch the source screen (AM, FM, XM, CD, etc.) button. The display splits between the audio screen and the map screen. All station-changing functions can be performed from this screen.

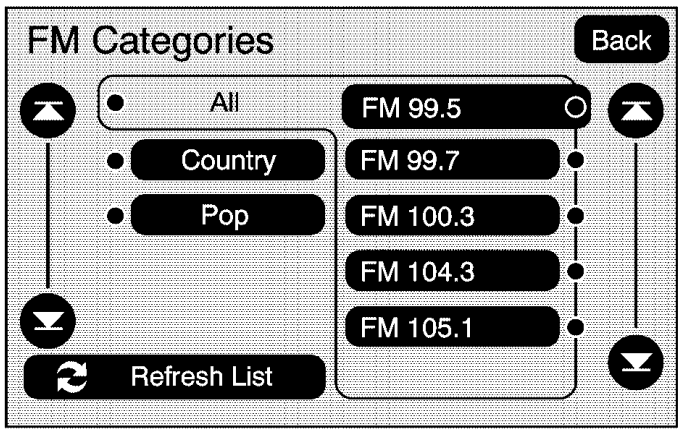
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



FM source shown, other sources similar

If you do not want to view a split screen or you are not on a map screen, press the AUDIO hard key.

AM/FM/XM: Touch the source (AM, FM, or XM, if equipped) screen button or press the AUDIO key repeatedly until the desired source is highlighted.



FM source shown, other sources similar

Category: Touch the screen button, located in the middle of the screen, to receive a list of all of the selected band stations in the area. Use the up and down arrows to scroll the frequencies. Touch the desired frequency.

XM lists also contain a category to select and the stations or channels that have broadcasts that relate to that category. For XM, touch the left and right arrow screen buttons to change categories.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The station information appears on the display. See “Radio Menu” later in this section to add and remove XM categories from the category list. Removed categories do not appear on the category list screen or when the right and left arrow category screen buttons are used.

FM lists may also contain a category to select if stations in the broadcast area support Radio Data Systems (RDS).

Refresh List: Touch to refresh the list of AM or FM stations.

When viewing a map screen, the name of the station or channel displays.

(Seek): To seek stations, press the up or down arrows to go to the next or previous station.

To scan stations, press and hold either arrow for more than two seconds. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. To stop scanning, press either arrow again.

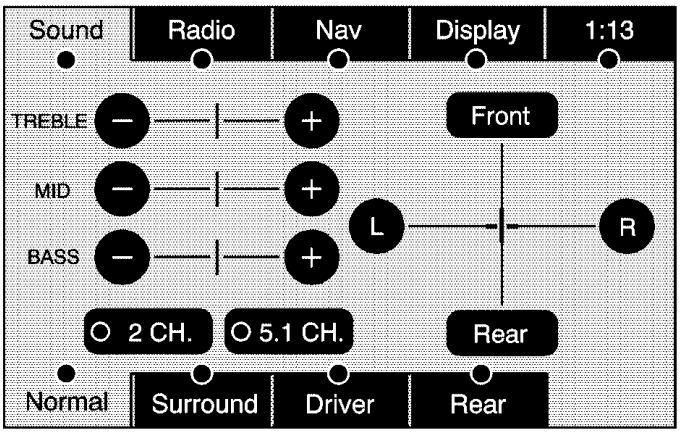
Storing Radio Station Presets

This feature stores a mix of up to 30 AM, FM, and XM (if equipped) preset stations. To store presets:

1. Press ⏻ to turn the system on.
2. If viewing a map screen, touch the source screen button, press the AUDIO key, or press the FAV (favorite) key.
3. Select the band.
4. Seek, scan, or tune to the desired station, to select the station.
5. Press and hold one of the preset screen buttons for more than two seconds or until a beep is heard.
6. Repeat the steps for each preset.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sound Menu



♪ **(Sound):** Press this key or press the CONFIG key to access the Sound menu to adjust the treble, midrange, bass, fade, balance, and Digital Signal Processing (DSP). The system automatically stores audio adjustment settings as changes are made for each audio source including AM, FM, XM (if equipped), CD, and AUX.

Setting the Tone

TREBLE: Touch the plus (+) or minus (–) sign to increase or decrease the treble. If a station is weak or has static, decrease the treble.

MID (Midrange): Touch the plus (+) or minus (–) sign to increase or decrease the midrange.

BASS: Touch the plus (+) or minus (–) sign to increase or decrease the bass.

Adjusting the Speakers

L/R (Left/Right) (Balance): To adjust the balance between the left and the right speakers, touch and hold the L or R screen buttons.

Front/Rear (Fade): To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, touch and hold the Front or Rear screen buttons.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Digital Signal Processing (DSP)

The system has Digital Signal Processing (DSP). DSP provides a choice of four different listening experiences. DSP can be used while listening to the audio system. Not all DSP modes are available for all source types. The type of DSP selected is displayed on the status line.

Select from the following DSP settings:

Normal: Adjusts the audio for normal mode. This provides the best sound quality for all seating positions.

Surround (Centerpoint®): Enables Bose Centerpoint signal processing that produces a surround sound listening experience from a CD or XM stereo digital audio source. Centerpoint delivers five independent audio channels from conventional two channel stereo recordings (not available for AM or FM).

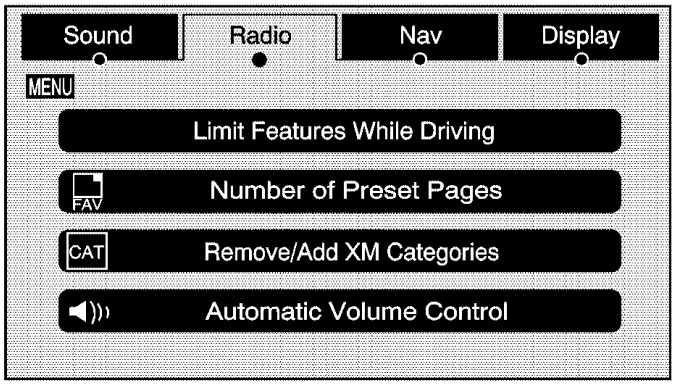
Driver: Adjusts the audio to give the driver the best possible sound quality.

Rear: Adjusts the audio to give the rear seat occupants the best possible sound quality.

2 CH. (Channel): Enhances surround sound.

5.1 CH. (Channel): Gives a full affect of surround sound listening. This button is only available when playing DVD video and DVD audio discs that support 5.1 audio and the RSA is off.

Radio Menu



Press the CONFIG key to enter the configure menu screen, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Radio is selected or touch the Radio screen button to make changes for radio information displayed or to limit features while driving, number of preset pages, XM categories, and Bose® AudioPilot®.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Limit Features While Driving

Touch the Limit Features While Driving screen button to turn on and off the ability to limit functions while driving. When this screen button is highlighted, the following functions will be limited while driving:

- Music Navigator Scrolling
- Radio Category Scrolling
- Navigation Menu Scrolling and some functions

Number of Preset Pages

Touch the Number of Preset Pages screen button to change the number of preset pages, 1 through 6. Each preset page can contain five preset stations. Touch the desired numbered screen button.

Bose® AudioPilot®

AudioPilot: The Bose® AudioPilot® noise compensation technology.

To use AudioPilot®:

1. Press the CONFIG key to enter the menu screen, then press the CONFIG key repeatedly until Radio is selected or touch the Radio screen button
2. Press the Automatic Volume Control screen button to access the AudioPilot menu.
3. Press the ON screen button.

To turn it off, touch the OFF screen button. When on, AudioPilot® continuously adjusts the audio system equalization, to compensate for background noise, so that the music sound is consistent at the set volume level.

This feature is most effective at lower volume settings where background noise can affect how well the music being played is heard through the vehicle's audio system. At higher volume settings, where the music is much louder than the background noise, there may be little or no adjustments by AudioPilot®. For more information on AudioPilot®, visit bose.com/audiopilot.

Remove/Add XM Categories

Touch the Remove/Add XM Categories screen button to remove or add XM categories when selecting XM categories from the category list screen. The list of XM categories appear on the screen. Use the up and down arrow screen buttons to scroll through the list. The categories to remove are highlighted and the categories to add are dark in color. Touch the category to be added or removed. Touch the Restore All Categories screen button to add all categories that have been removed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can do the following:

- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

The RDS system is always on. When information is broadcast from the FM station that is playing, the station name or call letters displays on the audio screen.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM Satellite Radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast-to-coast, and in digital-quality sound. During your trial or when you subscribe, you will get unlimited access to XM Radio Online while not in the vehicle. A service fee is required to receive the XM service. For more information, contact XM at xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

When XM™ is active, the channel name and number, song title, and artist displays on the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

XM™ Radio Messages

XL (Explicit Language Channels): XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language. These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).

XM Updating: The encryption code in the receiver is being updated and no action is required.

No XM signal: The vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM™ signal. When the vehicle is moved into an open area, the signal should return.

Loading XM: The audio system is processing audio and text data received. No action is needed.

Channel Off Air: This channel is not currently in service.

Channel Unauth: This channel is blocked or cannot be received with your XM Subscription package.

Channel Unavail: This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned.

No Artist Info: No artist information is available. The system is working properly.

No Title Info: No song title information is available. The system is working properly.

No CAT Info: No category information is available. The system is working properly.

CAT Not Found: There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.

No Information: No text or informational messages are available. The system is working properly.

XM Theftlocked: The XM™ receiver may have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM™ receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message is received after having your vehicle serviced, check with your dealer/retailer.

XM Radio ID: If tuned to channel 0, this message will alternate with the XM™ Radio eight digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.

Unknown: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there may be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Check XM Receiver: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver may have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD Player

The player can be used for CD, MP3, DVD audio, and as a DVD video player. See *DVD Player on page 4-78* for more information about DVD audio and video.

Six-Disc CD Player

While playing a CD, the navigation system is available.

When you insert a CD, the CD tab displays. If a DSP setting is selected for the CD, it activates each time you play a CD.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

If viewing a map screen, touch the CD screen button. The display will split between the audio screen and the map screen. If you do not want to view a split screen or you are not on a map screen, press the AUDIO key then press the AUDIO key repeatedly until CD is selected or touch the CD screen button.

(Load): To load one disc, do the following:

1. Press the load hard key and follow the screen message displayed.
2. When the system displays “Insert Disc (number)”, insert the disc partway into the slot, label side up. The system will pull it into the first available slot and start playing. The system will display the type of disc inserted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To load multiple discs, do the following:

1. Press and hold the load hard key and follow the screen message displayed.
2. When the system displays “Insert Disc (number)”, insert the disc partway into the slot, label side up. The system will pull it in.
3. Once a disc is loaded, the system will display “Insert Disc (number)” again. Load the next disc. Repeat this procedure for each disc. The player takes up to six discs, do not try to load more than six. The system does not display the disc types when loading all, until the discs have been read by the system.

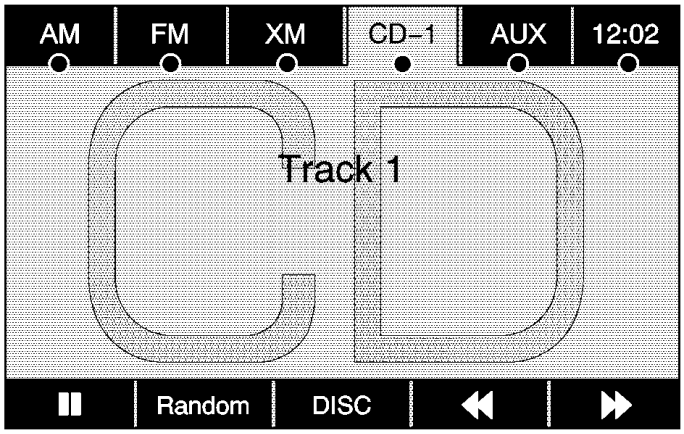
⏏ **(Eject):** To eject a disc, do the following:

1. Press the eject hard key.
2. The system displays “Ejecting Disc”.

   Press the DISC screen button to display the Disc Changer screen. Select the disc to eject. If a selection is not made, the system will eject the disc from the current slot. If the disc is not removed from the slot, the system pulls it back in after 10 seconds and starts playing it.

To eject all discs, press and hold the eject hard key. The system displays the disc number being ejected.

Playing an Audio CD



⏸ / ▶ **(Pause/Play):** Touch this button to pause the CD. This button will then change to the play button. Touch the play button to play the CD.

Random: Touch this button to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. Touch Random again to turn off random play.

DISC: Touch this screen button to view the list of loaded disc(s). Select the disc to play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Rewind): Touch and hold this button to rewind quickly through a track selection. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. Release this button to stop rewinding. The display will show the elapsed time of the track.

(Forward): Touch and hold this button to fast forward quickly through a track selection. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. Release this button to stop fast forwarding. The display will show the elapsed time of the track.

(Seek): To seek tracks, press the up arrow to go to the next track. Press the down arrow to go to the start of the current track, if more than eight seconds have played. If either arrow is pressed more than once, the player continues moving backward or forward through the CD. The sound mutes while seeking.

(Tuning Knob): Turn this knob counterclockwise one notch to go to the start of the current track, turn it again to go to the previous track. Turn this knob clockwise to go to the next track.

When playing an audio CD the rear seat operator can power on the RSE video screen and use the remote control to navigate through the tracks on the CD.

Using an MP3 CD

MP3 Format

There are guidelines that must be met, when creating an MP3 disc. If the guidelines are not met when recording a CD-R(W), the CD may not play. The guidelines are:

- Sampling rate: 16 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 24 kHz, 32 kHz, and 44.1 kHz.
- Bit rates supported: 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, and 320 kbps.
- ID3 tag information is displayed by the radio if it is available. The radio supports ID3 tag information v1.0, v1.1, or v2.0. The radio will display a filename, song name, artist name, album name, and directory name.
- Maximum 32 characters, including spaces, in a file or folder name.
- Maximum number of folders is 100 with a maximum hierarchy of eight folders.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organize songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- It is recommended that there is a maximum of 192 files on a disc.
- The files can be recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW with a maximum capacity of 700MB.
- DVD with MP3 are not playable on this system.

Root Directory

The root directory will be treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory will be displayed as No Folder or ALL.

Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player will advance to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files and the empty folder will not be displayed or numbered.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files will be located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions will have no function on a CD that was recorded without folders or playlists. When displaying the name of the folder the radio will display No Folder.

Order of Play

Play will begin from the first track under the root directory. When all tracks from the root directory have been played, play will continue from files according to their numerical listing. After playing the last track from the last folder, play will begin again at the first track of the first folder or root directory.

When play enters a new folder, the display will not automatically show the new folder name. The new track name will appear on the display.

File System and Naming

The song name that will display will be the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio will display the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages will be shortened. The display will not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename will not display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an MP3

While playing a CD, the navigation system is available.

When you insert a CD, the CD tab will display. If you select a DSP setting for the CD, it will be activated each time you play a CD.

If you turn off the ignition or radio with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When you turn on the ignition or radio, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

As each new track starts to play, the track number will appear on the display.

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

If viewing a map screen, touch the CD screen button. The display will split between the audio screen and the map screen. If you do not want to view a split screen or you are not on a map screen, press the AUDIO key then press the AUDIO key repeatedly until CD is selected or touch the CD screen button.

(Load): To load one disc, do the following:

1. Press the load hard key and follow the screen message displayed.
2. When the system displays “Insert Disc (number)”, insert the disc partway into the slot, label side up. The system will pull it into the first available slot and start playing. The system will display the type of disc inserted.

To load multiple discs, do the following:

1. Press and hold the load hard key and follow the screen message displayed.
2. When the system displays “Insert Disc (number)”, insert the disc partway into the slot, label side up. The system will pull it in.
3. Once a disc is loaded, the system will display “Insert Disc (number)” again. Load the next disc. Repeat this procedure for each disc. The player takes up to six discs, do not try to load more than six. The system will not display the disc types when loading all, until the discs have been read by the system.

   Once all discs have been inserted, the system will start playing the last loaded disc.

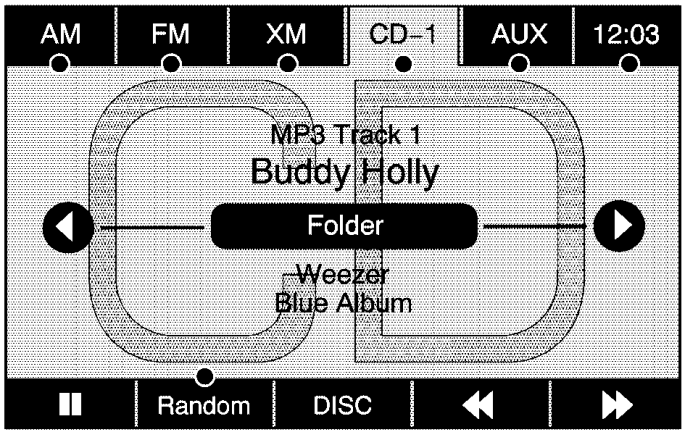
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⏏ **(Eject):** To eject a disc, do the following:

1. Press the eject hard key.
2. The system will display “Ejecting Disc”.

   Press the DISC screen button to display the Disc Changer screen. Select the disc to eject. If a selection is not made, the system will eject the disc from the current slot. If the disc is not removed from the slot, the system will pull it back in after 10 seconds and start playing it.

To eject all discs at once, press and hold the eject hard key. The system will display the disc number being ejected.



⏸ / ▶ **(Pause/Play):** Touch this button to pause the CD. This button will then change to the play button. Touch the play button to play the CD.

Random: Touch this button to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. Touch Random again to turn off random play.

DISC: Touch this screen button to view the list of loaded disc(s). Select the disc to play.

⏪ **(Rewind):** Touch and hold this button to rewind quickly through a track selection. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. Release this button to stop rewinding. The display will show the elapsed time of the track.

⏩ **(Forward):** Touch and hold this button to fast forward quickly through a track selection. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. Release this button to stop fast forwarding. The display will show the elapsed time of the track.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

◀▶ **(Folder/Artist/Album):** Select the left or right arrow to go to the previous or next folder, artist, or album on the disc.

Press the middle screen button, with the folder, artist, or album name, to sort the MP3 by folder, artist, or album. It may take a few minutes for the system to sort the MP3.

⋀⋈ ⋊ ⋁ **(Seek):** To seek tracks, press the up arrow to go to the next track. Press the down arrow to go to the start of the current track, if more than eight seconds have played. If either arrow is pressed more than once, the player will continue moving backward or forward through the CD. The sound will mute while seeking.

▷▷□ **(Tuning Knob):** Turn this knob counterclockwise one notch to go to the start of the current track, turn it again to go to the previous track. Turn this knob clockwise to go to the next track.

When playing an MP3 the rear seat operator can power on the RSE video screen and use the remote control to navigate through the MP3.

CD Messages

If Disc Read Error appears on the display and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- If a disc was inserted with an invalid or unknown format.
- If the map DVD disc was installed into the CD slot. See “Installing the Map DVD” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.
- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DVD Player

The player can be used for DVD audio and DVD video.

DVD video will not display on the navigation screen unless the vehicle is in PARK (P). It will operate on the rear seat entertainment screens while the vehicle is moving. The Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) video screen will start play of the DVD when a DVD video has been inserted into the navigation system. The DVD player can be controlled by the buttons on the navigation system, the Rear Seat Audio (RSA) system, and the remote control. The DVD player can also be used for the rear seat passengers with the radio off. The rear seat passengers can power on the video screen and use the remote control to navigate the disc. See “Rear Seat Entertainment System” in the Index of your vehicle’s owner manual for more information.

The DVD player is only compatible with DVDs of the appropriate region code that is printed on the jacket of most DVDs.

The DVD slot is compatible with most audio CDs, CD-R, CD-RW, DVD-Video, DVD-Audio, DVD-R/RW, DVD+R/RW media along with MP3 and WMA formats.

If an error appears on the display, see “DVD Messages” later in this section.

(Load): To load one disc, do the following:

1. Press the load hard key and follow the screen message displayed.
2. When the system displays “Insert Disc (number)”, insert the disc partway into the slot, label side up. The system will pull it into the first available slot and start playing. The system will display the type of disc inserted.

To load multiple discs, do the following:

1. Press and hold the load hard key and follow the screen message displayed.
2. When the system displays “Insert Disc (number)”, insert the disc partway into the slot, label side up. The system will pull it in.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Once a disc is loaded, the system will display “Insert Disc (number)” again. Load the next disc. Repeat this procedure for each disc. The player takes up to six discs, do not try to load more than six. The system will not display the disc types when loading all, until the discs have been read by the system.

   Once all discs have been inserted, the system will start playing the last loaded disc.

⏏ **(Eject):** To eject a disc, do the following:

1. Press the eject hard key.
2. The system will display “Ejecting Disc”.

   Press the DISC screen button to display the Disc Changer screen. Select the disc to eject. If a selection is not made, the system will eject the disc from the current slot. If the disc is not removed from the slot, the system will pull it back in after 10 seconds and start playing it.

To eject all discs at once, press and hold the eject hard key. The system will display the disc number being ejected.

Playing a DVD

There are three ways to play a DVD:

- Once a DVD is inserted, the system will automatically start play of the DVD.
- If you are on a map screen, touch the DVD screen button.
- Press the AUDIO hard key, then touch the DVD screen button.

When a DVD is loaded, the rear seat passengers can power on the RSE video screen and use the remote control to navigate through the DVD.

⏻ **/** ◿ **(Power/Volume):** Press this knob to turn the system on and off. Turn the knob to increase or decrease the volume of the audio system.

Press and hold this knob for more than two seconds to turn off the navigation system, RSE video screen, and RSA. If the vehicle has not been tuned off, the RSE and the RSA can be turned back on by pressing this knob and will continue play of the last active source.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DVD Menu Options

Once a DVD starts to play, the menu options and cursor screen buttons will automatically appear. To display the menu Options screen button while a DVD is playing, touch anywhere on the screen.

Options: Select this screen button to view the menu option screen buttons. Menu options are available when they are highlighted. Some menu options are only available when the DVD is not playing.

Cursor: Touch this button to access the cursor menu. The arrows and other cursor options allow you to navigate the DVD menu options. The cursor menu options are only available if a DVD has a menu. Use the cursor menu to start a DVD video from the disc main menu.

◀, ▲, ▶, ▼ **(Arrow Buttons):** Use these arrow buttons to move around the DVD menu.

Enter: Touch this button to select the highlighted option.

Return: Touch this button to go back to the previous DVD menu.

Back: Touch this button to go back to the main DVD display screen.

Move: Touch this button to move the cursor buttons back and forth from the bottom-right corner to the top-left corner of the screen.

❚❚ / ▶ **(Pause/Play):** Touch this button to pause the DVD. This button will then change to the play button. Touch the play button to play the DVD. Touch this button in a DVD disc main menu to start the movie.

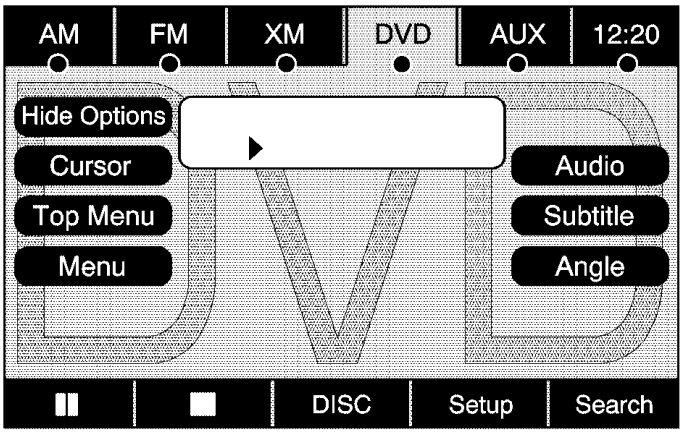
■ **(Stop):** Touch this button to stop play of the DVD. Press the play button to continue playing the DVD from where the DVD was stopped. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

DISC: Touch this screen button to view the list of loaded disc(s). Select the disc to play.

◀◀ **(Rewind):** Touch and release this button to rewind through the scene, chapters, and titles. Touch this button again to increase the rewinding speed. Touch the play button to stop rewinding. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

▶▶ **(Forward):** Touch and release this button to advance rapidly through the scene, chapters, and titles. Touch this button again to increase the fast forwarding speed. Touch the play button to stop fast forwarding. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Hide Options: Press this screen button to remove all menu options from the display, except Options and Cursor.

Top Menu: Touch this button to display the first menu of the DVD. This is not available on all DVDs.

Menu: Touch this button to display the DVD menu of the current area of the DVD that is playing. This button is not available for DVD audio.

Audio: Press this button to display the audio options. Select the audio options that best improve sound quality. This is not available on all DVDs or when the DVD is stopped. This button is not available for DVD audio.

Subtitle: Touch this button to playback the video with subtitles. This is not available on all DVDs or when the DVD is stopped. This button is not available for DVD audio.

Angle: Touch this button to adjust the viewing angle of the DVD. Repeatedly press this button to toggle through the angles. This is not available on all DVDs or when the DVD is stopped. This button is not available for DVD audio.

◀ **(Previous Scene):** Press this button to go to the previous scene. This button does not work when the DVD is stopped. This button is not available for DVD video.

▶ **(Next Scene):** Press this button to go to the next scene. This button does not work when the DVD is stopped. This button is not available for DVD video.

Search: Touch this button to display the search screen. Select Title or Chapter Search for DVD video and Group or Track for DVD audio. The keyboard allows you to type in the title/chapter/group/track number that you would like to watch or listen to. This button does not work when the DVD is stopped.

Setup: Touch this button to display the DVD Setup screen. This button is only available when the DVD is not playing. The DVD Setup screen allows you to change the brightness, contrast, and mode, change the viewing on the monitor and to change the initial settings; language, parental level, and aspect.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

☼ **(Brightness):** Touch the up or down screen arrows to increase or decrease the brightness of the navigation screen.

◑ **(Contrast):** Touch the up or down screen arrows to increase or decrease the contrast of the navigation screen.

Auto (Automatic): Touch this screen button for the system to automatically adjust the navigation screen background depending on exterior lighting conditions.

Night: Touch this screen button and the system will make the navigation screen background brighten.

Day: Touch this screen button and the system will make the navigation screen background darken.

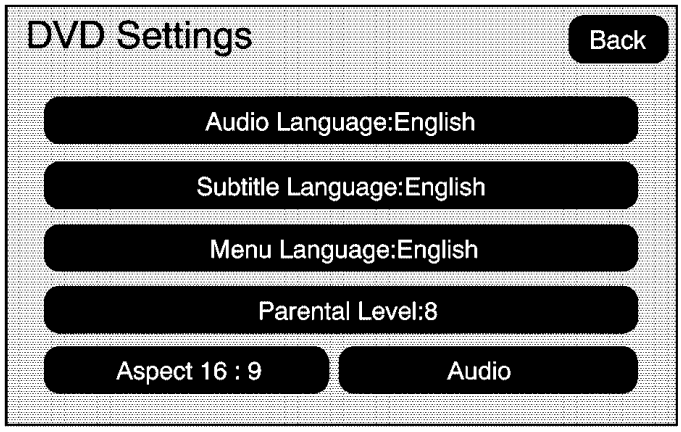
Monitor: From the DVD Setup screen, touch this button to adjust the viewing angle of the DVD on the navigation screen. This is not available on all DVDs. This button is not available for DVD audio

Touch the ⇹ button to close the screen in from the left and right sides.

Touch the ⟷ button to fill the screen on the left and right sides.

Touch the ↕ button to fill the screen on the top and bottom.

Settings: From the DVD Setup screen, touch this button to change the default audio, subtitle, and menu languages, parental level, audio, and to view the aspect of the DVD. These settings are not available on all DVDs. This button is not available for DVD audio.



Audio Language: Touch English, Francais, Espanol, Italiano, or Deutsch to change the default language that the DVD player uses for each disc. The audio language must be available on the disc. The audio language may vary for each DVD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Subtitle Language: Touch English, Francais, Espanol, Italiano, or Deutsch to change the default language of the subtitles that the DVD player uses for each disc. The subtitle language must be available on the disc. The subtitle language may vary for each DVD.

Menu Language: Touch English, Francais, Espanol, Italiano, or Deutsch to change the default language of the DVD video menus. The menu language must be available on the disc. The menu language may vary for each DVD.

Parental Level: Touch this button to change the rating level to only allow the play of DVDs with a certain rating. The rating selection is 1 through 8, with 1 Kids Safe being a G rating. If the 1 is selected, any DVD with a rating above G will not be able to be viewed without entering a password.

When the parental level is first entered a keyboard will appear on the display and a four-digit password will need to be created. Type in a password that you will be able to remember. Once the password is created, you can then select a rating level.

If you would like to change the rating level, press the Parental Level button, then press the Password button. Type in the password and then change the rating level.

If the password has been forgotten, contact your dealer/retailer.

This may not be available on all DVDs.

Aspect: Touch this button to change the aspect ratio of the DVD. This may not be available on all DVDs.

⋀ **(Next Track/Chapter):** Press this hard key to go to the next track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

⋁ **(Previous Track/Chapter):** Press this hard key to return to the start of the current track or chapter. Press this button again to go to the previous track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Tuning Knob): Turn this knob counterclockwise one notch to go to the start of the current chapter/track, turn it again to go to the previous chapter/track. Turn this knob clockwise to go to the next chapter/track.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DVD Messages

If Disc Read Error appears on the display and/or the DVD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- If a disc was inserted with an invalid or unknown format.
- If the disc is not from a correct region.
- If the map DVD disc was installed into the DVD audio/video slot. See “Installing the Map DVD” under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.
- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the DVD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the DVD should play.
- The DVD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the DVD.
- The label may be caught in the DVD player.

If the DVD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good DVD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer.

Care of Your CDs and DVDs

If playing recorded media such as a CD or DVD, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD or DVD quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, recording speed, max media recording speed, and the way the CD or DVD has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD or DVD. If the surface is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, it will not play properly. If the surface is soiled, see “Care of Your CDs and DVDs” in the Index of the vehicle’s owner manual.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD or DVD.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD or DVD, or more than one CD or DVD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs or DVDs, the player could be damaged. While using the CD or DVD player, use only CDs or DVDs in good condition without any label, load one CD or DVD at a time, and keep the player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

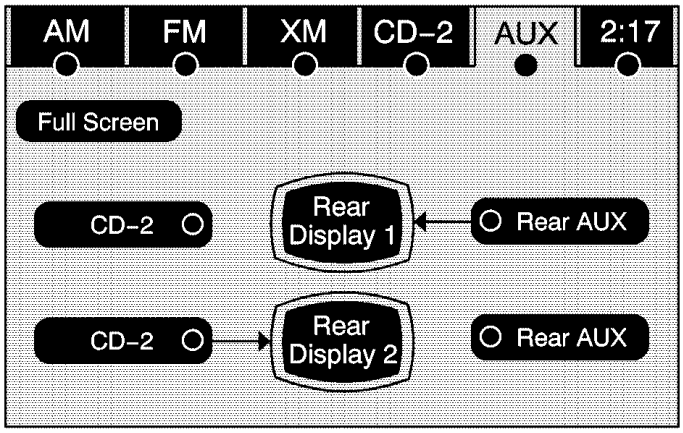
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do not add any label to a CD or DVD, it could get caught in the player. If a CD or DVD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD or DVD with a soft marker.

Auxiliary Devices

The vehicle may have a rear entertainment system (RSE) with a second and third row screen. The RSE has audio adapters to allow you to connect auxiliary devices. The audio can be heard through the speakers or through the wireless or wired headphones. See “Audio/Video Jacks” under, *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Overhead) on page 3-87* or *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Headrest DVD) on page 3-97* for more information.

Drivers are encouraged to set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park). See *Defensive Driving on page 5-2* for more information on driver distraction.



To switch the RSE system to use an auxiliary device:

1. Connect the auxiliary device to the RSE system, for the second or third row.
2. Press the AUDIO key then press the AUDIO key repeatedly until AUX (auxiliary) is selected or touch the AUX screen button. An auxiliary device must be connected for the AUX screen button to appear as an option to select.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. For the second row display select the Rear AUX screen button next to Rear Display 1 and for the third row display select the Rear AUX screen button next to Rear Display 2. Each screen works independently of the other. The second row screen can watch a DVD while the third row screen can use the auxiliary device.

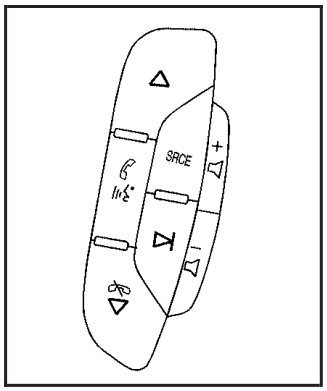
The rear seat passengers can also use the remote control to change the functions of the RSE. See *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Overhead) on page 3-87* or *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System (Headrest DVD) on page 3-97* for more information.

Voice Recognition

The navigation system's voice recognition allows for hands-free operation of the navigation system, audio system, and OnStar® features. The DVD map disc must be installed in the navigation system for voice recognition to work. See "Installing the DVD Map Disc" under *Maps on page 4-15* for more information.

Voice recognition can be used when the ignition is on or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See "Retained Accessory Power (RAP)" in the Index of your vehicle's owner manual for more information.

To use voice recognition, do the following:



1. Push and hold the SRCE button on the steering wheel until you hear a beep. The audio system mutes.

2. Clearly state one of the commands listed on the following pages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Helpful Hints for Stating Commands

- When a multiple command is available, choose the command that works best.
- Words that are in brackets are optional. For example, for the command Radio [band] [select] FM, stating Radio FM or Radio select FM are both valid commands.
- When the system recognizes the command the system does one of the following:
  - Perform the function.
  - Ask you to confirm your choice.
  - Issue an error message “Did not recognize. Voice Recognition Canceled.”
- If you experience difficulty with the system recognizing a command, try saying it more softly, and wait for a few seconds after the beep, or repeat the command.
- Background noise may cause voice commands to be misunderstood, including airflow noise from wind.
- To use the voice recognition system, the map DVD must be loaded and the navigation system must be on.

This system is able to recognize commands in three different languages. The system only recognizes commands based on the language selected from the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-65* for more information.

Voice Recognition Commands

The following list shows all of the voice commands available for the navigation system with a brief description of each. The commands are listed with the optional words in brackets. To use the voice commands, refer to the instructions listed previously.

Voice Tag Commands

The following are voice tag commands that can be accessed by clearly stating the commands exactly as they are written. There are up to 40 voice tag entries for destinations.

Navigation go to [destination], navigation select: These commands instruct the system to select a destination saved under the voice tag you have stored. The system prompts for a destination name then waits for you to state the name.

If not currently driving on a route, the system automatically creates the voice tag destination as the final destination. If driving on a route, the system automatically creates the voice tag destination as a stopover. Up to three stopovers can be created.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing Voice Tags

From the address book entry information page, press the Add Voice tag screen button. The system responds “Name Please?” and you will have four seconds to record a name. The system asks for confirmation of the name before saving it as a voice tag.

Navigation Help

Navigation Help: This command instructs the system to assist with navigation commands.

Display Commands

Use the following display commands to set the display mode.

Display [set] day [mode]: Sets the display to daytime mode.

Display [set] night [mode]: Sets the display to night mode.

Display [set] auto [mode]: Sets the display to automatic mode. The system changes between day and night mode automatically.

System help: Instructs the system to assist with display commands.

Radio Commands

The following are radio commands that can be accessed by clearly stating the commands exactly as they are written.

Radio [band] [select] AM, radio [band] [select] FM, radio [band] [select] XM, radio [band] [select] satellite: Instructs the system to go to either the AM, FM, or XM (if equipped).

Radio [select] (frequency) AM, radio [select] (frequency) FM: Instructs the system to go to a specific frequency on either AM or FM.

Radio [select] (channel) XM, radio [select] (channel) satellite: Instructs the system to go to a specific channel on the XM™ band (if equipped).

Radio help: Instructs the system to assist with radio commands.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD Commands

The following are CD, MP3, and DVD commands that can be accessed by clearly stating the commands exactly as they are written.

CD, DVD, Disc: Use this command to select a CD, DVD, or disc that is currently loaded.

CD, DVD, Disc, [select] track (one, two, three, etc.): Instructs the system to select a specific track number.

CD, DVD, Disc select next folder: Use this command to select the next folder on the MP3 or audio DVD.

CD, DVD, Disc select previous folder: Use this command to select the previous folder on the MP3 or audio DVD.

CD help, DVD help, Disc help: Instructs the system to assist with CD and DVD commands.

Auxiliary Commands

The following auxiliary commands can be accessed by clearly stating the commands exactly as they are written. The commands are available when the auxiliary source is available.

Aux, Auxiliary: Use this command to select the auxiliary device, when a device is connected.

Voice Help

Voice help: Provides a description of help commands that can be used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 5 Driving Your Vehicle

Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle 5-2
- Driving for Better Fuel Economy 5-2
- Defensive Driving 5-2
- Drunk Driving 5-3
- Control of a Vehicle 5-3
- Braking 5-4
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) 5-5
- Braking in Emergencies 5-6
- StabiliTrak® System 5-6
- Magnetic Ride Control™ 5-9
- Road Sensing Suspension 5-9
- Locking Rear Axle 5-9
- All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System 5-9
- Steering 5-10
- Off-Road Recovery 5-11
- Passing 5-12
- Loss of Control 5-12
- Off-Road Driving 5-13
- Driving at Night 5-25
- Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads 5-26
- Before Leaving on a Long Trip 5-27
- Highway Hypnosis 5-27
- Hill and Mountain Roads 5-28
- Winter Driving 5-29
- If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 5-31
- Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out 5-32
- Recovery Hooks 5-32
- Loading the Vehicle 5-33

Towing 5-40
- Towing Your Vehicle 5-40
- Recreational Vehicle Towing 5-40
- Level Control 5-43
- Autoride® 5-44
- Towing a Trailer 5-44
- Trailer Recommendations 5-57

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control, if equipped.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means "always expect the unexpected." The first step in driving defensively is to wear your safety belt — See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-30*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:

- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drunk Driving

⚠ CAUTION:

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle: judgment, muscular coordination, vision, and attentiveness.

Police records show that almost 40 percent of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with about 250,000 people injured.

For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive.

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

Control of a Vehicle

The following three systems help to control the vehicle while driving — brakes, steering, and accelerator. At times, as when driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. Meaning, you can lose control of the vehicle. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6*.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 6-3*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between the vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes might not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster with a lot of heavy braking. Keeping pace with the traffic and allowing realistic following distances eliminates a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If the brakes are pumped, the pedal could get harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will still be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

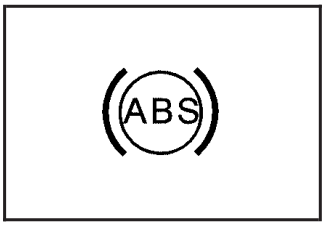
Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 6-3*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the engine is started and the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 3-40*.

Along with ABS, the vehicle has a Dynamic Rear Proportioning (DRP) system. If there is a DRP problem, both the brake and ABS warning lights come on accompanied by a 10-second chime. The lights and chime will come on each time the ignition is turned on until the problem is repaired. See your dealer/retailer for service.

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help the driver steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let antilock work. The brakes might vibrate or some noise might be heard, but this is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Brake Assist

This vehicle has a Brake Assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates The Brake Assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

StabiliTrak® System

The vehicle has a vehicle stability enhancement system called StabiliTrak. It is an advanced computer controlled system that assists the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

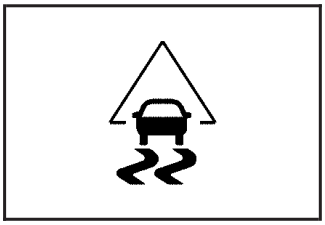
StabiliTrak activates when the computer senses a discrepancy between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure at any one of the vehicle's brakes to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

When the vehicle is started and begins to move, the system performs several diagnostic checks to insure there are no problems. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle. The system should initialize before the vehicle reaches 20 mph (32 km/h). In some cases, it may take approximately two miles of driving before the system initializes.

If cruise control is being used when StabiliTrak activates, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 3-13*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the StabiliTrak light along with one of the following messages will be displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC): TRACTION CONTROL OFF, SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL, STABILITRAK OFF, SERVICE STABILITRAK. If these DIC messages appear, make sure the StabiliTrak system has not been turned off using the StabiliTrak on/off button. Then turn the steering wheel clockwise from the nine o'clock position to the three o'clock position. If this clears the message(s), the vehicle does not need servicing. If this does not clear the message(s), then turn the vehicle off, wait 15 seconds, and then turn it back on again to reset the system. If any of these messages still appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC), the vehicle should be taken in for service. For more information on the DIC messages, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47*.



The StabiliTrak light will flash on the instrument panel cluster when the system is both on and activated.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working; this is normal.

The traction control disable button is located on the instrument panel below the climate controls.

The traction control part of StabiliTrak can be turned off by pressing and releasing the StabiliTrak button if both systems (traction control and StabiliTrak) were previously on. To disable both traction control and StabiliTrak, press and hold the button for five seconds.

Traction control and StabiliTrak can be turned on by pressing and releasing the StabiliTrak button if not automatically shut off for any other reason.

When the TCS or StabiliTrak system is turned off, the StabiliTrak light and the appropriate TCS off or StabiliTrak off message will be displayed on the DIC to warn the driver. The vehicle will still have brake-traction control when traction control is off, but will not be able to use the engine speed management system. See "Traction Control Operation" next for more information.

When the traction control system has been turned off, system noises may still be heard as a result of the brake-traction control coming on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required. See *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 5-31*.

Traction Control Operation

The traction control system is part of the StabiliTrak system. Traction control limits wheel spin by reducing engine power to the wheels (engine speed management) and by applying brakes to each individual wheel (brake-traction control) as necessary.

The traction control system is enabled automatically when the vehicle is started. It will activate and the StabiliTrak light will flash if it senses that any of the wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction while driving. If traction control is turned off, only the brake-traction control portion of traction control will work. The engine speed management will be disabled. In this mode, engine power is not reduced automatically and the driven wheels can spin more freely. This can cause the brake-traction control to activate constantly.

Notice: **If the wheel(s) of one axle is allowed to spin excessively while the StabiliTrak, ABS and brake warning lights and any relevant DIC messages are displayed, the transfer case could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights and messages are displayed.**

The traction control system may activate on dry or rough roads or under conditions such as heavy acceleration while turning or abrupt upshifts/downshifts of the transmission. When this happens, a reduction in acceleration may be noticed, or a noise or vibration may be heard. This is normal.

If cruise control is being used when the system activates, the StabiliTrak light will flash and cruise control will automatically disengage. Cruise control may be reengaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 3-13*.

StabiliTrak may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, see your dealer/retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Magnetic Ride Control™

The vehicle may have the MagneRide control system. MagneRide constantly checks speed, wheel position, lift/dive and steering of the vehicle. The damping force for each shock absorber and adjustment level is chosen for the best ride and handling.

MagneRide also works with the tow/haul switch that, when engaged, will provide more firmness from the shock absorbers. This added control gives better ride and handling when carrying heavy loads or towing a trailer. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33* for more information.

Road Sensing Suspension

The Road Sensing Suspension (RSS) feature provides superior vehicle ride and handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions.

The system is fully automatic and uses a computer controller to continuously monitor vehicle speed, wheel to body position, lift/dive and steering position of the vehicle. The controller then sends signals to each shock absorber to independently adjust the damping level to provide the optimum vehicle ride.

RSS also interacts with the tow/haul mode that, when engaged, will provide additional control of the shock absorbers. This additional control results in better ride and handling characteristics when the vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer. See “Tow/Haul Mode” under *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

Locking Rear Axle

Vehicles with a locking rear axle can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature will allow the rear wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle.

All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System

If the vehicle has this feature, engine power is sent to all four wheels when extra traction is needed. This is like four-wheel drive, but there is no separate lever or switch to engage or disengage the front axle. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see “Four-Wheel Drive” in the Two-mode Hybrid Supplement.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steering

Power Steering

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, the vehicle can be steered but it will take more effort.

Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

Traction in a curve depends on the condition of the tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and vehicle speed. While in a curve, speed is the one factor that can be controlled.

If there is a need to reduce speed, do it before entering the curve, while the front wheels are straight.

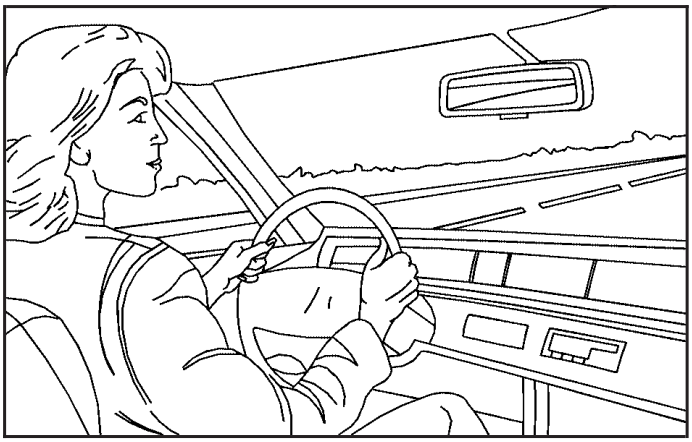
Try to adjust the speed so you can drive through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. These problems can be avoided by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot stop in time because there is no room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

The vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First, apply the brakes. See *Braking on page 5-4*. It is better to remove as much speed as possible from a collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

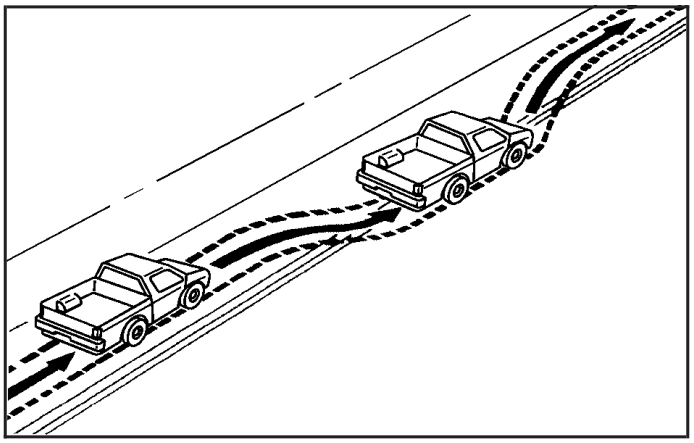


An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, it can be turned a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

Off-Road Recovery

The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that the vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. Turn the steering wheel 3 to 5 inches, 8 to 13 cm, (about one-eighth turn) until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passing

Passing another vehicle on a two-lane road can be dangerous. To reduce the risk of danger while passing:

- Look down the road, to the sides, and to crossroads for situations that might affect a successful pass. If in doubt, wait.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings, and lines that could indicate a turn or an intersection. Never cross a solid or double-solid line on your side of the lane.
- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass. Doing so can reduce your visibility.
- Wait your turn to pass a slow vehicle.
- When you are being passed, ease to the right.

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to the vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, the wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Remember: Any traction control system helps avoid only the acceleration skid. If the traction control system is off, then an acceleration skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If the vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, the vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until the vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any Antilock Brake System (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

Off-Road Driving

Vehicles with all-wheel drive can be used for off-road driving. Vehicles without all-wheel drive and vehicles with 22-inch tire/wheel assemblies should not be driven off-road except on a level, solid surface.

Many of the vehicle design features that help make the vehicle more responsive on paved roads during poor weather conditions also help make it better suited for off-road use than conventional passenger vehicles. The vehicle does not have features usually thought to be necessary for extended or severe off-road use such as special underbody shielding and transfer case low gear range.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Always wear your safety belt and observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road and this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking.

Off-roading can be great fun but has some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself. When off-road driving, traffic lanes are not marked, curves are not banked, and there are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill, or downhill.

Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers. Failure to operate the vehicle correctly off-road could result in loss of vehicle control or vehicle rollover.

Off-roading involves some new skills. That is why it is very important that you read these driving tips and suggestions to help make off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before You Go Off-Roading

- Have all necessary maintenance and service work done.
- Make sure there is enough fuel, that fluid levels are where they should be, and that the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, is fully inflated.
- Be sure to read all the information about all-wheel-drive vehicles in this manual.
- Make sure all underbody shields, if the vehicle has them, are properly attached.
- Know the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving or check with law enforcement people in the area.
- Be sure to get the necessary permission if you will be on private land.

If you think you will need some more ground clearance at the front of your vehicle, you can remove the front fascia lower air dam. The air dam is held in place by two bolts and 10 snaps accessible from underneath the front fascia.

To remove the air dam:

1. Remove the two outboard air dam bolts.
2. With a flat-blade tool, disengage the snaps.
3. After the bolts are removed and the snaps are disengaged, push forward on the air dam until it is free.

Notice: **Operating your vehicle for extended periods without the front fascia lower air dam installed can cause improper air flow to the engine. Always be sure to replace the front fascia air dam when you are finished off-road driving.**

After off-roading, be sure to reinstall the air dam:

1. Line up the snaps and push the air dam rearward to engage the snaps.
2. Install the two outboard bolts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

⚠ CAUTION:

- Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.
- Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.
- Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the floor, forward of the rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is properly secured, so things are not tossed around.

You will find other important information under *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33* and *Tires on page 6-56*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving and obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage shrubs, flowers, trees, or grasses or disturb wildlife. This includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees, or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground.
- Always carry a litter bag and make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires (where permitted), camp stoves, and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Check to see if there are any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle in case something happens to one of them.

For vehicles with a winch, be sure to read the winch instructions. In a remote area, a winch can be handy if you get stuck but you will want to know how to use it properly.

Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-roading requires some new and different skills.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. Use your arms, hands, feet, and body to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controlling the vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control the vehicle is to control the speed. At higher speeds:

- You approach things faster and have less time to react.
- There is less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- The vehicle has more bounce when driving over obstacles.
- More braking distance is needed, especially on an unpaved surface.

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you are driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.

Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. Be familiar with the terrain and its many different features.

Surface Conditions: Off-roading surfaces can be hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow, or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the vehicle's steering, acceleration, and braking in different ways. Depending on the surface, slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction, and longer braking distances can occur.

Surface Obstacles: Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut, or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow, or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself.

Some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill?
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When driving over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs, or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands.

When driving over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, the wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns, or sudden braking.

Off-roading requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits, or signal lights. Use good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Driving on Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down, or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and an understanding of what the vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, decide if it is too steep to climb, descend, or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you might not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass, or shrubs.

Consider this as you approach a hill:

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs, and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

Driving Uphill

Once you decide it is safe to drive up the hill:

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain speed. Not using more power than needed can avoid spinning the wheels or sliding.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.

- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.
- Ease up on the speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to be more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use headlamps even during the day to make the vehicle more visible to oncoming traffic.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

If the vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and you cannot make it up the hill:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards and apply the parking brake.
- If the engine is still running, shift the transmission to R (Reverse), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in R (Reverse).
- If the engine has stopped running, you need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the transmission to P (Park) and restart the engine. Then, shift to R (Reverse), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in R (Reverse).
- While backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position so you can tell if the wheels are straight and can maneuver as you back down. It is best to back down the hill with the wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Things not to do if the vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, when going up a hill:

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into N (Neutral) to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. The vehicle can roll backward very quickly and could go out of control.
- Never try to turn around if about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall the vehicle, it is steep enough to cause it to roll over. If you cannot make it up the hill, back straight down the hill.

If, after stalling, you try to back down the hill and decide you just cannot do it, set the parking brake, put your transmission in P (Park), and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, consider:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What is the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, try to keep the vehicle headed straight down. Use a low gear so engine drag can help the brakes so they do not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping the vehicle under control at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

Things not to do when driving down a hill:

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down might be too steep to drive across. The vehicle could roll over.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in N (Neutral), called free-wheeling. The brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

Vehicles are much more likely to stall when going uphill, but if it happens when going downhill:

1. Stop the vehicle by applying the regular brakes and apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to P (Park) and, while still braking, restart the engine.
3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Across an Incline

An off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. To decide whether to try to drive across the incline, consider the following:

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down might be too steep to drive across. When going straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when driving across an incline, the narrower track width — the distance between the left and right wheels — might not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels which could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.
- Surface conditions can be a problem. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause the tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, the vehicle can tilt even more.

For these reasons, carefully consider whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

If you feel the vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. The best way to prevent this is to “walk the course” first, so you know what the surface is like before driving it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Stalling on an Incline

⚠ CAUTION:

Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.

If the vehicle stalls when crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.

Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow, or sand, the wheels do not get good traction. Acceleration is not as quick, turning is more difficult, and braking distances are longer.

It is best to use a low gear when in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, keep the vehicle moving so it does not get stuck.

When driving on sand, wheel traction changes. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, the tires will tend to sink into the sand. This affects steering, accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And, if the vehicle does get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause it to slide out of control.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

Driving in Water

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before driving through it. Do not try it if it is deep enough to cover the wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe — you probably will not get through. Deep water can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on the ignition system and the vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get the tailpipe under water. If the tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start the engine. When going through water, remember that when the brakes get wet, it might take longer to stop. See *Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads on page 5-26*.

After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage and check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

The vehicle requires more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

Driving at Night

Night driving is more dangerous than day driving because some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Night driving tips include:

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Reduce headlamp glare by adjusting the inside rearview mirror.
- Slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles because headlamps can only light up so much road ahead.
- Watch for animals.
- When tired, pull off the road.
- Do not wear sunglasses.
- Avoid staring directly into approaching headlamps.
- Keep the windshield and all glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out.
- Keep your eyes moving, especially during turns or curves.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But, as we get older, these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver might need at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause your vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under your vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 6-56*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before Leaving on a Long Trip

To prepare your vehicle for a long trip, consider having it serviced by your dealer/retailer before departing.

Things to check on your own include:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Reservoir full? Windows clean — inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* In good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* All levels checked?
- *Lamps:* Do they all work and are lenses clean?
- *Tires:* Are treads good? Are tires inflated to recommended pressure?
- *Weather and Maps:* Safe to travel? Have up-to-date maps?

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park your vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Going down steep or long hills, shift to a lower gear.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ CAUTION:

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear when going downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

See *Off-Road Driving on page 5-13* for information about driving off-road.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 32°F (0°C) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

The *StabiliTrak® System on page 5-6* improves the ability to accelerate on slippery roads, but slow down and adjust your driving to the road conditions. When driving through deep snow, turn off the traction control part of the StabiliTrak® System to help maintain vehicle motion at lower speeds.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 5-5* improves vehicle stability during hard stops on a slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control, if equipped, on slippery surfaces.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be in a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use the *Roadside Service on page 8-7*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ CAUTION:

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- Open a window about two inches (5 cm) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-38*.

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust.

Run the engine for short periods only as needed to keep warm, but be careful.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 5-32*.

If the vehicle has a traction system, it can often help to free a stuck vehicle. Refer to the vehicle's traction system in the Index. If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you let your vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.

For information about using tire chains on the vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 6-76*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

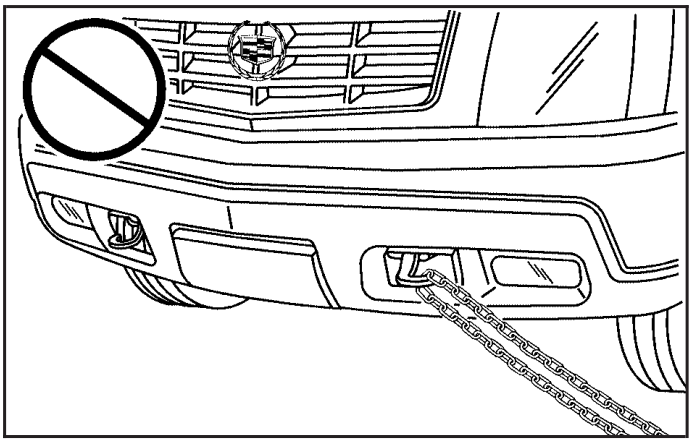
Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction or stability system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. Recovery hooks can be used, if the vehicle has them. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 5-40*.

Recovery Hooks

⚠ CAUTION:

These hooks, when used, are under a lot of force. Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle. The hooks could break off and you or others could be injured from the chain or cable snapping back.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Notice: **Never use recovery hooks to tow the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged and it would not be covered by warranty.**

For vehicles with recovery hooks at the front of the vehicle, you can use them if you are stuck off-road and need to be pulled to some place where you can continue driving.

Loading the Vehicle

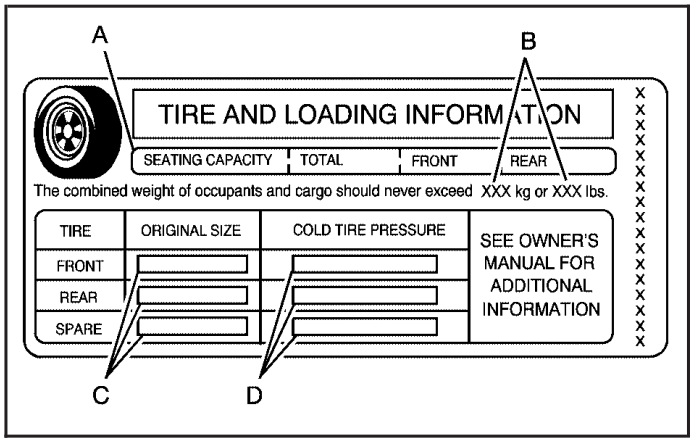
It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it was designed to carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker).

The tire and loading information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 6-56* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62*.

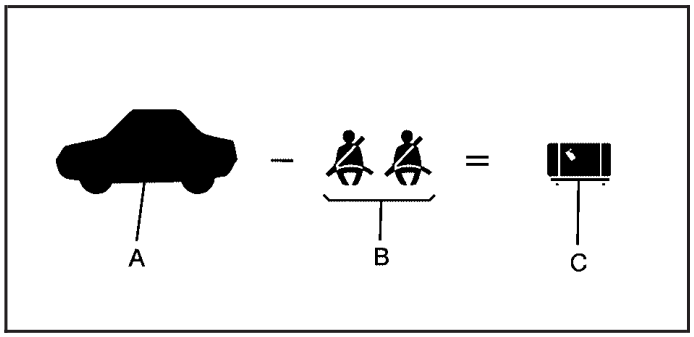
There is also important loading information on the vehicle Certification/Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. See "Certification/Tire Label" later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

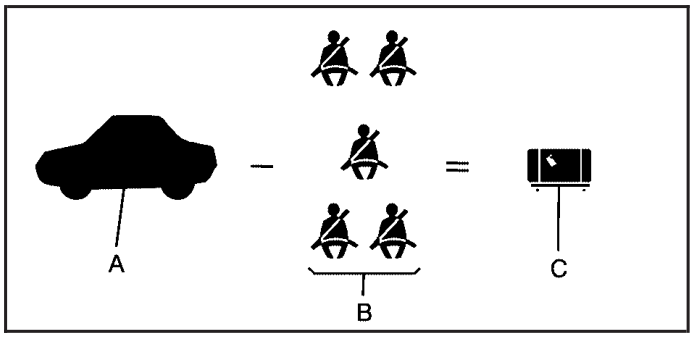
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. See *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules and trailering tips.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Example 1

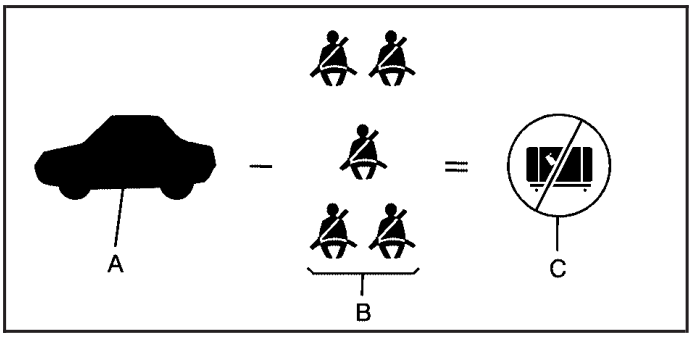


Example 2

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 =	750 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



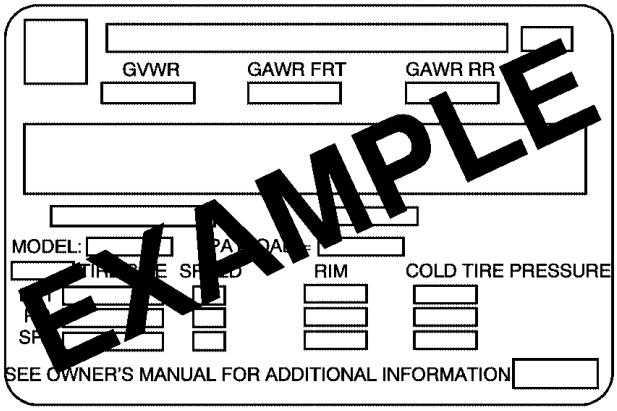
Example 3

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Certification/Tire Label



A vehicle specific Certification/Tire label is attached to the rear edge of the driver's door. The label shows the size of your vehicle's original tires and the inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle. This is called Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the center line.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

And, if you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your truck can carry.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.

There is also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See “Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving” under *Off-Road Driving on page 5-13*.

Add-On Equipment

When you carry removable items, you may need to put a limit on how many people you can carry inside your vehicle. Be sure to weigh your vehicle before you buy and install the new equipment.

Notice: **Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

Automatic Level Control

The automatic level control rear suspension comes as a part of the Road Sensing Suspension. See *Road Sensing Suspension on page 5-9*.

This type of level control is fully automatic and will provide a better leveled riding position as well as better handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions. An air compressor connected to the rear shocks will raise or lower the rear of the vehicle to maintain proper vehicle height.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The system is activated when the ignition key is turned to RUN and will automatically adjust vehicle height thereafter. The system may exhaust (lower vehicle height) for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key has been turned to LOCK. You may hear the air compressor operating when the height is being adjusted.

If a weight-distributing hitch is being used, it is recommended to allow the shocks to inflate, thereby leveling the vehicle prior to adjusting the height. See “Weight distributing Hitches and Weight Carrying Hitches” under *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

Towing

Towing Your Vehicle

To avoid damage, the disabled vehicle should be towed with all four wheels off the ground. Consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed. See *Roadside Service on page 8-7*.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” following.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle – such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as “dinghy towing” (towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and “dolly towing” (towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a “dolly”).

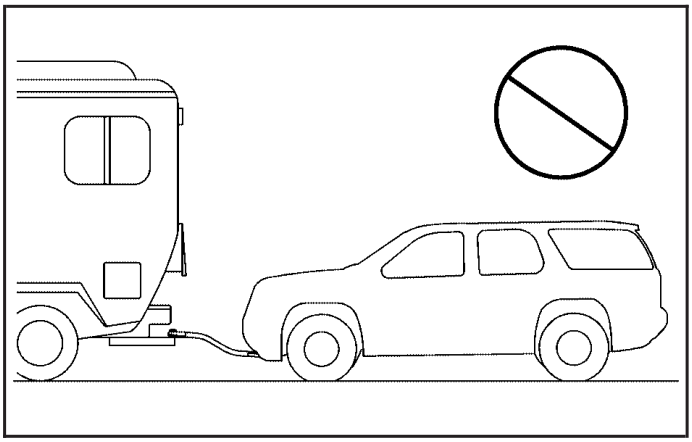
Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

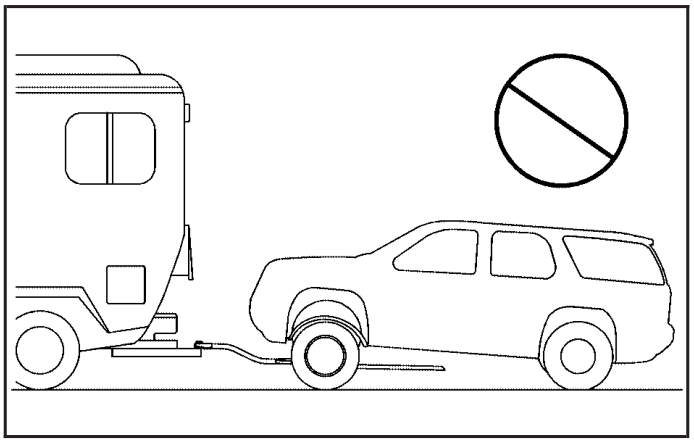
- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer’s recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be travelled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer/retailer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed. See *Before Leaving on a Long Trip on page 5-27*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

All-Wheel-Drive Vehicles

Dinghy and Dolly Towing





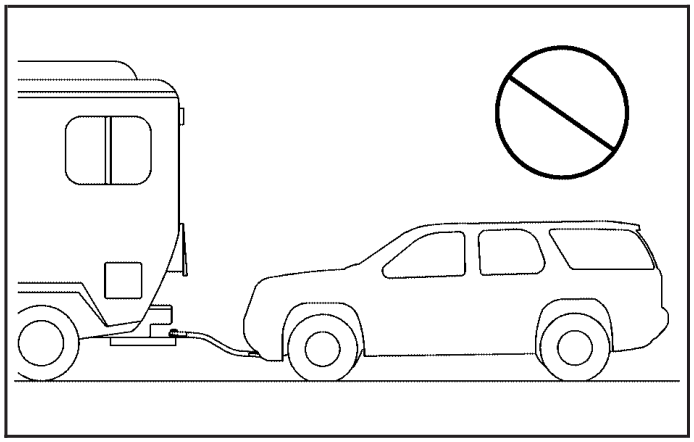
Notice: **Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Do not tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground.**

All-wheel-drive vehicles are not designed to be towed with any wheels on the ground. If the vehicle must be towed, see Towing Your Vehicle previously.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles

Dinghy Towing

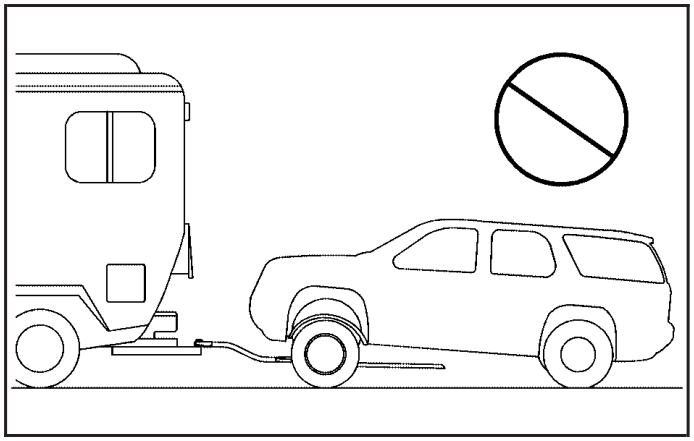


Notice: **If a two-wheel-drive vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the transmission could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.**

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with all four wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

To dolly tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle, the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels on the dolly. See “Dolly Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)” following.

Dolly Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground)

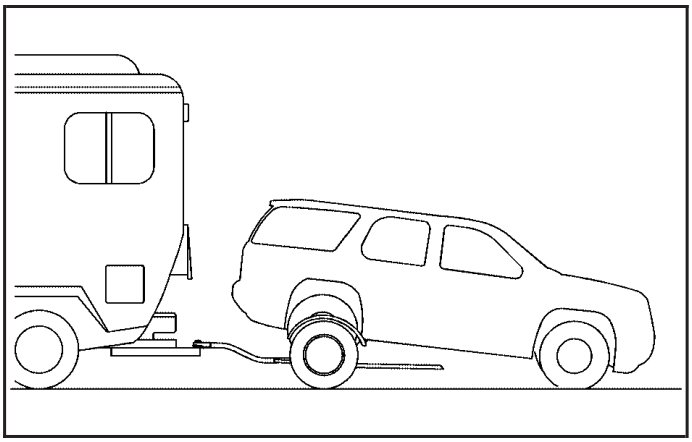


Notice: **If a two-wheel-drive vehicle is towed with the rear wheels on the ground, the transmission could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with the rear wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

Dolly Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)



Use the following procedure to dinghy tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-34*.
4. Put the transmission in P (Park).
5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

Level Control

Automatic Level Control

The automatic level control rear suspension is available on light-duty vehicles and comes as a part of the Autoride® suspension, if equipped.

This type of level control is fully automatic and will provide a better leveled riding position as well as better handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions. An air compressor connected to the rear shocks will raise or lower the rear of the vehicle to maintain proper vehicle height. The system is activated when the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN and will automatically adjust vehicle height thereafter. The system may exhaust (lower vehicle height) for up to ten minutes after the ignition key has been turned off. You may hear the air compressor operating when the height is being adjusted.

If a weight-distributing hitch is being used, it is recommended to allow the shocks to inflate, thereby leveling the vehicle prior to adjusting the hitch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Autoride®

With this feature, improved vehicle ride and handling is provided under a variety of passenger and loading conditions.

The system is fully automatic and uses a computer controller to continuously monitor vehicle speed, wheel to body position, lift/dive and steering position of the vehicle. The controller then sends signals to each shock absorber to independently adjust the damping level to provide the optimum vehicle ride.

Autoride also interacts with the tow/haul mode that, when activated, will provide additional control of the shock absorbers. This additional control results in better ride and handling characteristics when the vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer. See “Tow/Haul Mode” under *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44* for more information.

Towing a Trailer

Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *New Vehicle Break-In on page 2-24* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

The driver can lose control when pulling a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. The driver and passengers could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged; the resulting repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer/retailer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Notice: **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section and see your dealer/retailer for important information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To identify the trailering capacity of the vehicle, read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section.

Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Pulling A Trailer

Here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure the rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you will be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. See “Hitches” later in this section.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (800 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.
- If the vehicle has the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system and it doesn’t seem to be working properly while pulling a trailer, turn the system off. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) on page 2-44* for more information.

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- The weight of the trailer
- The weight of the trailer tongue
- And the weight on the vehicle’s tires

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Use the following chart to determine how much the vehicle can weigh, based upon the vehicle model and options.

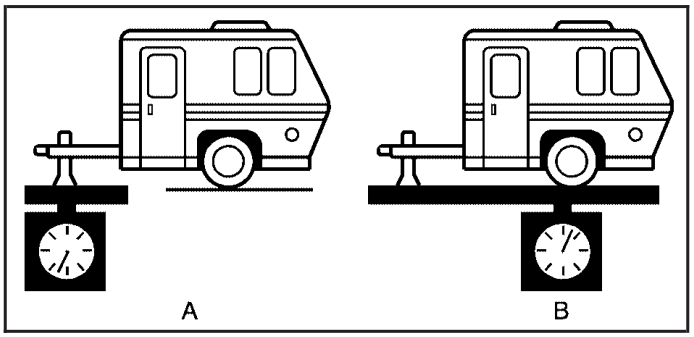
Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Escalade 2WD 6.2L V8	3.42	8,300 lbs (3 765 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
Escalade AWD 6.2L V8	3.42	8,100 lbs (3 674 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
Escalade ESV 2WD 6.2L V8	3.42	7,600 lbs (3 447 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
Escalade ESV AWD 6.2L V8	3.42	7,800 lbs (3 538 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
*The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for the vehicle should not be exceeded.			

Ask your dealer/retailer for our trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices on page 8-6* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See for more information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity.



The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B), up to a maximum of 600 lbs (272 kg) with a weight carrying hitch. The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B), up to the maximum of 1,000 lbs (454 kg) with a weight distributing hitch.

Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for the vehicle. Choose the shortest hitch extension that will position the hitch ball closest to the vehicle. This will help reduce the effect of trailer tongue weight on the rear axle.

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailering may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce the trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

Consider the following example:

A vehicle model base weight is 5,500 lbs (2 495 kg); 2,800 lbs (1 270 kg) at the front axle and 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg) at the rear axle. It has a GVWR of 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg), a RGAWR of 4,000 lbs (1 814 kg) and a GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating) of 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg). The trailer rating should be:

14,000 lbs (6350 kg)	GCWR
−5,500 lbs (2495 kg)	Vehicle Weight
8,500 lbs (3855 kg)	Trailer Rating

Expect tongue weight to be at least 10 percent of trailer weight (850 lbs (386 kg)) and because the weight is applied well behind the rear axle, the effect on the rear axle is greater than just the weight itself, as much as 1.5 times as much. The weight at the rear axle could be 850 lbs (386 kg) X 1.5 = 1,275 lbs (578 kg).

Since the rear axle already weighs 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg), adding 1,275 lbs (578 kg) brings the total to 3,975 lbs (1 803 kg). This is very close to, but within the limit for RGAWR as well. The vehicle is set to trailer up to 8,500 lbs (3 856 kg).

If the vehicle has many options and there is a front seat passenger and two rear seat passengers with some luggage and gear in the vehicle as well. 300 lbs (136 kg) could be added to the front axle weight and 400 lbs (181 kg) to the rear axle weight. The vehicle now weighs:

2,800 lbs (1270 kg)	+	300 lbs (136 kg)	Front
2,700 lbs (1225 kg)	+	400 lbs (181 kg)	Rear
6,200 lbs (2812 kg)			Total

Weight is still below 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg) and you might think 700 additional pounds (318 kg) should be subtracted from the trailering capacity to stay within GCWR limits. The maximum trailer would only be 7,800 lbs (3 538 kg). You may go further and think the tongue weight should be limited to less than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) to avoid exceeding GVWR. But the effect on the rear axle must still be considered. Because the rear axle now weighs 3,100 lbs (1 406 kg), 900 lbs (408 kg) can be put on the rear axle without exceeding RGAWR.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The effect of tongue weight is about 1.5 times the actual weight. Dividing the 900 lbs (408 kg) by 1.5 leaves only 600 lbs (272 kg) of tongue weight that can be handled. Since tongue weight is usually at least 10 percent of total loaded trailer weight, expect that the largest trailer the vehicle can properly handle is 6,000 lbs (2 721 kg).

It is important that the vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure it is not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh the vehicle and trailer.

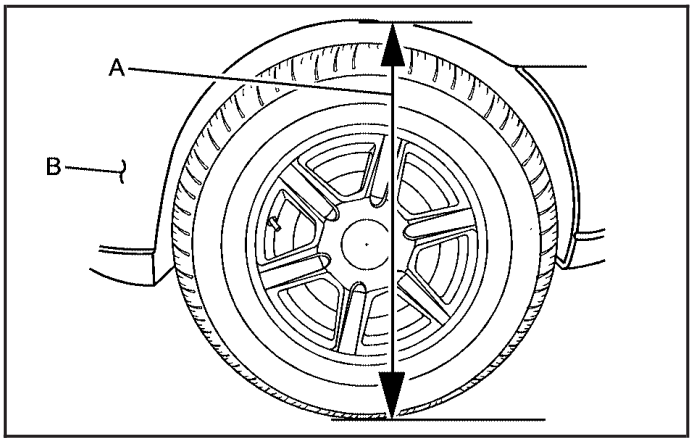
Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Certification label at the rear edge of the driver door or see *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33* for more information. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, or the GAWR, including the weight of the trailer tongue. If using a weight distributing hitch, make sure not to go over the rear axle limit before applying the weight distribution spring bars.

Hitches

It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why the right hitch is needed.

Weight-Distributing Hitches and Weight Carrying Hitches



(A) Body-to-Ground Distance (B) Front of Vehicle

When using a weight-distributing hitch, the hitch must be adjusted so that the distance (A) remains the same both before and after coupling the trailer to the tow vehicle.

If a step-bumper hitch is used, the bumper could be damaged in sharp turns. Make sure there is ample room when turning to avoid contact between the trailer and the bumper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

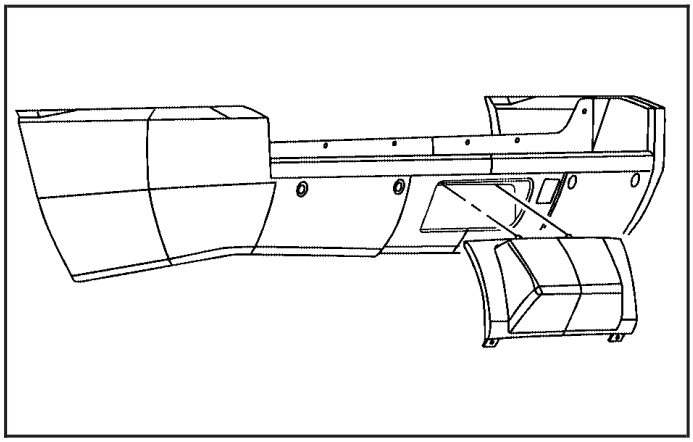
When pulling a trailer that, when loaded, will weigh more than 5,000 lbs (2 270 kg) be sure to use a properly mounted weight-distributing hitch and sway control of the proper size. This equipment is very important for proper vehicle loading and good handling when driving. Always use sway control if the trailer will weigh more than these limits. Ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.

Hitch Cover

The vehicle may have a hitch cover. To remove the hitch cover:

1. Turn the fasteners on the lower tabs 90 degrees counterclockwise.
2. Lift the lower edge of the cover about 45 degrees.
3. Pull the cover downward to disengage the upper attachments.

To reinstall the hitch cover:



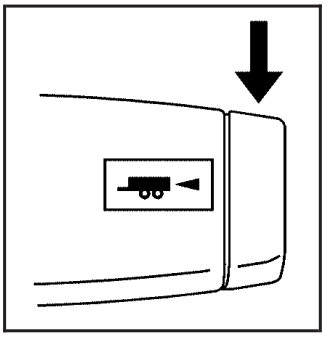
1. Hold the cover at a 45 degree angle to the vehicle and push the upper tabs in the hitch cover into the chrome slots in the fascia.
2. Move the bottom of the cover forward until the lower tabs line up with the lower fascia slots.
3. Snap the hitch cover into place by pushing the upper corners forward.
4. Turn the fasteners on the lower tabs 90 degrees clockwise to lock the cover in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

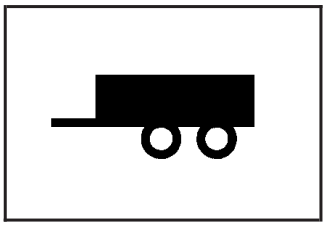
Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. If the trailer being towed weighs up to the vehicle's trailer rating limit, safety chains may be attached to the attaching point on the hitch platform. Always leave just enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Tow/Haul Mode



Pressing this button at the end of the shift lever turns on and off the tow/haul mode.



This indicator light on the instrument panel cluster comes on when the tow/haul mode is on.

Tow/Haul is a feature that assists when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33* for more information.

Tow/Haul is designed to be most effective when the vehicle and trailer combined weight is at least 75 percent of the vehicle's Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR). See "Weight of the Trailer" later in the section. Tow/Haul is most useful under the following driving conditions:

- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load through rolling terrain.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in stop and go traffic.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in busy parking lots where improved low speed control of the vehicle is desired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operating the vehicle in Tow/Haul when lightly loaded or with no trailer at all will not cause damage. However, there is no benefit to the selection of Tow/Haul when the vehicle is unloaded. Such a selection when unloaded may result in unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics and reduced fuel economy. Tow/Haul is recommended only when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

The vehicle is equipped with Autoride® which further improves the vehicle's ride while towing. See *Autoride® on page 5-44* for more information.

Trailer Brakes

A loaded trailer that weighs more than 2,000 lbs (900 kg) needs to have its own brake system that is adequate for the weight of the trailer. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted and maintained properly.

Since the vehicle is equipped with StabiliTrak®, the trailer brakes cannot tap into the vehicle's hydraulic system.

Driving with a Trailer

⚠ CAUTION:

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window is open.

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

To maximize safety when towing a trailer:

- Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks and make necessary repairs before starting a trip.
- Never drive with the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window open.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-38*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Get to know the rig before setting out for the open road. Get acquainted with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not as responsive as the vehicle is by itself.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires and mirror adjustments. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This checks the electrical connection at the same time.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. Because the rig is longer, it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on the instrument panel flash whenever signaling a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps also flash, telling other drivers the vehicle is turning, changing lanes or stopping.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument panel flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. For this reason you may think other drivers are seeing the signal when they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might have to be used so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.

The tow/haul mode may be used if the transmission shifts too often. See *Tow/Haul Mode Light on page 3-46*.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating on page 6-30*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ CAUTION:

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

If the engine has been left running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when on fairly level ground, always put the shift lever fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal while you:
   - Start the engine
   - Shift into a gear
   - Release the parking brake
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

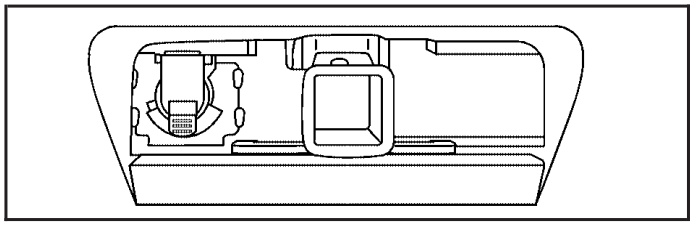
Maintenance When Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See this manual's Maintenance Schedule or Index for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Trailer Wiring Harness

Heavy-Duty Trailer Wiring Package



The vehicle is equipped with the seven-wire trailer towing harness. This harness with a seven-pin universal heavy-duty trailer connector is attached to the rear bumper beam. It is located next to the integrated trailer hitch.

The seven-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Dark Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps
- White: Ground
- Light Green: Back-up Lamps
- Red w/ Black Stripe: Battery Feed*
- Dark Blue: Trailer Brake*

*The fuses for these two circuits are installed in the underhood electrical center, but the circuits are not connected. They should be installed by your dealer or a qualified service center.

If charging a remote (non-vehicle) battery, press the Tow/Haul mode button, if equipped, located at the end of the shift lever. This will boost the vehicle system voltage and properly charge the battery. If the trailer is too light for Tow/Haul mode, or the vehicle is not equipped with Tow/Haul, turn on the headlamps as a second way to boost the vehicle system and charge the battery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electric Brake Control Wiring Provisions

These wiring provisions are included with the vehicle as part of the heavy-duty trailer wiring package. These provisions are for an electric brake controller. The red/black stripe power feed will not be connected to the battery until the ring terminal is unstowed and connected to the underhood electrical center. The instrument panel contains blunt cut wires near the data link connector for the trailer brake controller. The harness contains the following wires:

- Dark Blue: Auxiliary
- Red/Black: Battery
- Light Blue/White: Brake Switch
- White: Ground

The trailer brake controller should be installed by your dealer/retailer or a qualified service center.

Trailer Recommendations

Subtract the hitch loads from the Cargo Weight Rating (CWR). CWR is the maximum weight of the load the vehicle can carry. It does not include the weight of the people inside, but you can figure about 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger. The total cargo load must not be more than the vehicles CWR.

Weigh the vehicle with the trailer attached, so the GVWR or GAWR are not exceeded. If using a weight-distributing hitch, weigh the vehicle without the spring bars in place.

The best performance is obtained by correctly spreading out the weight of the load and choosing the correct hitch and trailer brakes.

For more information see *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 6 Service and Appearance Care

Service 6-3
- Accessories and Modifications 6-3
- California Proposition 65 Warning 6-4
- California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 6-4
- Doing Your Own Service Work 6-4
- Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle 6-5

Fuel 6-5
- Gasoline Octane 6-5
- Gasoline Specifications 6-6
- California Fuel 6-6
- Additives 6-6
- Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) 6-7
- Fuels in Foreign Countries 6-8
- Filling the Tank 6-9
- Filling a Portable Fuel Container 6-11

Checking Things Under the Hood 6-12
- Hood Release 6-13
- Engine Compartment Overview 6-14
- Engine Oil 6-15
- Engine Oil Life System 6-18
- Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 6-19
- Automatic Transmission Fluid 6-20
- Cooling System 6-24
- Engine Coolant 6-25
- Engine Overheating 6-30
- Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 6-33
- Engine Fan Noise 6-33
- Power Steering Fluid 6-33
- Windshield Washer Fluid 6-34
- Brakes 6-36
- Battery 6-39
- Jump Starting 6-40

All-Wheel Drive 6-45

Rear Axle 6-46

Front Axle 6-47

Headlamp Aiming 6-48

Bulb Replacement 6-51
- High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 6-51
- LED Lighting 6-51
- Back-Up Lamps 6-51
- License Plate Lamp 6-53
- Replacement Bulbs 6-53

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 6-54

Tires 6-56
- Tire Sidewall Labeling 6-57
- Tire Terminology and Definitions 6-59
- Inflation - Tire Pressure 6-62
- High-Speed Operation 6-63

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 6 Service and Appearance Care

Tire Pressure Monitor System 6-64
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 6-65
Tire Inspection and Rotation 6-69
When It Is Time for New Tires 6-70
Buying New Tires 6-71
Different Size Tires and Wheels 6-73
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 6-73
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 6-75
Wheel Replacement 6-75
Tire Chains 6-76
If a Tire Goes Flat 6-77
Changing a Flat Tire 6-78
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 6-79
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 6-84
Secondary Latch System 6-89
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 6-92
Spare Tire 6-96

Appearance Care 6-96
Interior Cleaning 6-96
Fabric/Carpet 6-98
Leather 6-98
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 6-99
Wood Panels 6-100
Speaker Covers 6-100
Care of Safety Belts 6-100
Weatherstrips 6-100
Washing Your Vehicle 6-100
Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 6-101
Finish Care 6-101
Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades 6-102
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels and Trim 6-102
Tires 6-103
Sheet Metal Damage 6-103
Finish Damage 6-103
Underbody Maintenance 6-104
Chemical Paint Spotting 6-104

Vehicle Identification 6-104
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 6-104
Service Parts Identification Label 6-105

Electrical System 6-105
Add-On Electrical Equipment 6-105
Windshield Wiper Fuses 6-105
Power Windows and Other Power Options 6-105
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 6-106
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 6-106
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block 6-108
Underhood Fuse Block 6-109

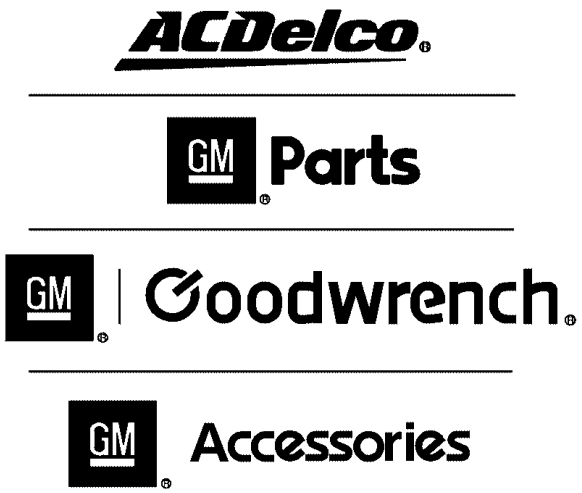
Capacities and Specifications 6-113

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer/retailer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:



Accessories and Modifications

When non-dealer/non-retailer accessories are added to the vehicle, they can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. Some of these accessories could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module modifications, are not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. Your GM dealer/retailer can accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer/retailer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-94*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in remote keyless transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Doing Your Own Service Work

If this vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be injured and the vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before attempting any vehicle maintenance task.
- Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If the wrong fasteners are used, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 8-15*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-93*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Record on page 7-17*.

Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle

Things added to the outside of the vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This can cause wind noise and can affect fuel economy and windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies the vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 6-104*.

If the vehicle has the 6.2L V8 engine (VIN Code 2), you can use either unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel containing up to 85% ethanol (E85); also see *Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) on page 6-7*. In all other engines, use only unleaded gasoline. See *Gasoline Octane on page 6-5*.

Gasoline Octane

If the vehicle has the 6.0L V8 engine (VIN Code 5), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, you might notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

If the vehicle has the 6.2L V8 engine (VIN Code 2), use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 91 or higher. You can also use regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, but the vehicle's acceleration could be slightly reduced, and you might notice a slight audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock. If the octane is less than 87, you might notice a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you could damage the engine. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gasoline Specifications

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Additives on page 6-6* for additional information.

California Fuel

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer/retailer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to the fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if the vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, one bottle of GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS, added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help clean deposits from fuel injectors and intake valves. GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors.

Also, your dealer/retailer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system could be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer/retailer for service.

Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol)

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies the vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 6-104*.

If the vehicle has the 6.2L V8 engine (VIN Code 2), you can use either unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel containing up to 85% ethanol (E85). See *Fuel on page 6-5*. In all other engines, use only the unleaded gasoline described under *Gasoline Octane on page 6-5*.

Only vehicles that have the 6.2L V8 engine (VIN Code 2) can use 85% ethanol fuel (E85). We encourage the use of E85 in vehicles that are designed to use it. The ethanol in E85 is a "renewable" fuel, meaning it is made from renewable sources such as corn and other crops.

Many service stations will not have an 85% ethanol fuel (E85) pump available. The U. S. Department of Energy has an alternative fuels website (www.eere.energy.gov/afdc/infrastructure/locator.html) that can help you find E85 fuel. Those stations that do have E85 should have a label indicating ethanol content. Do not use the fuel if the ethanol content is greater than 85%.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

At a minimum, E85 should meet ASTM Specification D 5798. By definition, this means that fuel labeled E85 will have an ethanol content between 70% and 85%. Filling the fuel tank with fuel mixtures that do not meet ASTM specifications can affect driveability and could cause the malfunction indicator lamp to come on.

To ensure quick starts in the wintertime, the E85 fuel must be formulated properly for your climate according to ASTM specification D 5798. If you have trouble starting on E85, it could be because the E85 fuel is not properly formulated for your climate. If this happens, switching to gasoline or adding gasoline to the fuel tank can improve starting. For good starting and heater efficiency below 32°F (0°C), the fuel mix in the fuel tank should contain no more than 70% ethanol. It is best not to alternate repeatedly between gasoline and E85. If you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you add as much fuel as possible — do not add less than three gallons (11 L) when refueling. You should drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least seven miles (11 km) to allow the vehicle to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

E85 has less energy per gallon than gasoline, so you will need to refill the fuel tank more often when using E85 than when you are using gasoline. See *Filling the Tank on page 6-9*.

Notice: **Some additives are not compatible with E85 fuel and can harm the vehicle's fuel system. Do not add anything to E85. Damage caused by additives would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel might be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

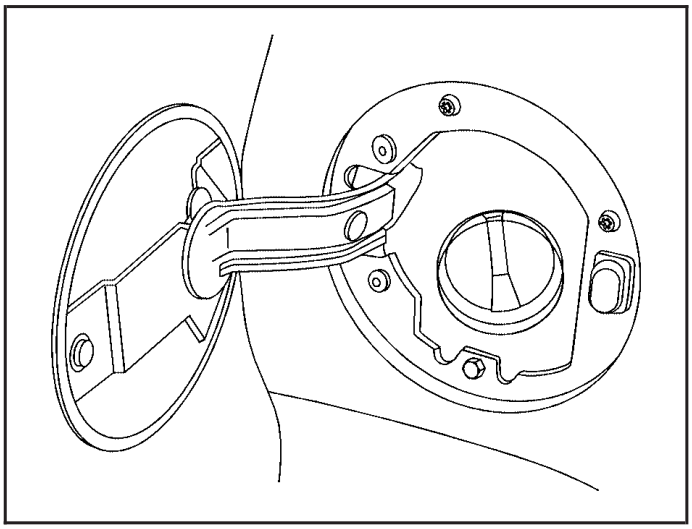
To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Filling the Tank

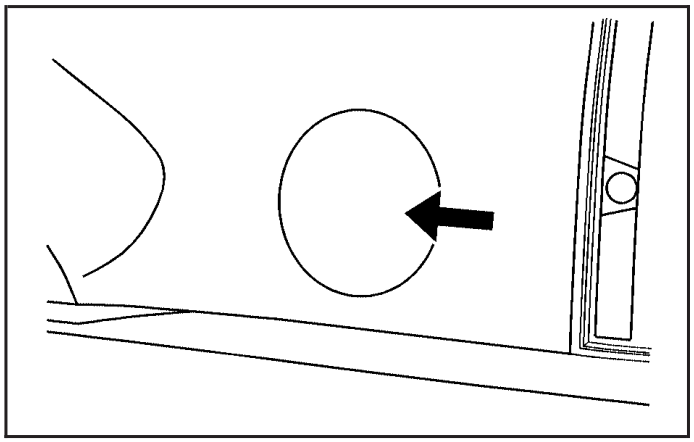
⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off the engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling the vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling the vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver side of the vehicle. If the vehicle has E85 fuel capability, the fuel cap will be yellow and state that E85 or gasoline can be used. See *Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) on page 6-7*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To open the fuel door, push the rearward center edge in and release and it will open.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise. The fuel cap has a spring in it; if the cap is released too soon, it will spring back to the right.

While refueling, hang the tethered fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 6-100*.

When replacing the fuel cap, insert the tether in its hole before tightening the cap. Turn the fuel cap clockwise until it clicks. It will require more effort to turn the fuel cap on the last turn as you tighten it. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the vehicle has a Driver Information Center (DIC), the TIGHTEN GAS CAP message displays if the fuel cap is not properly installed.

⚠ CAUTION:

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer/retailer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*.**

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking Things Under the Hood

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

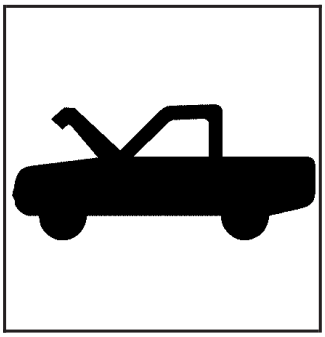
⚠ CAUTION:

Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

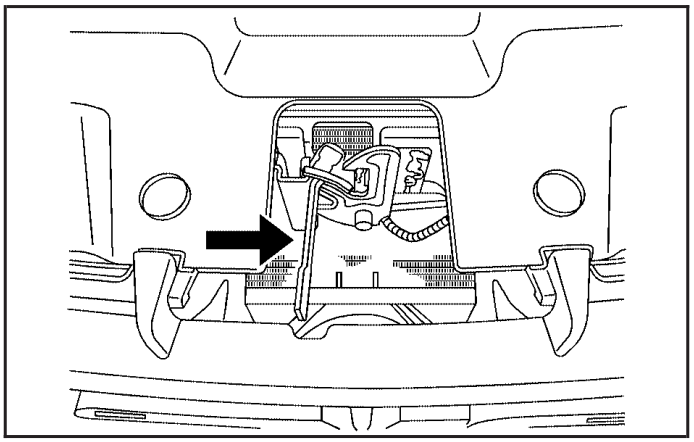
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hood Release

To open the hood:



1. Pull the handle with this symbol on it. It is located inside the vehicle to the lower left of the steering wheel.



2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and locate the secondary hood release, near the center of the grille.
3. Push the secondary hood release to the right.
4. Lift the hood.

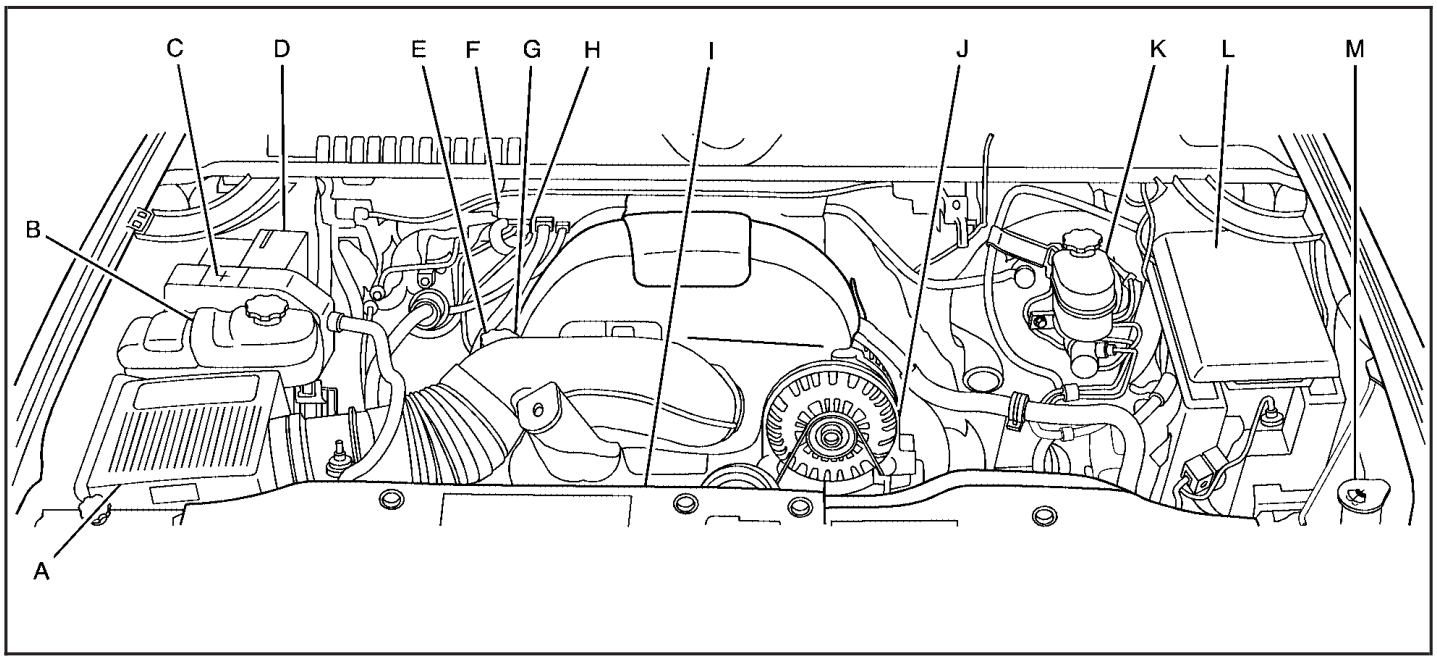
   Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then bring the hood from full open to within 6 inches (152 mm) from the closed position, pause, then push the front center of the hood with a swift, firm motion to fully close the hood.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Overview

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

When you open the hood on the 6.2L engine this is what you will see:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 6-19*.

B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 6-24*.

C. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 6-40*.

D. *Battery on page 6-39*.

E. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 6-15*.

F. Automatic Transmission Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 6-20*.

G. Remote Negative (–) Terminal (GND) (Out of View). See *Jump Starting on page 6-40*.

H. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 6-15*.

I. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 6-24*.

J. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (Out of View). See *Power Steering Fluid on page 6-33*.

K. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 6-36*.

L. *Underhood Fuse Block on page 6-109*.

M. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 6-34*.

Engine Oil

Checking Engine Oil

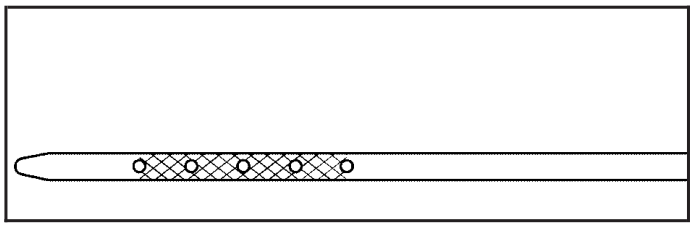
It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

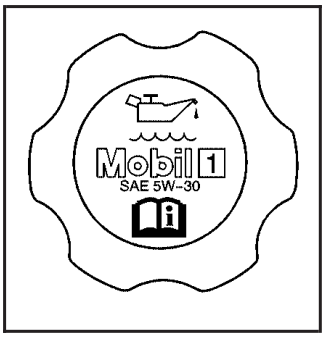
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When to Add Engine Oil



If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add at least one quart/liter of the recommended oil. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 6-113*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.**



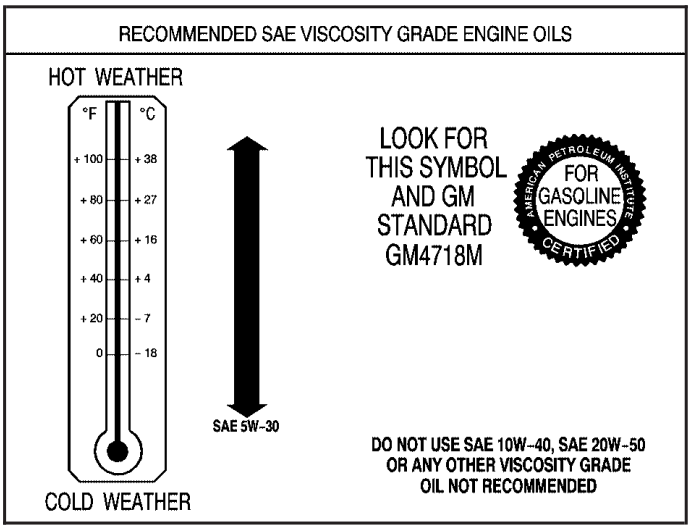
See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

Look for three things:



- GM4718M

  This vehicle's engine requires a special oil meeting GM Standard GM4718M. Oils meeting this standard may be identified as synthetic. However, not all synthetic oils will meet this GM standard. Use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM4718M.

Notice: **Using oils that do not have the GM4718M Standard designation can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.**

- SAE 5W-30

  SAE 5W-30 is best for the vehicle. These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

- American Petroleum Institute (API) starburst symbol

Oils meeting these requirements should have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

This vehicle's engine was filled at the factory with a Mobil 1® synthetic oil meeting all requirements for this vehicle.

Substitute Engine Oil: When adding oil to maintain engine oil level, oil meeting GM Standard GM4718M might not be available. You can add substitute oil designated SAE 5W-30 with the starburst symbol at all temperatures. Substitute oil not meeting GM Standard GM4718M should not be used for an oil change.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil Additives / Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM standards are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service people who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change the engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Whenever the oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where the oil is changed prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message being turned on, reset the system.

Always reset the engine oil life to 100% after every oil change. It will not reset itself. To reset the Engine Oil Life System:

1. Display the OIL LIFE REMAINING on the DIC.
2. Press and hold the SET/RESET button on the DIC for more than five seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the Engine Oil Life System has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

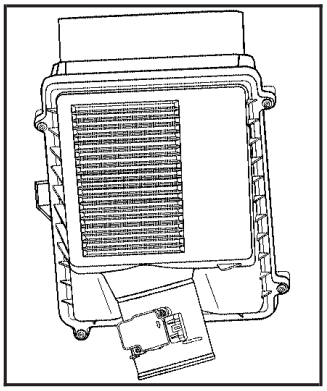
See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter.

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 50,000 mile (80 000 km) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4* for more information. If driving on dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

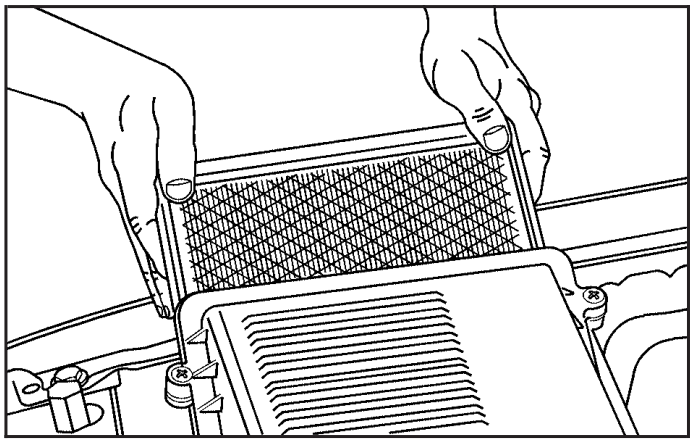
To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the vehicle by following Steps 1 through 6. When the engine air cleaner/filter is removed, lightly shake it to release loose dust and dirt. If the engine air cleaner/filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required.

Replacing the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



1. Locate the air cleaner/filter assembly. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14*.
2. Loosen the four screws on the cover of the housing and lift up the cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the housing. Care should be taken to dislodge as little dirt as possible.
4. Clean the engine air cleaner/filter sealing surfaces and the housing.
5. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
6. Reinstall the cover and tighten the screws.

⚠ CAUTION:

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is usually not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. The only reason for fluid loss is a transmission leak or overheating the transmission. If you suspect a small leak, then use the following checking procedures to check the fluid level. However, if there is a large leak, then it may be necessary to have the vehicle towed to a dealer/retailer service department and have it repaired before driving the vehicle further.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.**

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in the Maintenance Schedule. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4*. Be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.**

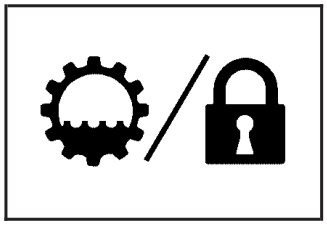
Before checking the fluid level, prepare the vehicle as follows:

1. Start the engine and park the vehicle on a level surface. Keep the engine running.
2. Apply the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (Park).
3. With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, move the shift lever back to P (Park).
4. Allow the engine to idle (500 – 800 rpm) for at least one minute. Slowly release the brake pedal.
5. Keep the engine running and press the Trip/Fuel button or trip odometer reset stem until TRANS TEMP (Transmission Temperature) displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC).
6. Using the TRANS TEMP reading, determine and perform the appropriate check procedure. If the TRANS TEMP reading is not within the required temperature ranges, allow the vehicle to cool, or operate the vehicle until the appropriate transmission fluid temperature is reached.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cold Check Procedure

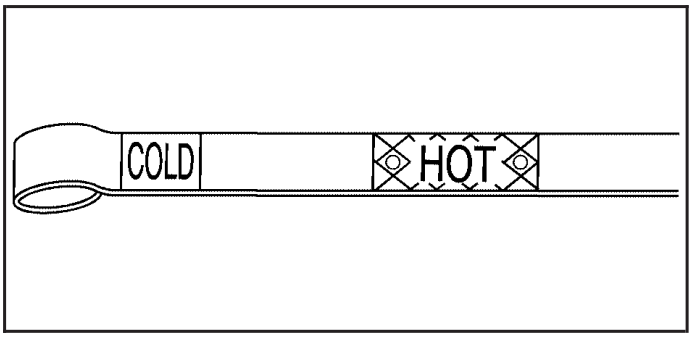
Use this procedure only as a reference to determine if the transmission has enough fluid to be operated safely until a hot check procedure can be made. The hot check procedure is the most accurate method to check the fluid level. Perform the hot check procedure at the first opportunity. Use this cold check procedure to check fluid level when the transmission temperature is between 80°F and 90°F (27°C and 32°C).



1. Locate the transmission dipstick at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger side of the vehicle.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for more information.

2. Flip the handle up and then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
3. Install the dipstick by pushing it back in all the way, wait three seconds, and then pull it back out again.
4. Check both sides of the dipstick and read the lower level. Repeat the check procedure to verify the reading.



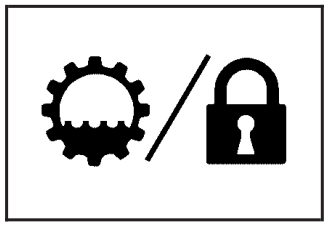
5. If the fluid level is below the COLD check band, add only enough fluid as necessary to bring the level into the COLD band. It does not take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5L). Do not overfill.
6. Perform a hot check at the first opportunity after the transmission reaches a normal operating temperature between 160°F to 200°F (71°C to 93°C).
7. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way, then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hot Check Procedure

Use this procedure to check the transmission fluid level when the transmission fluid temperature is between 160°F and 200°F (71°C and 93°C).

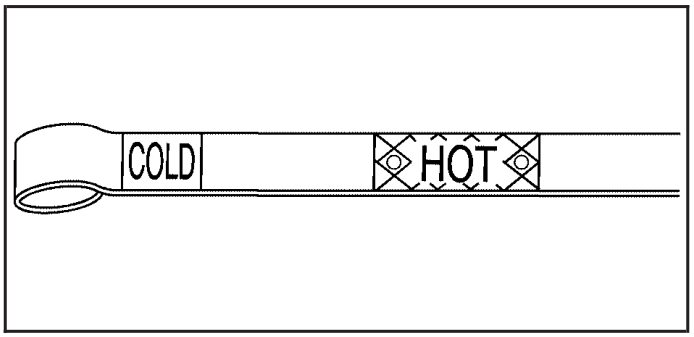
The hot check is the most accurate method to check the fluid level. The hot check should be performed at the first opportunity in order to verify the cold check. The fluid level rises as fluid temperature increases, so it is important to ensure the transmission temperature is within range.



1. Locate the transmission dipstick at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger side of the vehicle.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for more information.

2. Flip the handle up and then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
3. Install the dipstick by pushing it back in all the way, wait three seconds, and then pull it back out again.
4. Check both sides of the dipstick and read the lower level. Repeat the check procedure to verify the reading.



5. Safe operating level is within the HOT cross hatch band on the dipstick. If the fluid level is not within the HOT band, and the transmission temperature is between 160°F and 200°F (71°C and 93°C), add or drain fluid as necessary to bring the level into the HOT band. If the fluid level is low, add only enough fluid to bring the level into the HOT band. It does not take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5L). Do not overfill.
6. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way, then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

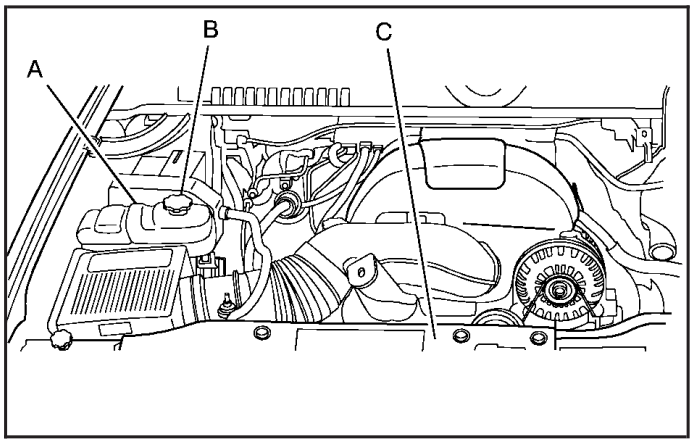
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Consistency of Readings

Always check the fluid level at least twice using the procedures described. Consistency (repeatable readings) is important to maintaining proper fluid level. If fluid is added, it may take 15 minutes or longer to obtain an accurate reading because of residual fluid draining down the dipstick tube. If inconsistent readings persist, check the transmission breather to be sure it is clean and not clogged. If readings are still inconsistent, contact your dealer/retailer.

Cooling System

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



A. Coolant Surge Tank
B. Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap
C. Engine Cooling Fan(s)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 50 000 km (30,000 miles) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.**

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in the vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 6-30*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Use

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to –34°F (–37°C), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Notice: **If an improper coolant mixture is used, the engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

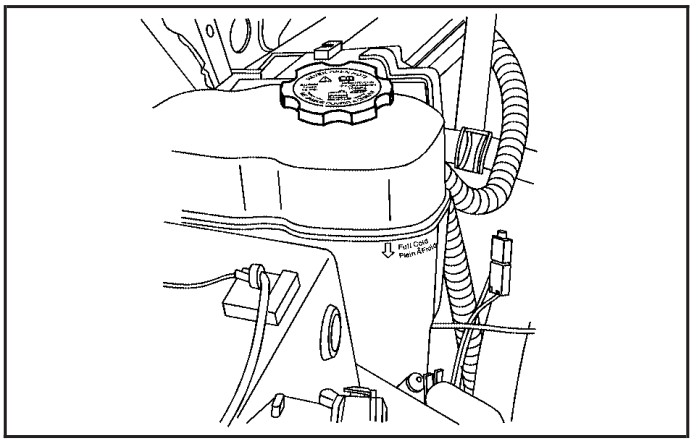
Notice: **If extra inhibitors and/or additives are used in the vehicle's cooling system, the vehicle could be damaged. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13* for more information.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.



The coolant surge tank is located in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for more information on location.

The coolant level should be at or above the FULL COLD mark. If it is not, you may have a leak in the cooling system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Add Coolant to the Surge Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Notice: **This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.**

⚠ CAUTION:

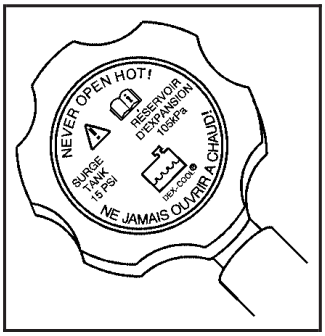
An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

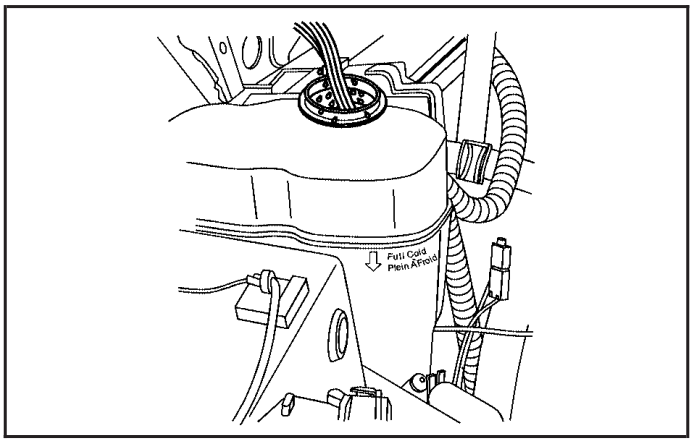
If no coolant is visible in the surge tank, add coolant as follows:



1. You can remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

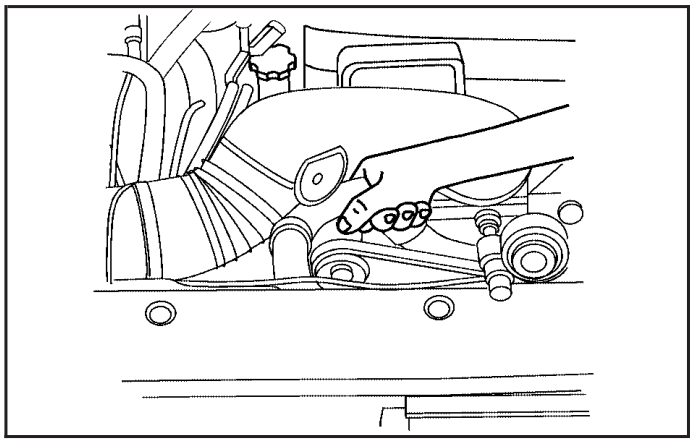
   Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one full turn. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.

2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it.



3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture to the FULL COLD mark.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the FULL COLD mark.

5. Replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight and fully seated.
6. Verify coolant level after engine is shut off and the coolant is cold. If necessary, repeat coolant fill procedure Steps 1 through 6.

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has several indicators to warn of engine overheating.

There is a coolant temperature gage on your vehicle's instrument panel. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-41*.

In addition, ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE, ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE, and a ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED message comes on in the Driver Information Center (DIC) on the instrument panel. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You may decide not to lift the hood when this warning appears, but instead get service help right away. See *Roadside Service on page 8-7*.

If you do decide to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans should be running. If they are not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by your warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 6-33* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

Notice: **If the engine catches fire while driving with no coolant, the vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 6-33* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

If Steam Is Coming From The Engine Compartment

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when the vehicles engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 6-33* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If No Steam Is Coming From The Engine Compartment

The ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE or the ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE message, along with a low coolant condition, can indicate a serious problem.

If you get an engine overheat warning, but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer. See *Towing a Trailer on page 5-44*.

If you get the ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE or the ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE message with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in N (Neutral) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) and let the engine idle.

If the temperature overheat gage is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slow for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the car in front of you. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for five minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down. Also, see “Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode” later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

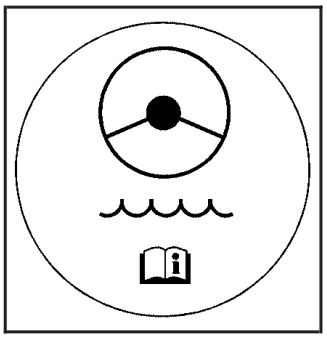
If an overheated engine condition exists and the ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED message is displayed, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a loss in power and engine performance. This operating mode allows the vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

Notice: **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 6-15*.**

Engine Fan Noise

The vehicle has electric cooling fans. You might hear the fans spinning at low speed during most everyday driving. The fans can turn off if no cooling is required. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, and/or high outside temperatures, or if you are operating the air conditioning system, the fans can change to high speed and you might hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and indicates that the cooling system is functioning properly. The fans change to low speed when additional cooling is no longer required.

Power Steering Fluid



See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for reservoir location.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be at the FULL COLD mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the mark.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*. Always use the proper fluid.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.**

Windshield Washer Fluid

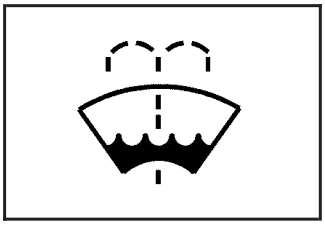
What to Use

When windshield washer fluid needs to be added, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. Use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Washer Fluid

The vehicle has a low washer fluid message in the DIC that comes on when the washer fluid is low. The message is displayed for 15 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle. When the WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message displays, you will need to add washer fluid to the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for reservoir location.

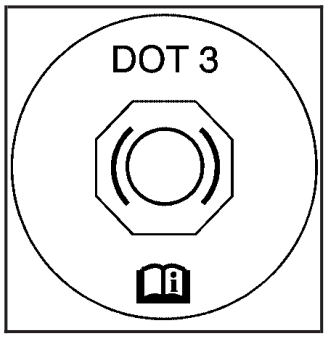
Notice:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage the vehicle's windshield washer system and paint.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brakes

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

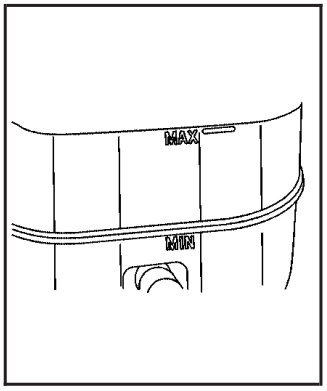
If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See “Checking Brake Fluid” in this section.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check the brake fluid. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4*.

Checking Brake Fluid

Check brake fluid by looking at the brake fluid reservoir. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14*.



The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not, have the brake hydraulic system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the MIN but not over the MAX mark.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Add

Use only new DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 6-100*.**

Brake Wear

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 6-113*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer/retailer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every brake stop, the disc brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts.

When parts of the braking system are replaced — for example, when the brake linings wear down and new ones are installed — be sure to get new approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for the vehicle, the balance between the front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Battery

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

This vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, see your dealer/retailer for one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for battery location.

Warning: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Storage

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 6-40* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: If the vehicle is driven infrequently, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This helps keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: For extended storage of the vehicle, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger. This helps maintain the charge of the battery over an extended period of time.

Jump Starting

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

If the vehicle's battery (or batteries) has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the warranty.**

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in Neutral before setting the parking brake. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear, not in Neutral.

Notice: **If you leave the radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Always turn off the radio and other accessories when jump starting the vehicle.**

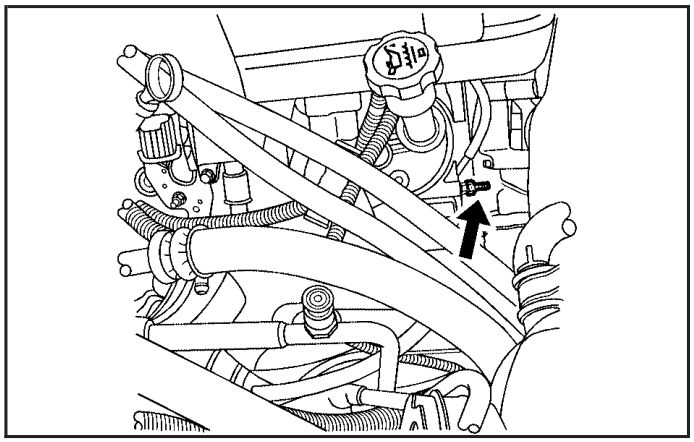
3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all the lamps that are not needed. This avoids sparks and helps save both batteries. And it could save the radio!

4. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations on that vehicle.

   Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) jump starting terminal and a remote negative (–) jump starting terminal. You should always use these remote terminals instead of the terminals on the battery.

   If the vehicle has a remote positive (+) terminal, it is located under a red plastic cover at the positive battery post. To uncover the remote positive (+) terminal, open the red plastic cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The remote negative (-) terminal is a stud located on the right front of the engine, where the negative battery cable attaches.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 6-14* for more information on the location of the remote positive (+) and remote negative (–) terminals.

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

CAUTION: (Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION: (Continued)

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

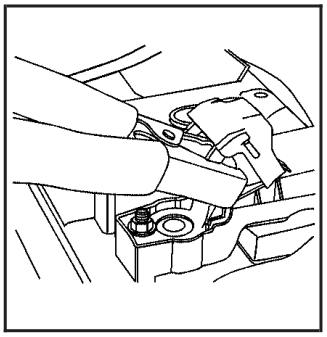
⚠ CAUTION:

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (–) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.



6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

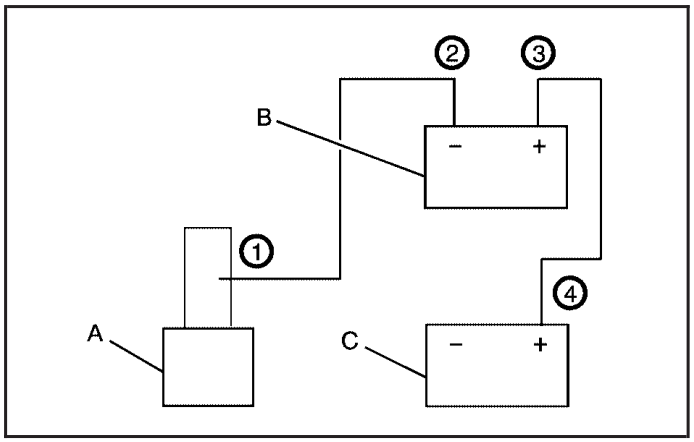
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to the remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.
9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable to the remote negative (–) terminal, on the vehicle with the dead battery.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal
B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (–) Terminals
C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the bad battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the remote positive (+) terminal cover, if the vehicle has one, to its original position.

All-Wheel Drive

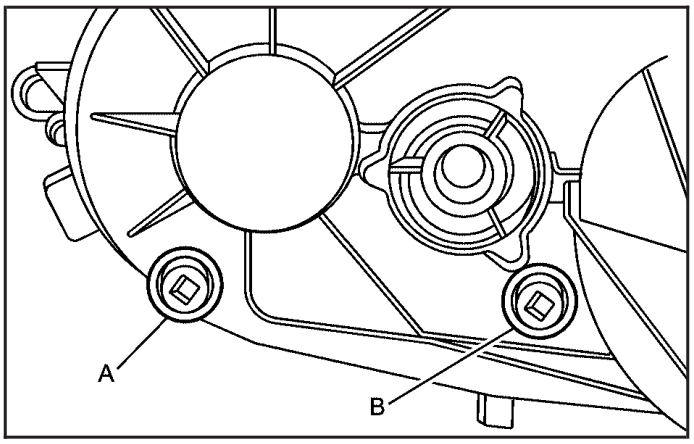
Transfer Case

If your vehicle is equipped with All-Wheel Drive, be sure to perform the lubricant checks described in this section. There are two additional systems that need lubrication.

When to Check Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4*.

How to Check Lubricant



(A) Drain Plug (B) Filler Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the transfer case, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.

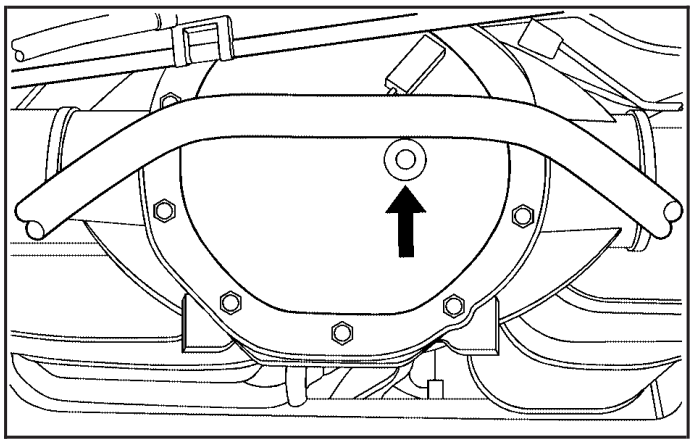
Rear Axle

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check rear axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

All axle assemblies are filled by volume of fluid during production. They are not filled to reach a certain level. When checking the fluid level on any axle, variations in the readings can be caused by factory fill differences between the minimum and the maximum fluid volume. Also, if a vehicle has just been driven before checking the fluid level, it may appear lower than normal because fluid has traveled out along the axle tubes and has not drained back to the sump area. Therefore, a reading taken five minutes after the vehicle has been driven will appear to have a lower fluid level than a vehicle that has been stationary for an hour or two. Remember that the rear axle assembly must be supported to get a true reading.

How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

- For Two-Wheel-Drive vehicles, the proper level is from 0.6 inch to 1.6 inches (15 mm to 40 mm) below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.
- For All-Wheel-Drive vehicles, the proper level is from 0.04 inch to 0.75 inch (1.0 mm to 19.0 mm) below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.

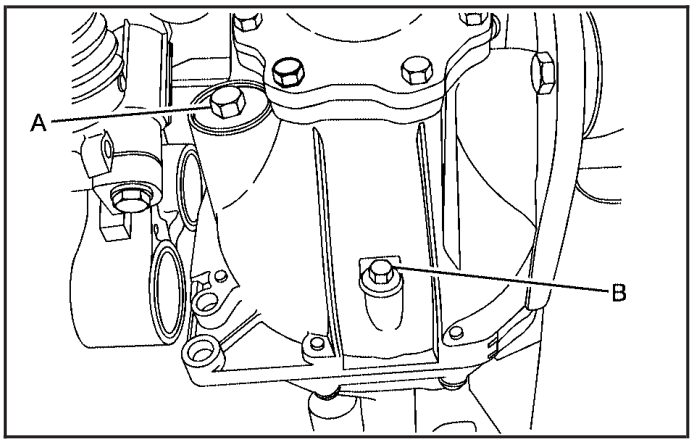
Front Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check front axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.



A: Fill Plug

B: Drain Plug

- When the differential is cold, add enough lubricant to raise the level from 0 (0 mm) to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) below the filler plug hole.
- When the differential is at operating temperature (warm), add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.

Headlamp Aiming

The vehicle has a visual optical headlamp aiming system. The aim of the headlamps have been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment.

However, if the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the aim of the headlamps may be affected and adjustment may be necessary.

If oncoming vehicles flash their high beams at you, this may mean the vertical aim of your headlamps needs to be adjusted.

It is recommended that the vehicle is taken to your dealer/retailer for service if the headlamps need to be adjusted. It is possible however, to re-aim the headlamps as described.

The vehicle should:

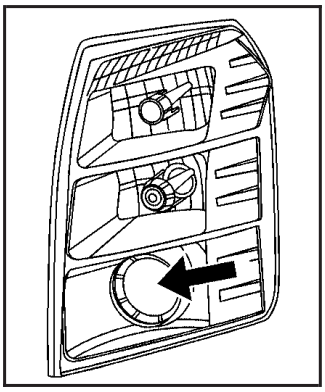
- Be placed so the headlamps are 25 ft. (7.6 m) from a light colored wall or other flat surface.
- Have all four tires on a level surface which is level all the way to the wall or other flat surface.
- Be placed so it is perpendicular to the wall or other flat surface.
- Not have any snow, ice, or mud on it.
- Be fully assembled and all other work stopped while headlamp aiming is being performed.
- Be normally loaded with a full tank of fuel and one person or 160 lbs (75 kg) sitting on the driver seat.
- Have the tires properly inflated.
- Have the spare tire is in its proper location in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlamp aiming is done with the vehicle's low-beam headlamps. The high-beam headlamps will be correctly aimed if the low-beam headlamps are aimed properly.

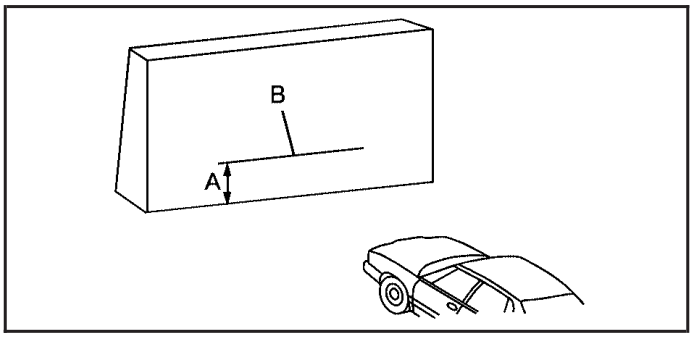
To adjust the vertical aim:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 6-13* for more information.



2. Locate the center of the projector lens of the low-beam headlamp.

3. Record the distance from the ground to the center of the projector lens of the low-beam headlamp.

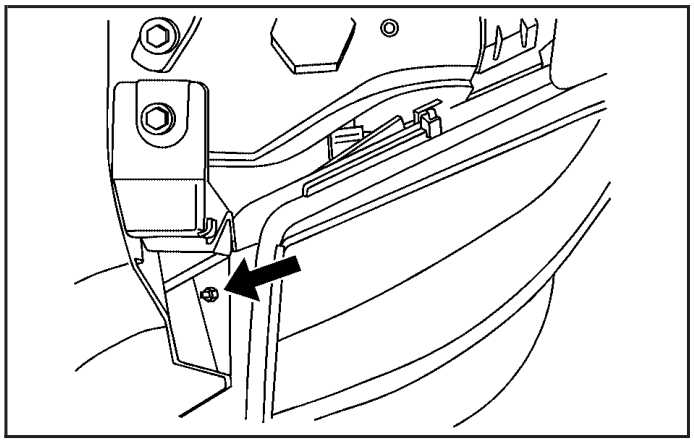


4. At a wall, measure from the ground upward (A) to the recorded distance from Step 3 and mark it.
5. Draw or tape a horizontal line (B) on the wall the width of the vehicle at the height of the mark in Step 4.

Notice: **Do not cover a headlamp to improve beam cut-off when aiming. Covering a headlamp may cause excessive heat build-up which may cause damage to the headlamp.**

6. Turn on the low-beam headlamps and place a piece of cardboard or equivalent in front of the headlamp not being adjusted. This allows only the beam of light from the headlamp being adjusted to be seen on the flat surface.

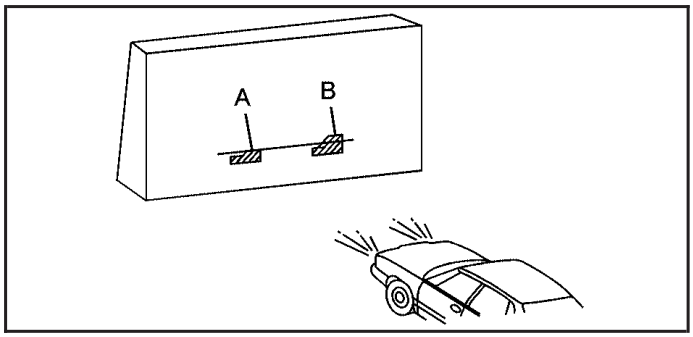
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



7. Locate the vertical headlamp aiming screws, which are under the hood near each headlamp assembly.

   The adjustment screw can be turned with a E8 Torx® socket.

8. Turn the vertical aiming screw until the headlamp beam is aimed to the horizontal tape line. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise to raise or lower the angle of the beam.



9. Make sure that the light from the headlamp is positioned at the bottom edge of the horizontal tape line. The lamp on the left (A) shows the correct headlamp aim. The lamp on the right (B) shows the incorrect headlamp aim.
10. Repeat Steps 7 through 9 for the opposite headlamp.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 6-53*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer/retailer.

High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

⚠ CAUTION:

The low beam high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer/retailer or a qualified technician service them.

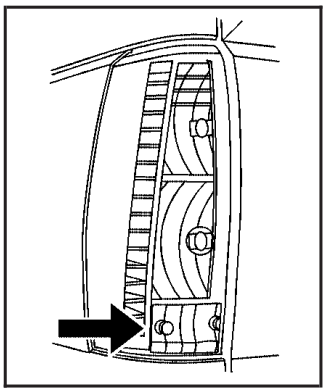
The vehicle may have HID headlamps. After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, you may notice that the beam is a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

LED Lighting

The vehicle may have LED headlamps. For replacement of the LED lighting assembly contact your dealer/retailer.

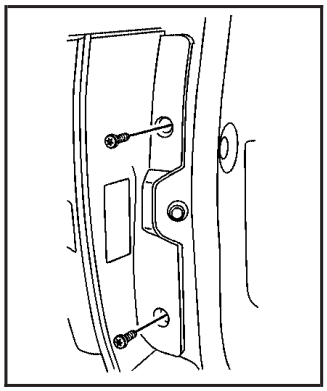
Back-Up Lamps

To replace this bulb:



1. Open the liftgate. See *Power Liftgate on page 2-14* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

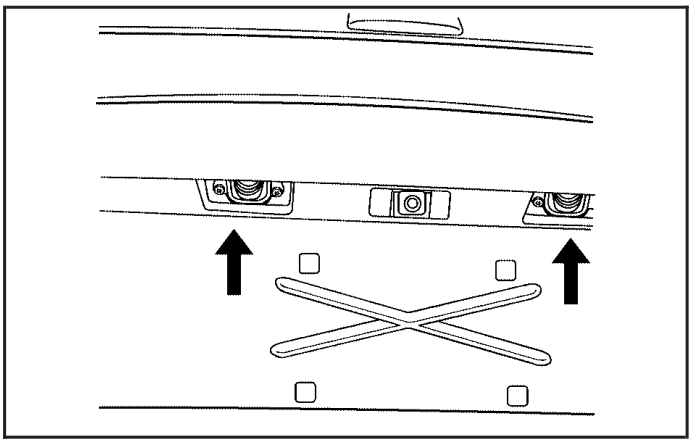


2. Remove the two screws from the taillamp assembly.
3. Pull the taillamp assembly rearward until you disengage the inner pins on the taillamp assembly from the vehicle.
4. Press the release tab, if the bulb socket has one, and turn the socket counterclockwise to remove it from the taillamp assembly.
5. Pull the old bulb straight out from the socket.
6. Press a new bulb into the socket, insert the socket into the taillamp assembly and turn the socket clockwise into the taillamp assembly until it clicks.
7. Reinstall the taillamp assembly. When reinstalling, make sure to line up the pins on the taillamp assembly with the vehicle. If you do not line up the pins correctly, you will not be able install the taillamp assembly properly.

If you need to replace the taillamp, stoplamp, or turn signal, you will need to see your dealer/retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

License Plate Lamp



1. Remove the two screws holding each of the license plate lamps to the molding that is part of the liftgate.
2. Twist and pull the license plate lamp forward through the molding opening.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
4. Install the new bulb.
5. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to reinstall the license plate lamp.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-up Lamp	7440
License Plate Lamp	W5W

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer/retailer.

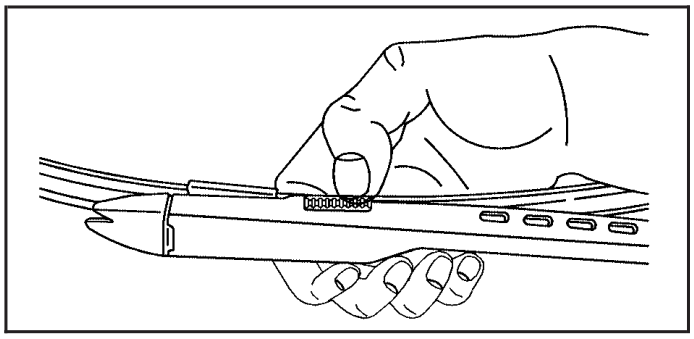
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

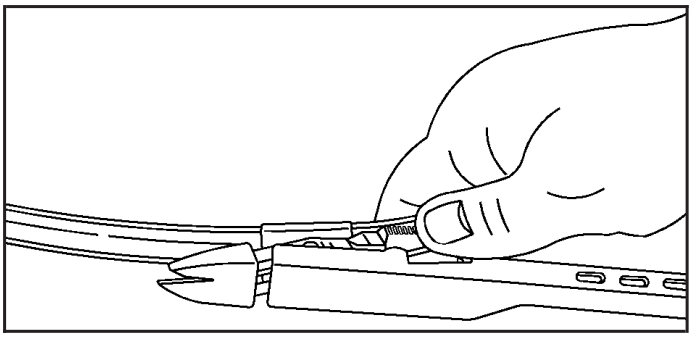
Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear or cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4*.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. To replace the wiper blade assembly:

1. Pull the windshield wiper arm connector away from the windshield.



2. Squeeze the grooved areas on each side of the blade, and turn the blade assembly away from the arm connector.



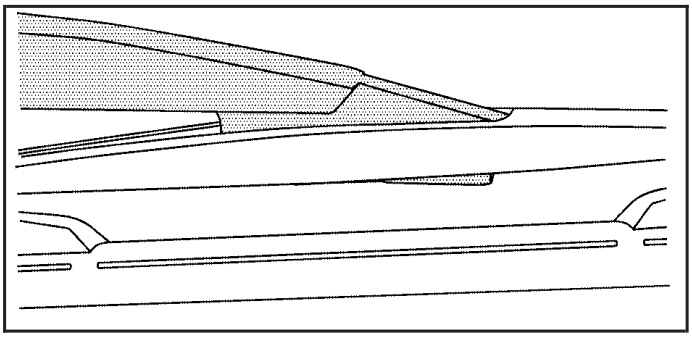
3. Install the new blade onto the arm connector and make sure the grooved areas are fully set in the locked position.

For the proper type and size, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 7-15*.

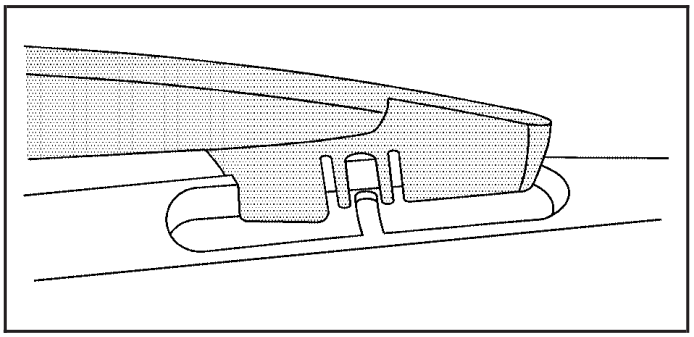
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Backglass Wiper Blade Replacement

1. Lift the wiper blade assembly up and out of the park rest position.



2. Pull the wiper blade assembly away from the backglass. The backglass wiper blade will not lock in a vertical position, so care should be used when pulling it away from the vehicle.
3. Turn the wiper blade assembly, and pull it off of the wiper arm. Hold the wiper arm in position and push the blade away from the wiper arm.



4. Replace the wiper blade.
5. Return the wiper blade assembly to the park rest position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your vehicle Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ CAUTION:

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.
- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62*.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.

See *High-Speed Operation on page 6-63* for inflation pressure adjustment for high speed driving.

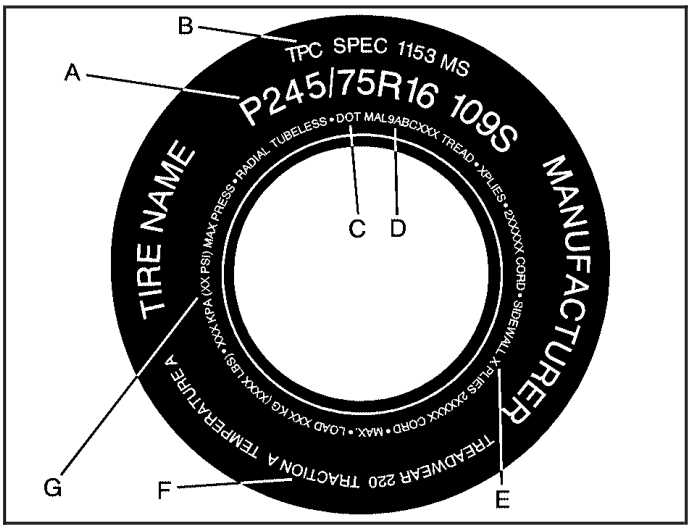
22-Inch Tires

If your vehicle has the optional 22-inch P285/45R22 size tires, they are classified as touring tires and are designed for on-road use. The low-profile, wide tread design is not recommended for off-road driving. See *Off-Road Driving on page 5-13*, for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into the sidewall. The following illustration is an example of a typical P-Metric tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire

(A) Tire Size: The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

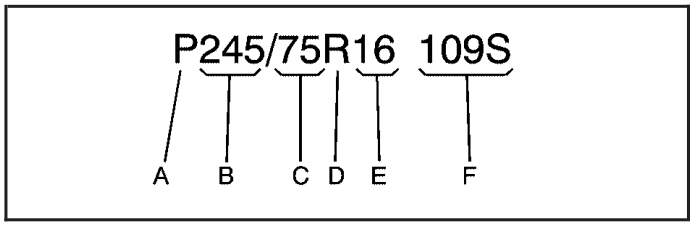
(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information, see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 6-73*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Tire Size

The following examples show the different parts of a tire size.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire

(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 75, as shown in item C of the light truck (LT-Metric) tire illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 75% as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carry capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62*.

Curb Weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 6-70*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 6-73*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inflation - Tire Pressure

If your vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Premature or irregular wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Reduced fuel economy**

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to your vehicle. This label shows your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they are cold. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*. How you load your vehicle affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load your vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more.

Do not forget to check the pressure of the spare tire. See *Spare Tire on page 6-96* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are underinflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

High-Speed Operation

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving at high speeds, 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher, puts an additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build up and can cause sudden tire failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

If your vehicle has P265/65R18 or P285/45R22 size tires and you will be driving at high speeds, speeds of 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher, set the cold inflation pressure to 3 psi (20 kPa) above the recommended tire pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information Label. When you end this high-speed driving, return the tires to the cold inflation pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 6-65* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry and Science Canada

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vehicles with TPMS operate on a radio frequency and comply with RSS-210 of Industry and Science Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

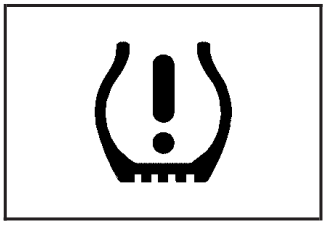
1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

If your vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the vehicle's tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument panel cluster.

At the same time a message to check the pressure in a specific tire appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed by the driver. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as you start to drive. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure in the tire(s) are getting low and need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62*.

Your vehicle's TPMS can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 6-69* and *Tires on page 6-56*.

Notice: **Liquid tire sealants could damage the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors. Sensor damage caused by using a tire sealant is not covered by your warranty. Do not use liquid tire sealants.**

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message is also displayed. The low tire warning light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause the malfunction light and DIC message to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The TPMS malfunction light and DIC message should go off once you re-install the road tire containing the TPMS sensor.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was started but not completed or not completed successfully after rotating the vehicle's tires. The DIC message and TPMS malfunction light should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the TPMS malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer/retailer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match your vehicle's original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended for your vehicle could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 6-71*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer/retailer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you rotate your vehicle's tires or replace one or more of the TPMS sensors, the identification codes will need to be matched to the new tire/wheel position. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear tire using a TPMS diagnostic tool. See your dealer/retailer for service.

The TPMS sensors can also be matched to each tire/wheel position by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. If increasing the tire's air pressure, do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure indicated on the tire's sidewall.

To decrease air-pressure out of a tire you can use the pointed end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage, or a key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You have two minutes to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer than two minutes, to match the first tire and wheel, or more than five minutes to match all four tire and wheel positions the matching process stops and you need to start over.

The TPMS sensor matching process is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Press the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter's LOCK and UNLOCK buttons at the same time for approximately five seconds. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.
4. Start with the driver side front tire.
5. Remove the valve cap from the valve cap stem. Activate the TPMS sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for five seconds, or until a horn chirp sounds. The horn chirp, which may take up to 30 seconds to sound, confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
6. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
9. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

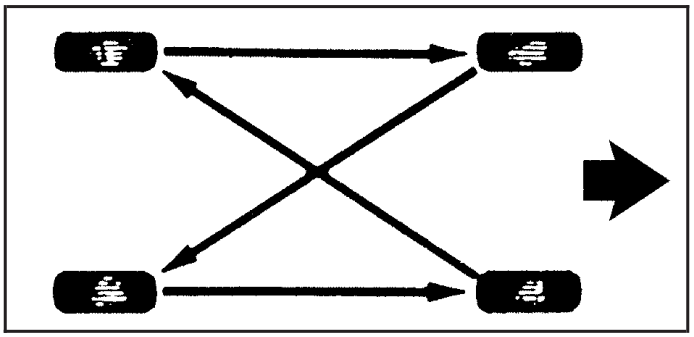
Tire Inspection and Rotation

We recommend that you regularly inspect your vehicle's tires, including the spare tire, for signs of wear or damage. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 6-70* for more information.

Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4*.

The purpose of a regular tire rotation is to achieve a uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. This will ensure that your vehicle continues to perform most like it did when the tires were new.

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 6-70* and *Wheel Replacement on page 6-75*.



When rotating your vehicle's tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the spare tire in the tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 6-65*.

Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 6-113*.

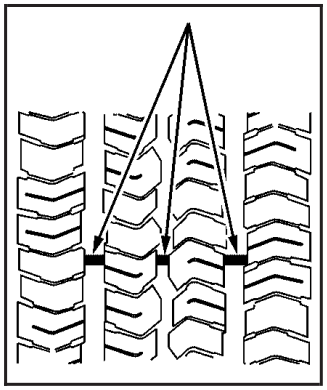
⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 6-78*.

Make sure the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, tighten the cable. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 6-92*.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Various factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions, influence when you need new tires.



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You need new tires if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

The rubber in tires degrades over time, even if they are not being used. This is also true for the spare tire, if your vehicle has one. Multiple conditions affect how fast this aging takes place, including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance. With proper care and maintenance tires will typically wear out before they degrade due to age. If you are unsure about the need to replace your tires as they get older, consult the tire manufacturer for more information.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 6-57* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GM recommends replacing tires in sets of four. This is because uniform tread depth on all tires will help keep your vehicle performing most like it did when the tires were new. Replacing less than a full set of tires can affect the braking and handling performance of your vehicle. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 6-69* for information on proper tire rotation.

⚠ CAUTION:

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes, brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle might not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes, brands, or types could also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size, brand, and type tires on all wheels.

Your vehicle may have a different size spare than the road tires (those originally installed on your vehicle). When new, your vehicle included a spare tire and wheel assembly with a similar overall diameter as your vehicle's road tires and wheels, so it is all right to drive on it. Because this spare was developed for use on your vehicle, it will not affect vehicle handling.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you use bias-ply tires on the vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system may give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC spec rated tires are installed on your vehicle. Non-TPC Spec rated tires may give a low-pressure warning that is higher or lower than the proper warning level you would get with TPC Spec rated tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 6-64*.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information Label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*, for more information about the Tire and Loading Information Label and its location on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this could affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as anti-lock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 6-71* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 6-3* for additional information.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. It should be noted that the temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling to one side or the other, the alignment might need to be checked. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer/retailer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer/retailer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer/retailer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, and TPMS sensors for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 6-78* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on the vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on the vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to the vehicle, drive slowly, re-adjust or remove the device if it is contacting the vehicle, and do not spin the wheels. If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing a Flat Tire

If your vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

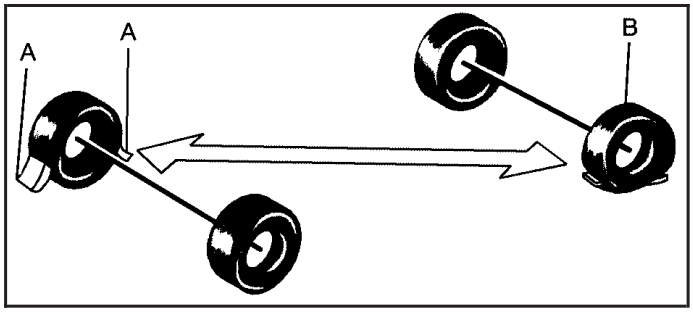
1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put the shift lever in P (Park).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, you should put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire, on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (B), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (A).



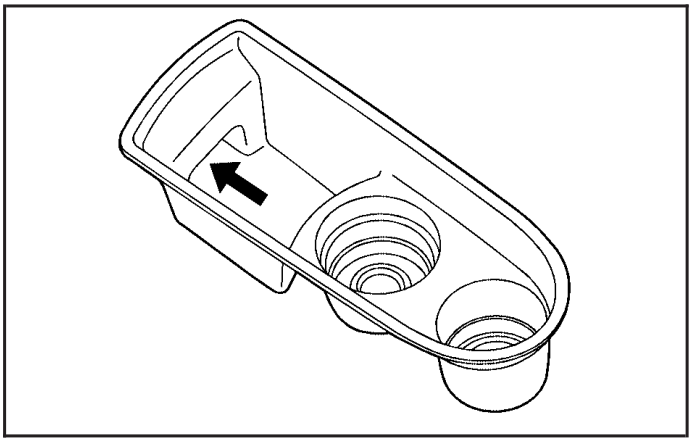
A. Wheel Block
B. Flat Tire

The following information explains how to use the jack and change a tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

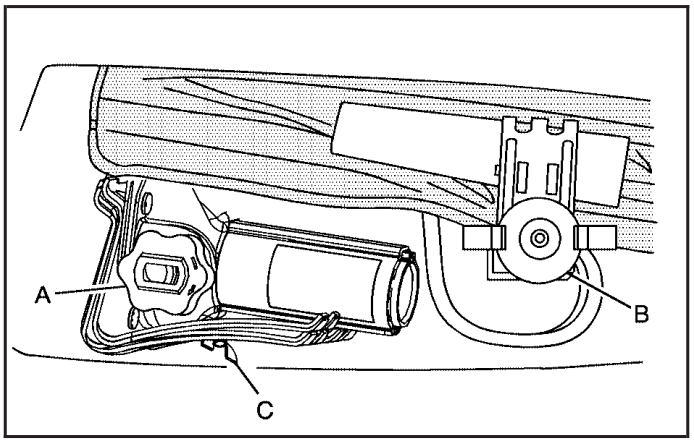
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

The equipment you will need is stored under the storage tray, which is located on the driver's side trim panel (over the rear wheelhouse).



**Regular Wheelbase shown,
Extended Wheelbase similar.**

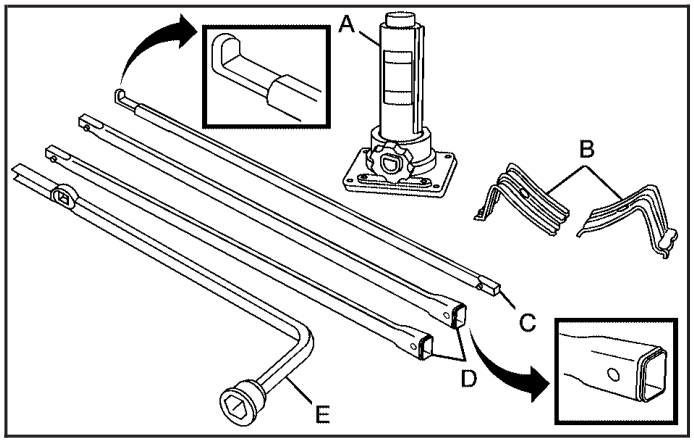
1. Remove the tray to access the tools by pulling up on the finger depression under the jack symbol.



2. Remove the wing nut (B) used to retain the tool bag by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Turn the knob (A) on the jack counterclockwise to release the jack and wheel blocks from the bracket.
4. Remove the wheel blocks and the wheel block retainer by turning the wing nut (C) counterclockwise.

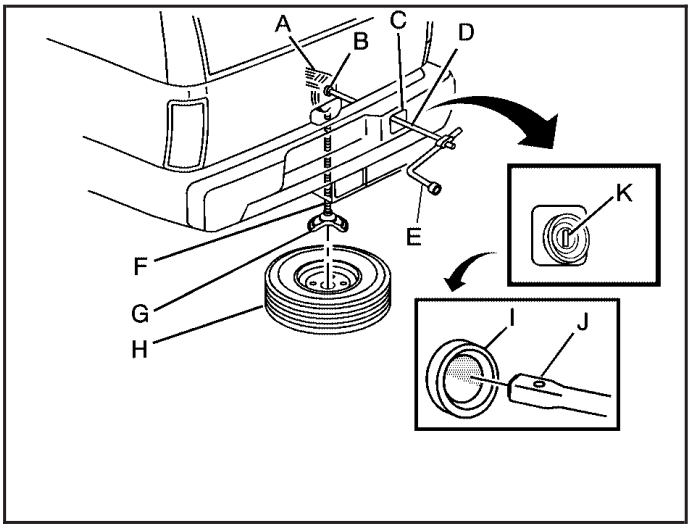
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The tools you will be using include the following:



A. Jack
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Jack Handle
D. Jack Handle Extensions
E. Wheel Wrench

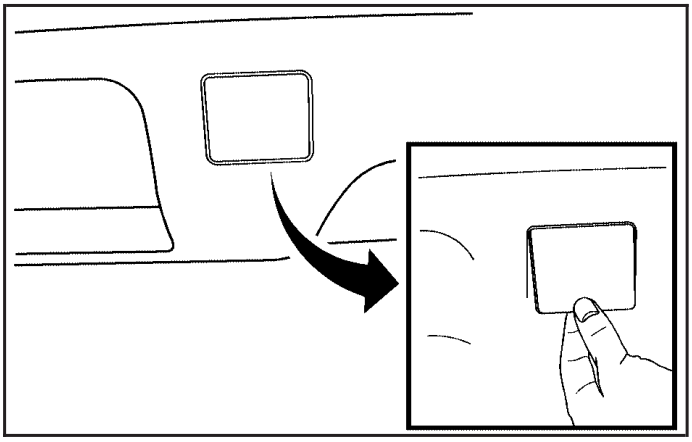
To access the spare tire:



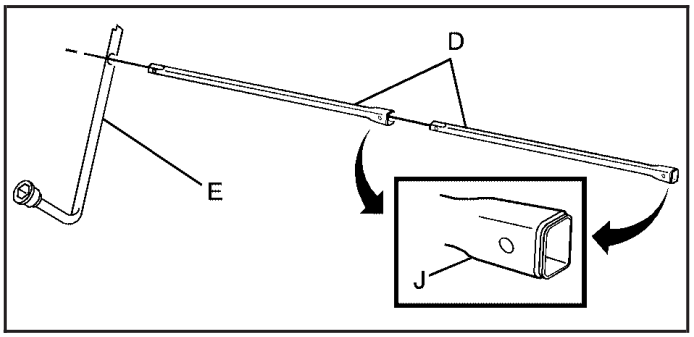
A. Hoist Assembly
B. Hoist Shaft
C. Hoist Shaft Access Cover/Hole
D. Jack Handle Extensions
E. Wheel Wrench
F. Hoist Cable
G. Tire/Wheel Retainer
H. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Down)
I. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
J. Hoist End of Extension Tool
K. Spare Tire Lock

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. To reach the hoist shaft access cover (C), you will first need to remove the hitch cover. Remove it by turning the two fasteners located at the bottom of the cover counterclockwise and then pull the cover down and rotate towards you.

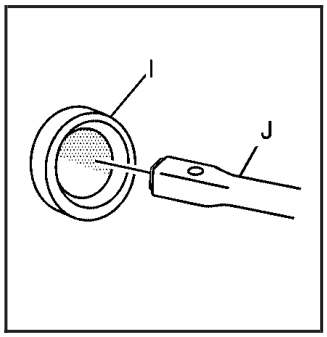


2. Open the hoist shaft access cover (C) on the bumper to access the spare tire lock (K).
3. To remove the spare tire lock insert the ignition key, turn it clockwise and then pull the lock out.



4. Assemble the two jack handle extensions (D) and wheel wrench (E) as shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

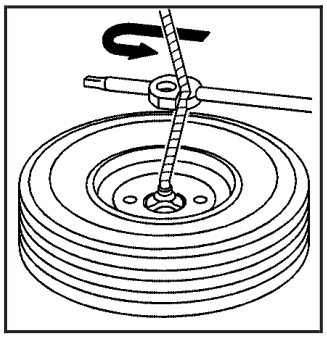


5. Insert the open end of the extension (J) through the hole in the rear bumper (I) (hoist shaft access hole).

   Be sure the hoist end (J) of the extension (D) connects to the hoist shaft (B). The ribbed square end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.

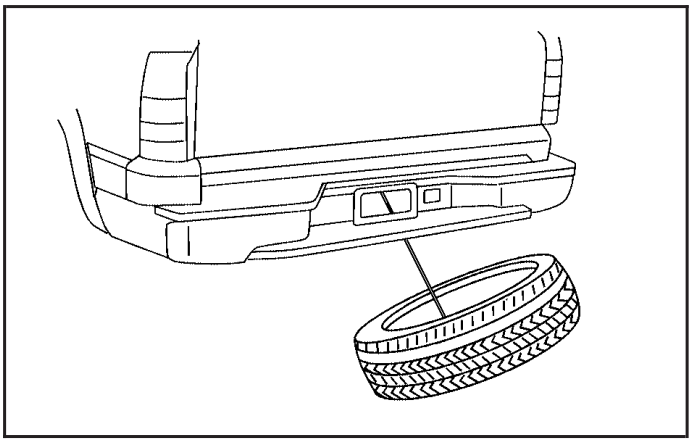
6. Turn the wheel wrench (E) counterclockwise to lower the spare tire (H) to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.

   If the spare tire does not lower to the ground, the secondary latch is engaged causing the tire not to lower. See *Secondary Latch System on page 6-89* for more information.

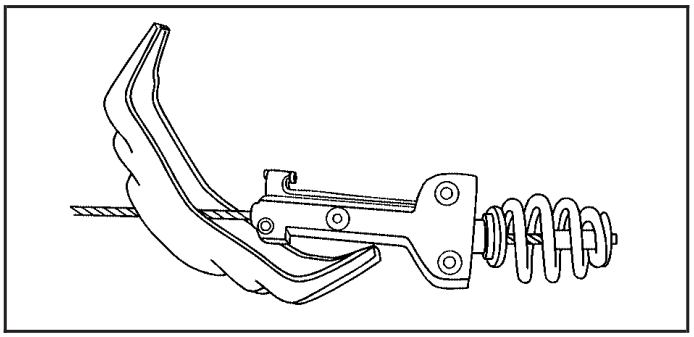


7. Use the wheel wrench hook that allows you to pull the hoist cable towards you, to assist in reaching the spare tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



8. Tilt the tire toward the vehicle with some slack in the cable to access the tire/wheel retainer (G). Separate the retainer from the guide pin by sliding the retainer up the pin while pressing down on the latch.



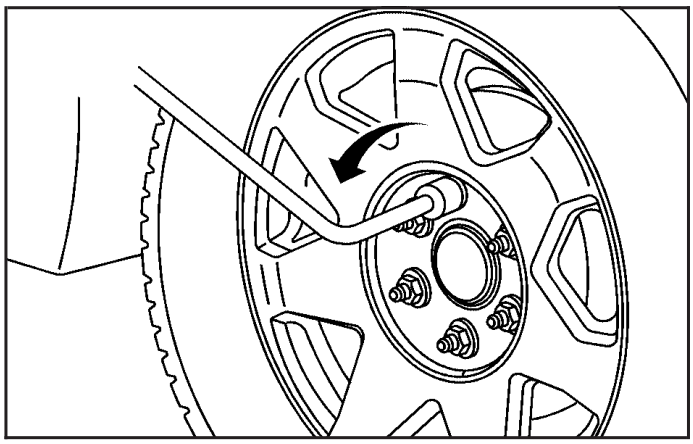
Once the retainer is separated from the pin, tilt the retainer and pull it through the center of the wheel along with the cable and latch.

9. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

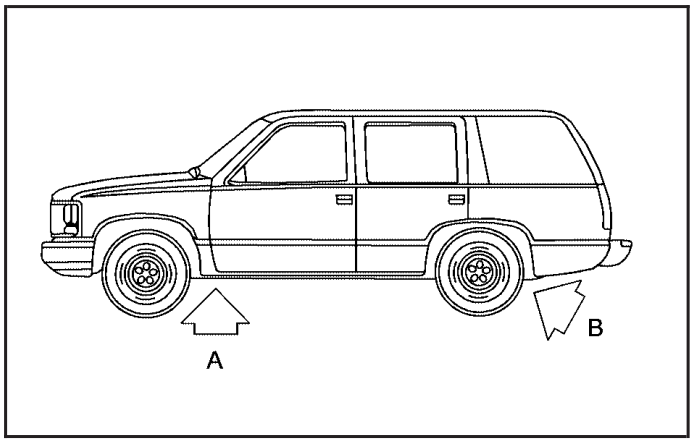
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 6-78* for more information.
2. To remove the center cap, place the chiseled end of the wheel wrench in the slot on the wheel and gently pry the cap out.



3. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to loosen the wheel nuts. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.



Jacking Locations (Overall View)

A. Front Position
B. Rear Position

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

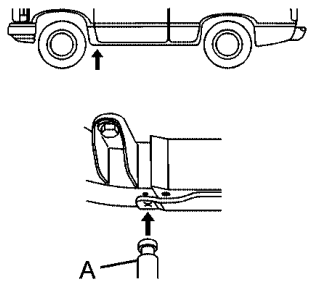
⚠ CAUTION:

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ CAUTION:

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

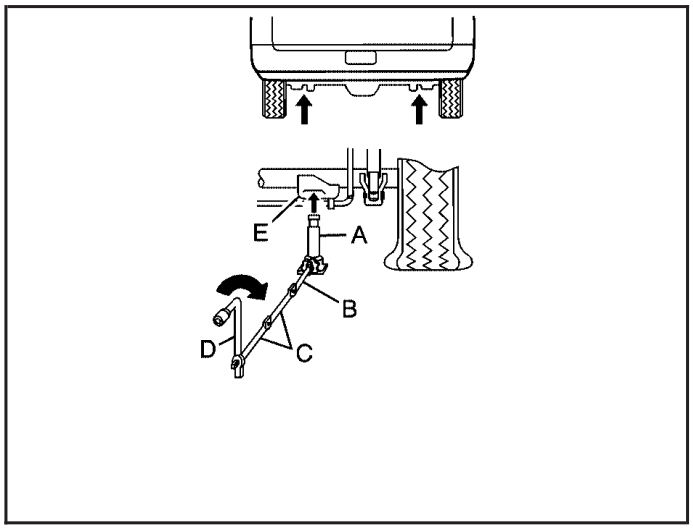
4. Position the jack under the vehicle as shown.



Front Position

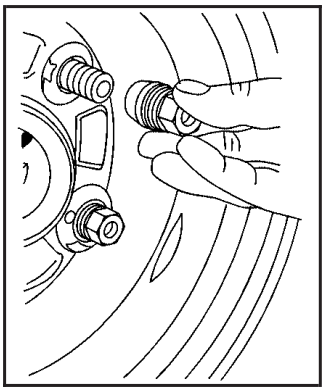
Front Tire Flat: If the flat tire is on a front tire of the vehicle, you will need to use the jack handle and only one jack handle extension. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack handle extension. Attach the jack handle to the jack (A). Position the jack on the frame behind the flat tire where the frame sections overlap. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to clear the ground.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Rear Position

Rear Tire Flat: If the flat tire is on a rear tire of the vehicle, you will need to use the jack handle (B) and both jack handle extensions (C). Attach the wheel wrench (D) to the jack handle extensions (C). Attach the jack handle (B) to the jack (A). Use the jacking pad (E) provided on the rear axle. Turn the wheel wrench (D) clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to clear the ground.



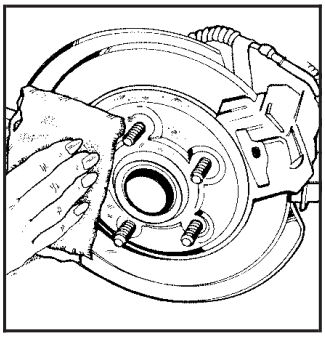
6. Take off the flat tire.

5. Remove all of the wheel nuts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 6-78*.



7. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

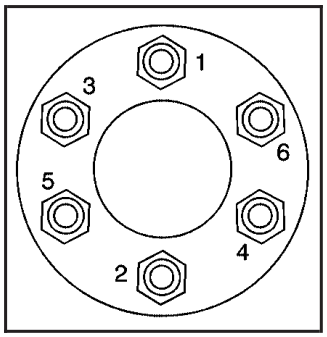
8. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel after mounting the spare tire.
9. Tighten each wheel nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.
10. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing. Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 6-113* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 6-113* for the wheel nut torque specification.**



11. Tighten the nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

When you reinstall the regular wheel and tire, you must also reinstall the center cap. Line the tab on the back of the cap with the slot in the wheel. Place the cap on the wheel and press until it snaps into place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

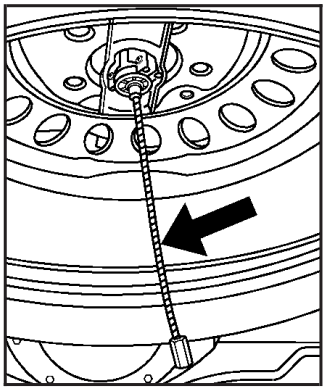
Secondary Latch System

Your vehicle has an underbody-mounted tire hoist assembly equipped with a secondary latch system. It is designed to stop the spare tire from suddenly falling off your vehicle. For the secondary latch to work, the spare must be installed with the valve stem pointing down. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 6-92*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Before beginning this procedure read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you and others could get hurt. Read and follow the instructions listed next.

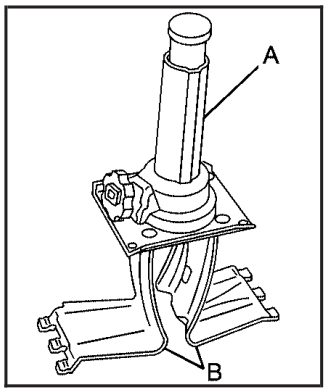
To release the spare tire from the secondary latch:



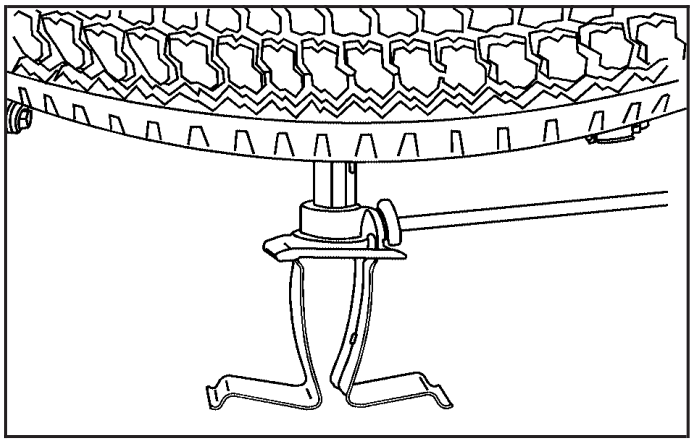
1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable end is visible. If the cable is not visible proceed to Step 6.
2. If it is visible, first try to tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.
3. Loosen the cable by turning the wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.
4. Repeat this procedure at least two times. If the spare tire lowers to the ground, continue with Step 5 of *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 6-79*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. If the spare does not lower, turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately 6 inches (15 cm) of cable is exposed.
6. Stand the wheel blocks on their shortest ends, with the backs facing each other.

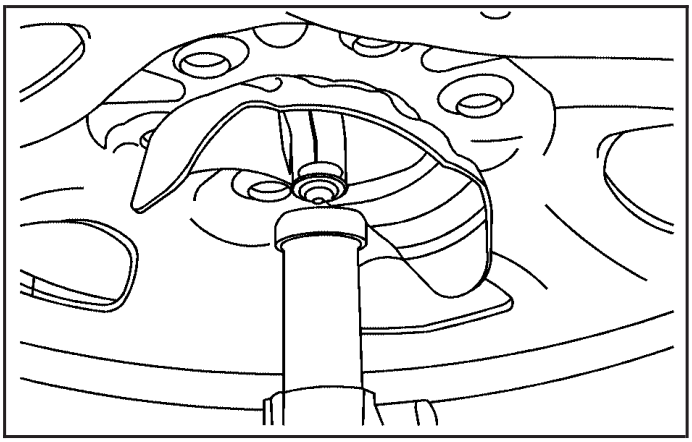


7. Place the bottom edge of the jack (A) on the wheel blocks (B), separating them so that the jack is balanced securely.



8. Attach the jack handle, extension, and wheel wrench to the jack and place it (with the wheel blocks) under the vehicle toward the front of the rear bumper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



9. Position the center lift point of the jack under the center of the spare tire.
10. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the end fitting.
11. Continue raising the jack until the spare tire stops moving upward and is held firmly in place. The secondary latch has released and the spare tire is balancing on the jack.
12. Lower the jack by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire slides off the jack or is hanging by the cable.

⚠ CAUTION:

Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack. If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you as you pull the jack out from under the spare.

13. Disconnect the jack handle from the jack and carefully remove the jack. Use one hand to push against the spare while firmly pulling the jack out from under the spare tire with the other hand.

    If the spare tire is hanging from the cable, insert the hoist end of extension, and wheel wrench into the hoist shaft hole in the bumper and turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare the rest of the way.
14. Turn the wheel wrench in the hoist shaft hole in the bumper clockwise to raise the cable back up if the cable is hanging under the vehicle.

Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as you can. You will not be able to store a spare or flat tire using the hoist assembly until it has been inspected and/or replaced.

To continue changing the flat tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 6-84*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

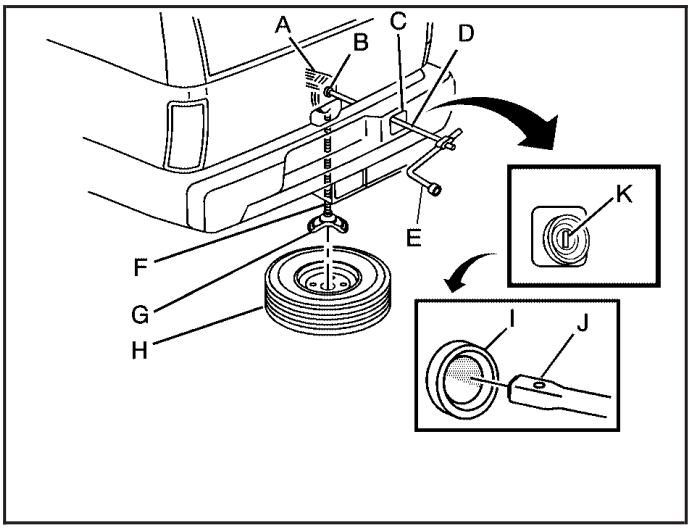
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Notice: **Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up can damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tire repaired as soon as possible.**

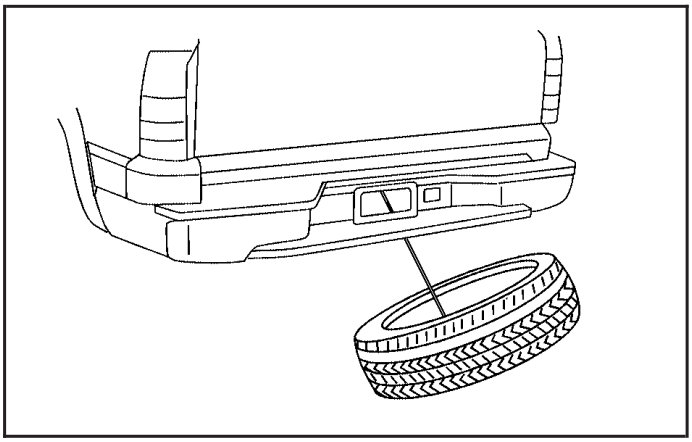
Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier.



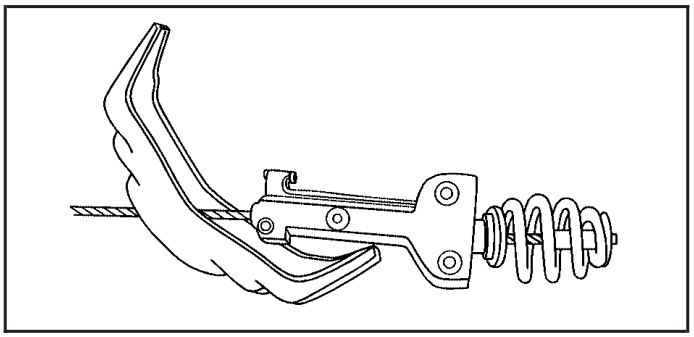
A. Hoist Assembly
B. Hoist Shaft
C. Hoist Shaft Access Cover/Hole
D. Jack Handle Extensions
E. Wheel Wrench
F. Hoist Cable
G. Tire/Wheel Retainer
H. Spare Tire/Flat Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Down)
I. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
J. Hoist End of Extension Tool
K. Spare Tire Lock

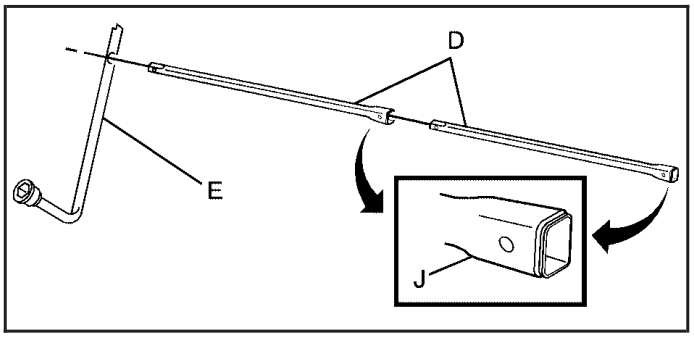
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Put the tire (H) on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed down and to the rear.



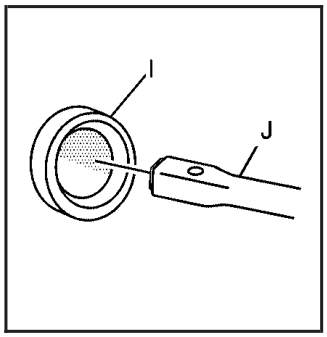
2. Tilt the tire toward the vehicle. Separate the tire/wheel retainer (G) from the guide pin. Pull the pin through the center of the wheel. Tilt the retainer down and through the center wheel opening.





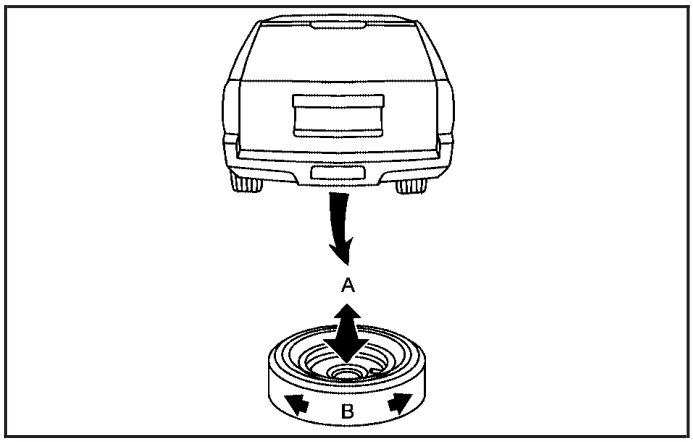
3. Assemble the two jack handle extensions (D) and wheel wrench (E) as shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Insert the open end of the extension (J) through the hole in the rear bumper (I) (hoist shaft access hole).

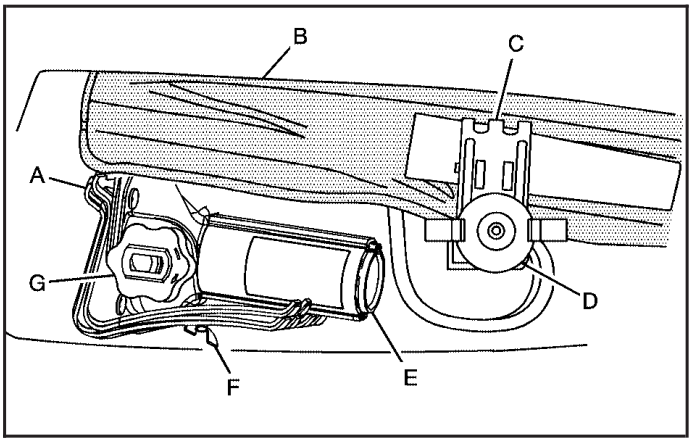
5. Raise the tire part way upward. Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel and centered in the wheel opening.
6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.



7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull (A), and then try to turn (B) the tire. If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable.
8. Reinstall the spare tire lock.
9. Reinstall the hoist shaft access cover.
10. Reinstall the hitch cover.

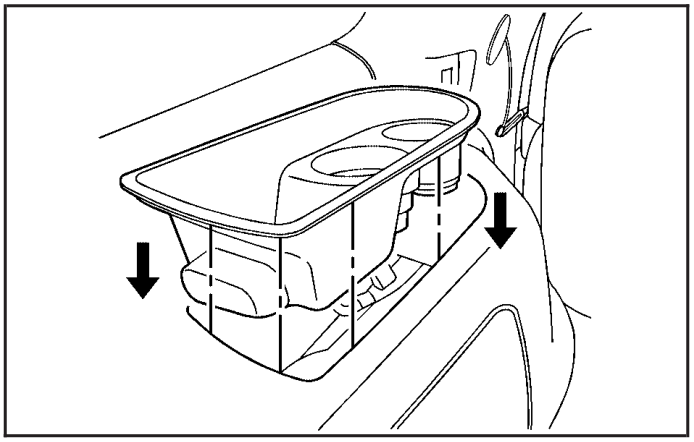
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To store the tools:



A. Wheel Blocks
B. Tool Bag with Jack Tools
C. Retaining Bracket
D. Wing Nut Retaining Tool Bag
E. Jack
F. Wing Nut Retaining Wheel Blocks
G. Jack Knob

1. Return the tools (wheel wrench, jack handle, and jack handle extensions) to the tool bag (B).
2. Assemble wheel blocks (A) and jack (E) together with the wing nut (F).
3. Position the jack (E) and wheel blocks (A) in the driver's side trim panel over the wheelhouse.
4. Turn the jack knob (G) clockwise until the jack is secured tight in the mounting bracket. Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pin in the mounting bracket.
5. Use the retaining bracket (C) to fasten the tool bag (B) on the stud and turn the wing nut (D) clockwise to secure.



Regular Wheelbase shown, Extended Wheelbase similar.

6. Return the storage tray to its original stored position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Spare Tire

Your vehicle, when new, had a fully-inflated spare tire. A spare tire may lose air over time, so check its inflation pressure regularly. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading your vehicle. For instruction on how to remove, install or store a spare tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 6-84* and *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 6-92*.

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare is correctly inflated. The spare tire is made to perform well at speeds up to 70 mph (112 km/h) at the recommended inflation pressure, so you can finish your trip.

Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced as soon as you can and installed back onto your vehicle. This way, a spare tire will be available in case you need it again. Do not mix tires and wheels of different sizes, because they will not fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together.

Appearance Care

Interior Cleaning

The vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on the upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from the upholstery. It is important to keep the upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. The vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to home furnishings may also transfer color to the vehicle's interior.

When cleaning the vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **Using abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on the vehicle, could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on the vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in the vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Products that remove odors from the vehicle's upholstery and clean the vehicle's glass can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Do not clean the vehicle using:

- A knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- A stiff brush. It can cause damage to the vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Heavy pressure or aggressive rubbing with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage the interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers can leave residue that streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide. Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps.
- Too much cleaner that saturates the upholstery.
- Organic solvents such as naptha, alcohol, etc. that can damage the vehicle's interior.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For any soil, always try to remove it first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

Leather

A soft cloth dampened with water can be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Allow the leather to dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of the leather and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner. Never use shoe polish on leather.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TEHAMA™ Leather

The leather surface on the seat was not designed to be aggressively cleaned using any commercial product. Use a well wrung cloth dampened with water to remove dust. Do not use a wet cloth or saturate the leather surface with water. Allow the leather to dry naturally. If a soil occurs that cannot be completely removed, allow it to become part of the natural markings of the leather. The leather in the vehicle was designed to have a natural appearance and develop a more vintage appearance with use.

Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. It is very important to not use any commercial leather cleaners or coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather. Not only are those products not necessary, they will permanently and adversely change the appearance and feel of the leather. Never use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior. Never use shoe polish on leather.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of the interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on the instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wood Panels

Use a clean cloth moistened in warm, soapy water (use mild dish washing soap). Dry the wood immediately with a clean cloth.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.

Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

Notice: **Certain cleaners contain chemicals that can damage the emblems or nameplates on the vehicle. Check the cleaning product label. If it states that it should not be used on plastic parts, do not use it on the vehicle or damage may occur and it would not be covered by the warranty.**

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Use a car washing soap. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based or that contain acid or abrasives, as they can damage the paint, metal or plastic on the vehicle. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer. Follow all manufacturers' directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 12 inches (30 cm) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8 274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle on page 6-100*.

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of the vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

If the vehicle has a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. To help keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, chrome polish may be used on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield and backglass with glass cleaner.

Clean the rubber blades using a lint free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when you clean the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking. Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged.

Wipers can be damaged by:

- Extreme dusty conditions
- Sand and salt
- Heat and sun
- Snow and ice, without proper removal

Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels and Trim

The vehicle may have either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the vehicle's chrome with soap and water after exposure.**

Notice: **Using strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of the vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because they could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Notice: **Driving the vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive a vehicle that has aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.**

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer/retailer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's/ retailer's body and paint shop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer/retailer or an underbody car washing system can do this.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, we will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is the legal identifier for the vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side. It can be seen through the windshield from outside the vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Certification/Tire and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code helps identify the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See "Engine Specifications" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 6-113* for the vehicle's engine code.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Parts Identification Label

This label is on the inside of the glove box. It is very helpful if parts need to be ordered. The label has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Electrical System

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to the vehicle unless you check with your dealer/retailer first. Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-93*.

Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by a circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem, have it fixed.

Power Windows and Other Power Options

Circuit breakers protect the power windows and other power accessories. If the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and then closes after a cool down period, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed or goes away.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

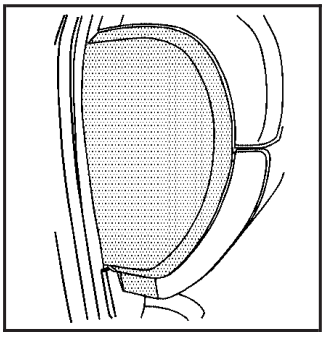
If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses, circuit breakers and fusible thermal links. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without – like the radio or cigarette lighter – and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

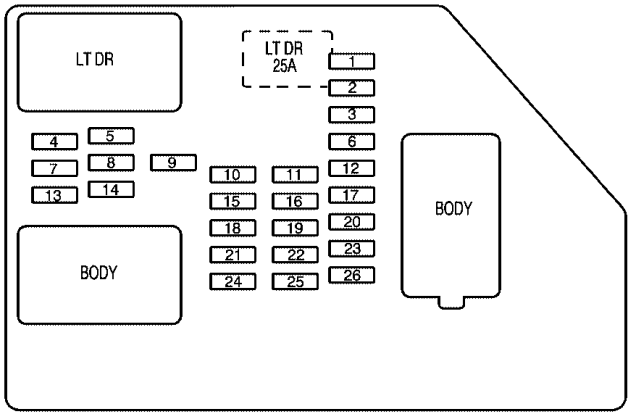
Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The instrument panel fuse block access door is located on the driver side edge of the instrument panel.

Pull off the cover to access the fuse block.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The vehicle may not use all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Usage
1	Rear Seats
2	Rear Accessory Power Outlet
3	Steering Wheel Controls Backlight
4	Driver Door Module
5	Dome Lamps, Driver Side Turn Signal
6	Driver Side Turn Signal, Stoplamp
7	Instrument Panel Back Lighting
8	Passenger Side Turn Signal, Stoplamp
9	Passenger Door Module, Driver Unlock
10	Power Door Lock 2 (Unlock Feature)
11	Power Door Lock 2 (Lock Feature)
12	Stoplamps, Center-High Mounted Stoplamp
13	Rear Climate Controls
14	Power Mirror
15	Body Control Module (BCM)
16	Accessory Power Outlets
17	Interior Lamps
18	Power Door Lock 1 (Unlock Feature)
19	Rear Seat Entertainment
20	Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist, Power Liftgate

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
21	Power Door Lock 1 (Lock Feature)
22	Driver Information Center (DIC)
23	Rear Wiper
24	Cooled Seats
25	Driver Seat Module, Remote Keyless Entry System
26	Driver Power Door Lock (Unlock Feature)

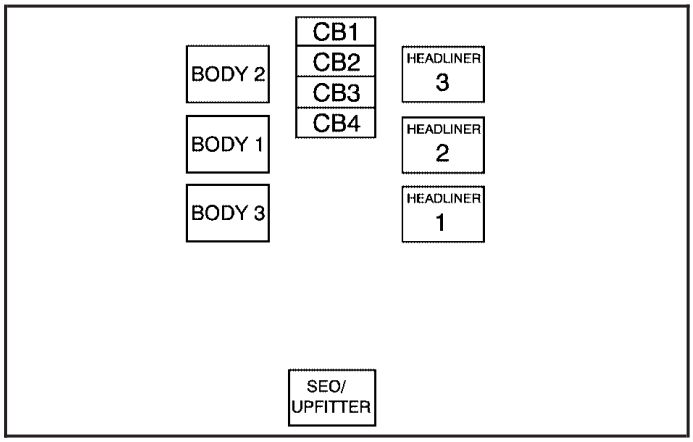
Circuit Breaker	Usage
LT DR	Driver Side Power Window Circuit Breaker

Harness Connector	Usage
LT DR	Driver Door Harness Connection
BODY	Harness Connector
BODY	Harness Connector

Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The center instrument panel fuse block is located underneath the instrument panel, to the left of the steering column.

Top View



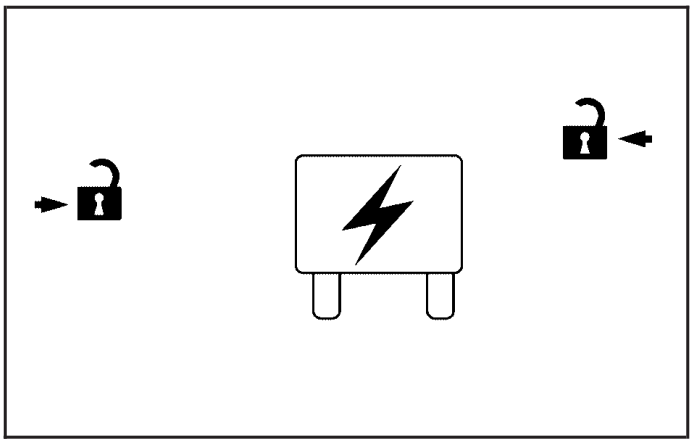
Harness Connector	Usage
BODY 2	Body Harness Connector 2
BODY 1	Body Harness Connector 1
BODY 3	Body Harness Connector 3

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Harness Connector	Usage
HEADLINER 3	Headliner Harness Connector 3
HEADLINER 2	Headliner Harness Connector 2
HEADLINER 1	Headliner Harness Connector 1
SEO/UPFITTER	Special Equipment Option Upfitter Harness Connector

Circuit Breaker	Usage
CB1	Passenger Side Power Window Circuit Breaker
CB2	Passenger Seat Circuit Breaker
CB3	Driver Seat Circuit Breaker
CB4	Rear Sliding Window

Underhood Fuse Block



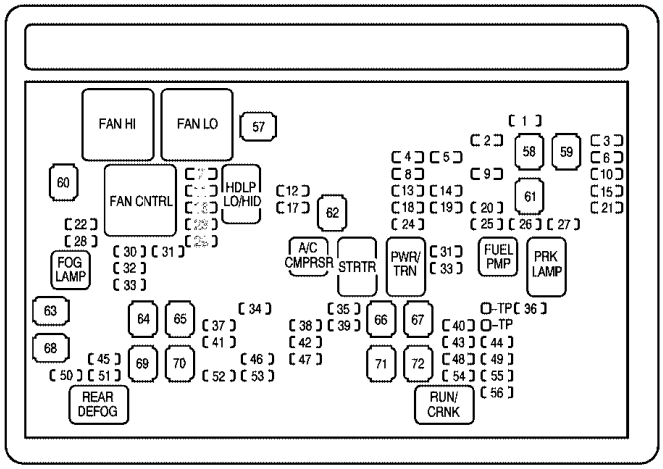
The underhood fuse block is located in the engine compartment, on the driver side of the vehicle. Lift the cover for access to the fuse/relay block.

If the vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

Notice: **Spilling liquid on any electrical components on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.**

To remove fuses, hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Fuses	Usage
1	Right Trailer Stop/Turn Lamp
2	Electronic Stability Suspension Control, Automatic Level Control Exhaust
3	Left Trailer Stop/Turn Lamp
4	Engine Controls

Fuses	Usage
5	Engine Control Module, Throttle Control
6	Trailer Brake Controller
7	Front Washer
8	Oxygen Sensors
9	Antilock Brakes System 2
10	Trailer Back-up Lamps
11	Driver Side Low-Beam Headlamp
12	Engine Control Module (Battery)
13	Fuel Injectors, Ignition Coils (Right Side)
14	Transmission Control Module (Battery)
15	Vehicle Back-up Lamps
16	Passenger Side Low-Beam Headlamp
17	Air Conditioning Compressor
18	Oxygen Sensors
19	Transmission Controls (Ignition)
20	Fuel Pump
21	Fuel System Control Module
22	Headlamp Washer
23	Rear Windshield Washer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
24	Fuel Injectors, Ignition Coils (Left Side)
25	Trailer Park Lamps
26	Driver Side Park Lamps
27	Passenger Side Park Lamps
28	Fog Lamps
29	Horn
30	Passenger Side High-Beam Headlamp
31	Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)
32	Driver Side High-Beam Headlamp
33	Daytime Running Lamps 2
34	Sunroof
35	Key Ignition System, Theft Deterrent System
36	Windshield Wiper
37	SEO B2 Upfitter Usage (Battery)
38	Electric Adjustable Pedals
39	Climate Controls (Battery)
40	Airbag System (Ignition)
41	Amplifier
42	Audio System
43	Miscellaneous (Ignition), Cruise Control

Fuses	Usage
44	Liftgate Release
45	Airbag System (Battery)
46	Instrument Panel Cluster
47	Not Used
48	Auxiliary Climate Control (Ignition)
49	Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)
50	Rear Defogger
51	Heated Mirrors
52	SEO B1 Upfitter Usage (Battery)
53	Cigarette Lighter, Auxiliary Power Outlet
54	Automatic Level Control Compressor Relay
55	Climate Controls (Ignition)
56	Engine Control Module, Secondary Fuel Pump (Ignition)

J-Case Fuses	Usage
57	Cooling Fan 1
58	Automatic Level Control Compressor
59	Heavy Duty Antilock Braking System
60	Cooling Fan 2
61	Antilock Brake System 1

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

J-Case Fuses	Usage
62	Starter
63	Stud 2 (Trailer Brakes)
64	Left Bussed Electrical Center 1
65	Electric Running Boards
66	Heated Windshield Washer System
67	Transfer Case
68	Stud 1 (Trailer Connector Battery Power)
69	Mid-Bussed Electrical Center 1
70	Climate Control Blower
71	Power Liftgate Module
72	Left Bussed Electrical Center 2

Relays	Usage
FAN HI	Cooling Fan High Speed
FAN LO	Cooling Fan Low Speed
FAN CNTRL	Cooling Fan Control
HDLP LO/HID	Low-Beam Headlamp
FOG LAMP	Front Fog Lamps
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor
STRTR	Starter
PWR/TRN	Powertrain
FUEL PMP	Fuel Pump
PRK LAMP	Parking Lamps
REAR DEFOG	Rear Defogger
RUN/CRANK	Switched Power

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in English and metric conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Air Conditioning Refrigerant	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling System	17.6 qt	16.7 L
Engine Oil with Filter	6.0 qt†	5.7 L†
Fuel Tank		
Regular	26.0 gal	98.4 L
Extended	31.5 gal	119.2 L
Transmission Fluid (Pan Removal and Replacement)	6.0 qt	5.7 L
Transfer Case Fluid	1.5 qt	1.4 L
Wheel Nut Torque	140 lb ft	190 N•m
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid after filling. †Oil filter should be changed at every oil change.		

Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
6.2L V8	2	Automatic	0.040 in (1.01 mm)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 7 Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Schedule 7-2
Introduction 7-2
Maintenance Requirements 7-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 7-2
Using the Maintenance Schedule 7-3
Scheduled Maintenance 7-4
Additional Required Services 7-6
Maintenance Footnotes 7-8
Owner Checks and Services 7-10
At Each Fuel Fill 7-10
At Least Once a Month 7-10
At Least Once a Year 7-11
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 7-13
Maintenance Replacement Parts 7-15
Engine Drive Belt Routing 7-16
Maintenance Record 7-17

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Schedule

Introduction

Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.

Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements the vehicle warranties. See the Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer/retailer for details.

Maintenance Requirements

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts, and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep this vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from the vehicle. To help protect the environment, and to keep the vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain the vehicle properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Maintenance Schedule

We want to help keep this vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You might drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you might drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You might use the vehicle in making deliveries. Or you might drive it to work, to do errands, or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You might need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep the vehicle in good condition, see your dealer/retailer.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 5-33*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Off-Road Driving on page 5-13*.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 6-5*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 7-4* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 7-6* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 7-8* for further information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your dealer/retailer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 6-4*.

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, have your dealer/retailer do these jobs.

When you go to your dealer/retailer for service, trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine parts.

To purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 8-15*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Owner Checks and Services on page 7-10 tells what should be checked, when to check it, and what can easily be done to help keep the vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13* and *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 7-15*. When the vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine parts from your dealer/retailer.

Scheduled Maintenance

To maintain the ride, handling, and performance of this vehicle, it is important that the first tire rotation service be performed when the vehicle has 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km). Check tires for inflation pressures and wear. See *Tires on page 6-56*. Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 6-69* and "Tire Wear Inspection" in *At Least Once a Month on page 7-10*.

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, service is required for the vehicle. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, service your vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since the last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 6-18* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message appears, the following services, checks, and inspections are required:

- ❑ Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 6-15*. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 6-18*. *An Emission Control Service.*
- ❑ Lubricate chassis components. *See footnote #.*
- ❑ Visually check for any leaks or damage. *See footnote (j).*
- ❑ Inspect engine air cleaner filter or change indicator (if equipped). If necessary, replace filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 6-19*. *See footnote (k).*
- ❑ Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 6-69* and "Tire Wear Inspection" in *At Least Once a Month on page 7-10*.
- ❑ Inspect brake system. *See footnote (a).*
- ❑ Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.
- ❑ Perform any needed additional services. See "Additional Required Services" in this section.
- ❑ Inspect suspension and steering components. *See footnote (b).*
- ❑ Inspect engine cooling system. *See footnote (c).*
- ❑ Inspect wiper blades. *See footnote (d).*
- ❑ Inspect restraint system components. *See footnote (e).*
- ❑ Lubricate body components. *See footnote (f).*
- ❑ Check transmission fluid level and add fluid as needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Vehicles without a filter restriction indicator: Replace engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 6-19*.		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (severe service). *See footnote (h).*		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (normal service).				•		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Required Services (cont'd)

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Change transfer case fluid (severe service). *See footnotes (m) and (n).*		•		•		•
Change transfer case fluid (normal service). *See footnote (m).*				•		
Inspect evaporative control system. *An Emission Control Service. See footnotes † and (g).*		•		•		•
Replace spark plugs and inspect spark plug wires. *An Emission Control Service.*				•		
Engine cooling system service (or every five years, whichever occurs first). *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).*						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (l).*						•

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Footnotes

† *The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

Lubricate the front suspension, steering linkage, and parking brake cable guides. Control arm ball joints are maintenance-free.

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts, signs of wear or lack of lubrication. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

(d) *Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated. Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged. See Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 6-54 and Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades on page 6-102 for more information.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also see Checking the Restraint Systems on page 1-95*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood latch assembly, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, rear compartment hinges, outer tailgate handle pivot points, latch bolt, fuel door hinge, and folding seat hardware. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *Inspect system. Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition. Check that the purge valve works properly, if equipped. Replace as needed.*

(h) *Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush, and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer/retailer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 6-25 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap, and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

(j) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(k) *If driving regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

(l) *Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.*

(m) *Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation. Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.*

(n) *Severe Service: Change transfer case fluid if the vehicle is mainly used for trailer towing or driven in city traffic, wet environment, or high ambient temperatures.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure vehicle safety, dependability, and emission control performance. Your dealer/retailer can assist with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to the vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 7-13*.

At Each Fuel Fill

It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.

Engine Oil Level Check

Notice: **It is important to check the engine oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep the engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to the engine not covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 6-15*.

Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 6-25*.

Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer fluid reservoir and add the proper fluid if necessary.

At Least Once a Month

Tire Inflation Check

Inspect the vehicle's tires and make sure they are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check the spare tire, if the vehicle has one. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 6-62*. If the vehicle has a spare tire, check to make sure it is stored securely. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 6-78*.

Tire Wear Inspection

Tire rotation may be required for high mileage highway drivers prior to the Engine Oil Life System service notification. Check the tires for wear and, if necessary, rotate the tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 6-69*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

At Least Once a Year

Starter Switch Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-34*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-34*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON/RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- The ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in P (Park).
- The ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Hood and Liftgate Support Gas Strut Service

Visually inspect gas strut for signs of wear, corrosion, cracks, loss of lubricant, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of gas strut. If necessary, replace with genuine parts from your dealer/retailer.

Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	The engine requires a special engine oil meeting GM Standard GM4718M. Oils meeting this standard can be identified as synthetic, and should also be identified with the American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. However, not all synthetic API oils with the starburst symbol will meet this GM standard. Look for and use only oil that meets GM Standard GM4718M. For the proper viscosity, see *Engine Oil on page 6-15*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 6-25*.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 12377967, in Canada 89021320).
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent.
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Front and Rear Axle	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 89021677, in Canada 89021678) meeting GM Specification 9986115.
Transfer Case	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Hood Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Body Door Hinge Pins, Tailgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seats, and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Outer Tailgate Handle Pivot Points	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).
Weatherstrip Squeaks	Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12371287, in Canada 10953437).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Replacement Parts

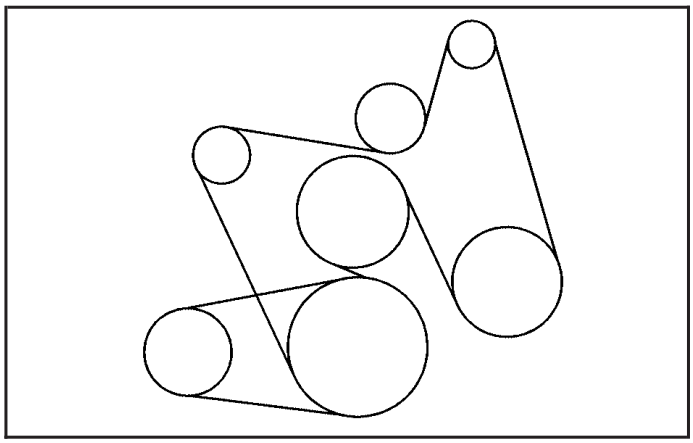
Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	15908916	A3086C
Oil Filter	89017524	PF48
Spark Plugs	12609877	41-985
Wiper Blades		
Front – 21.6 in (55.0 cm)	25877402	—
Rear – 11.8 in (30.0 cm)	25820122	—

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Drive Belt Routing



If your vehicle is a Two-mode Hybrid, see the Two-mode Hybrid manual for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 7-2*. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 7-10* can be added on the following record pages. You should retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 8 Customer Assistance Information

Customer Assistance and Information 8-2
- Customer Satisfaction Procedure 8-2
- Online Owner Center 8-5
- Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 8-6
- Customer Assistance Offices 8-6
- GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 8-7
- Roadside Service 8-7
- Scheduling Service Appointments 8-10
- Courtesy Transportation Program 8-10
- Collision Damage Repair 8-12

Reporting Safety Defects 8-14
- Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 8-14
- Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 8-15
- Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 8-15
- Service Publications Ordering Information 8-15

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 8-16
- Event Data Recorders 8-17
- OnStar® 8-18
- Navigation System 8-18
- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 8-18

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Assistance and Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by the dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, in the United States, call the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center, 24 hours a day, at 1-800-458-8006. In Canada, call the Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre at 1-888-446-2000.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Cadillac, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEP THREE (U.S. Owners): Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
dr.bbb.org/goauto

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEP THREE (Canadian Owners):

General Motors Participation in the Mediation/ Arbitration Program

In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after the following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two. General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge mediation/Arbitration program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in approximately 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the General Motors Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write to the Mediation/Arbitration Program at the following address:

Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1–163–005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Your inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Online Owner Center

Online Owner Center (U.S.) — www.gmownercenter.com/cadillac

Information and services customized for your specific vehicle — all in one convenient place.

- Digital owner manual, warranty information, and more
- Online service and maintenance records
- Find Cadillac dealers for service nationwide
- Exclusive privileges and offers
- Recall notices for your specific vehicle
- OnStar® and GM Cardmember Services Earnings summaries

Other Helpful Links:

Cadillac — www.cadillac.com

Cadillac Merchandise — www.cadillaccollection.com

Help Center — www.cadillac.com/helpcenter

- FAQ
- Contact Us

My GM Canada (Canada) — www.gm.ca

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of www.gm.ca where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers/Retailers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM dealers/retailers.
- My Driveway: Access quick links to parts and service estimates, check trade-in values, or schedule a service appointment by adding the vehicles you own to your driveway profile.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up, visit the My GM Canada section within www.gm.ca.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-CMCC (2622). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to:

United States — Customer Assistance

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

www.Cadillac.com
1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112

From Puerto Rico:
1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)

From U.S. Virgin Islands:
1-800-496-9994

Canada — Customer Assistance

General Motors of Canada Limited
Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

www.gmcanada.com
1-888-446-2000
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112

Overseas — Customer Assistance

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) — Customer Assistance

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740
Col. Lomas de Bezares
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.
01-800-508-0000
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 of the cost of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for your vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift.

The offer is available for a very limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details.
TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Service

In the United States or Canada, call **1-800-882-1112**.

Text Telephone (TTY), U.S. only, call **1-888-889-2438**.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Assistance

When calling Roadside Assistance, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Coverage

Services are provided up to 5 years/100,000 miles (160 000 km), whichever comes first.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Assistance is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Cadillac and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Cadillac and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Cadillac Owner Privileges™

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service is provided to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar®. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow From a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Cadillac dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is also given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service is provided to change a flat tire with spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is your responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service is provided to jump start a dead battery.
- **Trip Routing Service:** Detailed maps of North America are provided when requested either with the most direct route or the most scenic route. Additional travel information is also available. Allow three weeks for delivery.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the 5 year/100,000 miles (160 000 km) Powertrain warranty period. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cadillac Technician Roadside Service (U.S. only)

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner in the United States with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, where available, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

A dealer technician will travel to your location within a 30 mile radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership. Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.
- Towing or services for vehicles driven on a non-public road or highway.

Services Specific to Canadian Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel delivery:** Reimbursement is approximately $5 Canadian. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Routing Service:** Limit of six requests per year.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** Pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders are required. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Assistance advisor will help you make arrangements and explain how to receive payment.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Assistance advisor may give you permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Assistance. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scheduling Service Appointments

When your vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer/retailer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer/retailer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership/retailer, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer/retailer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

Courtesy Transportation Program

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper to Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada) and extended powertrain, and hybrid specific warranties in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several courtesy transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Participating dealers can provide shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round trip shuttle service to a destination up to 10 miles (16 km) from the dealership.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of the dealer's shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available.

Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for a warranty repair. If you obtain a rental vehicle on your own, please see your dealer for the maximum number of days allowed and the allowance per rental day. Rental reimbursement must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs will diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to ensure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part, may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance, however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts are not covered by that warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your GM dealer/retailer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state of the art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring Your Vehicle

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you assure your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that assures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Service on page 8-7*.

Gather the following information:

- Driver's name, address, phone number
- Driver's license number
- Owner's name, address, phone number
- Vehicle license plate
- Vehicle make, model and model year
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Insurance company and policy number
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See "Collision Parts" earlier in this section.

If the airbag has inflated, see *What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? on page 1-86*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember if your vehicle is leased you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as cost stays within reasonable limits.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer/retailer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington D.C., 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from safercar.gov.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. Call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, please notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

In Canada, call 1-888-446-2000, or write:

Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
General Motors of Canada Limited
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give additional technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 (U.S.) plus processing fee

Without Portfolio: Owner Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00 (U.S.) plus processing fee

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Current and Past Model Order Forms

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, specify year and model name of the vehicle.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123 Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. on the World Wide Web at: helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Your GM vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, your vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help your dealer/retailer technician service your vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- How fast the vehicle was traveling

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request of police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar®

If your vehicle has OnStar and you subscribe to the OnStar services, please refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions for information on data collection and use. See also *OnStar® System on page 2-52* in this manual for more information.

Navigation System

If your vehicle has a navigation system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. Refer to the navigation system operating manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A

Accessories and Modifications 6-3
Accessory Power 2-26
Accessory Power Outlets 3-25
Additional Required Services, Scheduled Maintenance 7-6
Additives, Fuel 6-6
Add-On Electrical Equipment 6-105
Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 2-27
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 6-19
Airbag
  Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-94
Airbag System
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-85
  Passenger Sensing System 1-87
  Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-93
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-85
  What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-86
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-84
  Where Are the Airbags? 1-81
Airbags
  Passenger Status Indicator 3-37
  Readiness Light 3-36
  System Check 1-79
All-Wheel Drive 6-45
All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) System 5-9
Analog Clock 3-26
Antenna
  Rear Side Window 3-117
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-117
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 5-5
  Warning Light 3-40
Appearance Care
  Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 6-102
  Care of Safety Belts 6-100
  Chemical Paint Spotting 6-104
  Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 6-101
  Fabric/Carpet 6-98
  Finish Care 6-101
  Finish Damage 6-103
  Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 6-99
  Interior Cleaning 6-96
  Leather 6-98
  Sheet Metal Damage 6-103
  Speaker Covers 6-100
  Tires 6-103
  Underbody Maintenance 6-104
  Washing Your Vehicle 6-100

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Appearance Care (cont.)
Weatherstrips 6-100
Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades 6-102
Wood Panels 6-100
Ashtray 3-26
Assist Handles 2-63
Audio System 3-75
Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-115
Radio 4-62
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-117
Audio Systems
Radio Reception 3-116
Rear Seat (RSA) 3-113
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-115
Automatic Headlamp System 3-21
Automatic Transmission
Fluid 6-20
Operation 2-29
Autoride® 5-44
Axle, Rear 6-46

B

Back-Up Lamps - Ambulance Body
Bulb Replacement 6-51
Battery 6-39
Electric Power Management 3-24
Run-Down Protection 3-25
Belt Routing, Engine 7-16
Bench Seat, Split (60/40) 1-11
Bluetooth® 3-75
Brake
Emergencies 5-6
Pedal and Adjustable Throttle 2-27
Brakes 6-36
Antilock 5-5
Parking 2-34
System Warning Light 3-39
Braking 5-4
Braking in Emergencies 5-6
Break-In, New Vehicle 2-24
Bucket Seats, Rear 1-17

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bulb Replacement 6-53
Back-Up Lamps - Ambulance Body 6-51
Fog Lamps 3-22
Headlamp Aiming 6-48
Headlamps 6-51
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 6-51
License Plate Lamps 6-53
Buying New Tires 6-71

C

Calibration 3-53
California
Perchlorate Materials Requirements 6-4
Warning 6-4
California Fuel 6-6
Camera, Rear Vision 2-48
Canadian Owners iii
Capacities and Specifications 6-113
Carbon Monoxide 2-12, 2-14
Engine Exhaust 2-38
Winter Driving 5-29
Care of
Safety Belts 6-100
Center Console Storage 2-63
Center Seat 1-10
Chains, Tire 6-76
Charging System Light 3-38
Check Engine Lamp 3-42
Checking Things Under the Hood 6-12
Chemical Paint Spotting 6-104
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 1-55
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 1-63
Older Children 1-52
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-71
Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position 1-75
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-76
Systems 1-59
Where to Put the Restraint 1-61
Cigarette Lighter 3-26
Circuit Breakers 6-106
Cleaning
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 6-102
Exterior Lamps/Lenses 6-101
Fabric/Carpet 6-98
Finish Care 6-101
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 6-99
Interior 6-96
Leather 6-98
Speaker Covers 6-100
Tires 6-103
Underbody Maintenance 6-104
Washing Your Vehicle 6-100

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cleaning (cont.)
Weatherstrips 6-100
Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades 6-102
Wood Panels 6-100
Climate Control System
Outlet Adjustment 3-31
Rear Air Conditioning and Heating System, Electronic 3-32
Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic 3-27
Clock 3-26
Collision Damage Repair 8-12
Compass 3-53
Content Theft-Deterrent 2-21
Control of a Vehicle 5-3
Coolant
Engine 6-25
Engine Temperature Gage 3-41
Cooled Seats 1-6
Cooling System 6-24
Courtesy Transportation Program 8-10
Cruise Control 3-13
Light 3-46
Cupholders 2-62
Customer Assistance 8-6
Offices 8-6
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 8-6
Customer Information
Service Publications Ordering Information 8-15
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 8-2

D

Damage Repair, Collision 8-12
Data Recorders
Event 8-17
Database Coverage Explanations 4-62
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-21
Defensive Driving 5-2
Delayed Locking 2-10
DIC Compass 3-53
Doing Your Own Service Work 6-4
Dome Lamp Override 3-23
Dome Lamps 3-23
Door
Delayed Locking 2-10
Locks 2-10
Power Locks 2-10
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
Rear Door Security Locks 2-11

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 6-45
Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-47
DIC Operation and Displays 3-48
DIC Vehicle Customization 3-65
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-56
Driving
At Night 5-25
Before a Long Trip 5-27
Better Fuel Economy 5-2
Defensive 5-2
Drunk 5-3
Highway Hypnosis 5-27
Hill and Mountain Roads 5-28
In Rain and on Wet Roads 5-26
Loss of Control 5-12
Off-Road 5-13
Off-Road Recovery 5-11
Recovery Hooks 5-32
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 5-32
Winter 5-29
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 3-27
DVD
Rear Seat Entertainment System 3-87, 3-97

E

E85 Fuel 6-7
EDR 8-16
Electrical Equipment
Add-On Equipment 6-105
Electrical System
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block 6-108
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 6-106
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 6-106
Power Windows and Other Power Options 6-105
Underhood Fuse Block 6-109
Windshield Wiper Fuses 6-105
Electronic Immobilizer
PASS-Key® III+ 2-22
Electronic Immobilizer Operation
PASS-Key® III+ 2-23
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 6-19
Check and Service Engine Soon Lamp 3-42
Compartment Overview 6-14
Coolant 6-25
Coolant Heater 2-28
Coolant Temperature Gage 3-41

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine (cont.)
Cooling System 6-24
Drive Belt Routing 7-16
Exhaust 2-38
Fan Noise 6-33
Oil 6-15
Overheated Protection Operating Mode 6-33
Overheating 6-30
Starting 2-26
Engine Oil
Life System 6-18
Entry Lighting 3-23
Event Data Recorders 8-17
Exit Lighting 3-23
Extender, Safety Belt 1-51
Exterior Lamps 3-16

F

Features
Memory 1-7
Filter
Engine Air Cleaner 6-19
Finish Damage 6-103
Flashers, Hazard Warning 3-6
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
Flat Tire 6-77
Flat Tire, Changing 6-78
Flat Tire, Storing 6-92
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 6-20
Power Steering 6-33
Windshield Washer 6-34
Fog Lamps
Bulb Replacement 3-22
Light 3-45
Front Axle 6-47
Fuel 6-5
Additives 6-6
California Fuel 6-6
E85 (85% Ethanol) 6-7
Economy Driving 5-2
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 6-11
Filling the Tank 6-9
Fuels in Foreign Countries 6-8
Gage 3-46
Gasoline Octane 6-5
Gasoline Specifications 6-6
Fuses
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block 6-108
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 6-106
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 6-106
Underhood Fuse Block 6-109
Windshield Wiper 6-105

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

G

Gages
- Engine Coolant Temperature 3-41
- Fuel 3-46
- Speedometer 3-35
- Tachometer 3-35
- Trip Odometer 3-35

Garage Door Opener 2-55
Garment Hooks 2-63
Gasoline
- Octane 6-5
- Specifications 6-6

Getting Started, Navigation 4-4
Global Positioning System (GPS) 4-59
Glove Box 2-62
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 8-7

H

Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
Head Restraints 1-2
Headlamps
- Aiming 6-48
- Bulb Replacement 6-51
- Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-21
- Exterior Lamps 3-16
- Flash-to-Pass 3-9
- High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 6-51
- High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
- On Reminder 3-21

Heated
- Steering Wheel 3-6

Heated Seats 1-5, 1-6
Heater
- Engine Coolant 2-28

Highbeam On Light 3-46
High-Speed Operation, Tires 6-63
Highway Hypnosis 5-27
Hill and Mountain Roads 5-28

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hood
Checking Things Under 6-12
Release 6-13
Horn 3-6
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-35

I

Ignition Positions 2-25
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 1-55
Inflation - Tire Pressure 6-62
Instrument Panel
Brightness 3-23
Cluster 3-34
Overview 3-4
Introduction 7-2

J

Jump Starting 6-40

K

Keyless Entry System 2-4
Keys 2-3

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 6-57
Lamps
Back-Up 6-51
Daytime Running (DRL) 3-21
Dome 3-23
Dome Lamp Override 3-23
License Plate 6-53
Malfunction Indicator 3-42
Reading 3-24
Lap Belt 1-50
Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-43
LATCH System for Child Restraints 1-63
LED Lighting 6-51
Level Control 5-43
Liftgate, Power 2-14
Liftgate/Liftglass 2-12
Liftglass/Liftgate 2-12
Lighting
Entry 3-23
Exit 3-23
LED 6-51
Lights
Airbag Readiness 3-36
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 3-40
Brake System Warning 3-39
Charging System 3-38
Cruise Control 3-46
Exterior Lamps 3-16

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights (cont.)
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
Fog Lamps 3-45
Highbeam On 3-46
High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
Lights On Reminder 3-45
Oil Pressure 3-44
On Reminder 3-21
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-37
Safety Belt Reminders 3-35
Security 3-45
StabiliTrak® Indicator 3-40
Tire Pressure 3-41
Tow/Haul Mode 3-46
Loading Your Vehicle 5-33
Locking Rear Axle 5-9
Locks
Delayed Locking 2-10
Door 2-10
Lockout Protection 2-12
Power Door 2-10
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
Rear Door Security Locks 2-11
Loss of Control 5-12
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 1-63
Luggage Carrier 2-64
Lumbar
Power Controls 1-4

M

Magnetic Ride Control 5-9
Maintenance
Footnotes 7-8
Schedule, Additional Required Services 7-6
Maintenance Schedule
At Each Fuel Fill 7-10
At Least Once a Month 7-10
At Least Once a Year 7-11
Maintenance Record 7-17
Maintenance Replacement Parts 7-15
Maintenance Requirements 7-2
Owner Checks and Services 7-10
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 7-13
Scheduled Maintenance 7-4
Using 7-3
Your Vehicle and the Environment 7-2
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-42
Maps 4-15
Memory Features 1-7
Message
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-56
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 2-40
Manual Rearview 2-40
Outside Convex Mirror 2-41

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors (cont.)
Outside Heated Mirrors 2-42
Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors 2-40
Park Tilt 2-41

N

Navigation
Getting Started 4-4
System Overview 4-2
Using the System 4-13
Navigation System, Privacy 8-18
New Vehicle Break-In 2-24

O

Object Detection, Side Blind Zone
Alert (SBZA) 2-44
Odometer 3-35
Trip 3-35
Off-Road 5-13
Driving 5-13
Recovery 5-11
Oil
Engine 6-15
Engine Oil Life System 6-18
Pressure Light 3-44
Older Children, Restraints 1-52
Online Owner Center 8-5
OnStar, Privacy 8-18
OnStar® System, see OnStar® Manual 2-52
Operation, Universal Home Remote System 2-55
Ordering
Map DVDs 4-61
Outlet Adjustment 3-31
Outlets
Accessory Power 3-25
Outside
Convex Mirror 2-41
Heated Mirrors 2-42
Power Foldaway Mirrors 2-40
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 6-33
Overview, Navigation System 4-2
Owner Checks and Services 7-10
Owners, Canadian iii

P

Paint, Damage 6-103
Park
Shifting Into 2-36
Shifting Out of 2-37
Park Aid 2-42
Park Tilt Mirrors 2-41

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking
Assist 2-42
Brake 2-34
Over Things That Burn 2-38
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-37
Passenger Sensing System 1-87
Passing 5-12
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-22
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation 2-23
Perchlorate Materials Requirements, California 6-4
Phone
Bluetooth® 3-75
Power
Door Locks 2-10
Electrical System 6-105
Liftgate 2-14
Lumbar Controls 1-4
Reclining Seatbacks 1-8
Retained Accessory (RAP) 2-26
Seat 1-3
Steering Fluid 6-33
Windows 2-18
Power Assist Steps 2-16
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts 1-50
Privacy 8-16
Navigation System 8-18
OnStar 8-18
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 8-18
Problems with Route Guidance 4-61
Program
Courtesy Transportation 8-10
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
Proposition 65 Warning, California 6-4

R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 8-18
Radios
Reception 3-116
Theft-Deterrent 3-115
Rainsense™ II Wipers 3-10
Reading Lamps 3-24
Rear Air Conditioning and Heating System and Electronic Climate Controls 3-32
Rear Axle 6-46
Locking 5-9
Rear Door Security Locks 2-11
Rear Heated Seats 1-10
Rear Seat Armrest 2-65
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System 3-113
Rear Seat Entertainment System 3-87, 3-97
Rear Side Window Antenna 3-117
Rear Storage 2-65
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 2-48
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 3-12
Rearview Mirrors 2-40
Automatic Dimming 2-40

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rearview Mirrors (cont.)
Reclining Seatbacks, Power 1-8
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 7-13
Recovery Hooks 5-32
Recreational Vehicle Towing 5-40
Reimbursement Program, GM Mobility 8-7
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
Remote Vehicle Start 2-8
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 6-84
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 6-79
Replacement Bulbs 6-53
Replacement Parts
Maintenance 7-15
Reporting Safety Defects
General Motors 8-15
U.S. Government 8-14
Restraint System Check
Checking the Restraint Systems 1-95
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 1-96
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-26
Ride Control Systems
Road Sensing Suspension 5-9
Road Sensing Suspension 5-9
Roadside Service 8-7
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 5-32
Roof
Sunroof 2-65
Running the Vehicle While Parked 2-39

S

Safety Belts
Care of 6-100
Extender 1-51
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-35
Lap Belt 1-50
Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-43
Reminders 3-35
Safety Belts Are for Everyone 1-30
Use During Pregnancy 1-50
Safety Defects Reporting
General Motors 8-15
U.S. Government 8-14
Safety Warnings and Symbols iv
Scheduled Maintenance 7-4
Additional Required Services 7-6
Scheduling Appointments 8-10
Seats
60/40 Split Bench Seat 1-11
Bucket Seats, Rear 1-17
Center Seat 1-10

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats (cont.)
Head Restraints 1-2
Heated and Cooled Seats 1-6
Heated Seats 1-5
Heated Seats - Rear 1-10
Power Lumbar 1-4
Power Reclining Seatbacks 1-8
Power Seats 1-3
Third Row Seat 1-25
Secondary Latch System 6-89
Securing a Child Restraint
Center Front Seat Position 1-75
Rear Seat Position 1-71
Right Front Seat Position 1-76
Security
Light 3-45
Service 6-3
Accessories and Modifications 6-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle 6-5
Doing Your Own Work 6-4
Engine Soon Lamp 3-42
Parts Identification Label 6-105
Publications Ordering Information 8-15
Scheduling Appointments 8-10
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-93
Sheet Metal Damage 6-103
Shifting
Out of Park 2-37
Shifting Into Park 2-36
Side Blind Zone Alert 2-44
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 3-8
Spare Tire 6-96
Installing 6-84
Removing 6-79
Storing 6-92
Specifications and Capacities 6-113
Speedometer 3-35
Split Bench Seat (60/40) 1-11
StabiliTrak® Indicator Light 3-40
StabiliTrak® System 5-6
Start Vehicle, Remote 2-8
Starting the Engine 2-26
Steering 5-10
Steering Wheel
Heated 3-6
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio 3-115
Steering Wheel, Tilt Wheel 3-6
Steps
Power Assist 2-16
Storage
Garment Hooks 2-63

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage Areas
Center Console 2-63
Cupholders 2-62
Glove Box 2-62
Luggage Carrier 2-64
Rear 2-65
Rear Seat Armrest 2-65
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 5-31
Sun Visors 2-20
Sunroof 2-65
Symbols 4-19
System Needs Service, If 4-61

T

Tachometer 3-35
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 8-6
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-115
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-21
Content Theft-Deterrent 2-21
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-22
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation 2-23
Third Row Seat 1-25
Throttle, Adjustable 2-27
Tilt Wheel 3-6
Tires 6-56
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels, Cleaning 6-102
Buying New Tires 6-71
Chains 6-76
Changing a Flat Tire 6-78
Cleaning 6-103
Different Size 6-73
High-Speed Operation 6-63
If a Tire Goes Flat 6-77
Inflation - Tire Pressure 6-62
Inspection and Rotation 6-69
Installing the Spare Tire 6-84
Pressure Light 3-41
Pressure Monitor Operation 6-65
Pressure Monitor System 6-64
Removing the Flat Tire 6-84
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 6-79
Secondary Latch System 6-89
Sidewall Labeling 6-57
Spare Tire 6-96
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 6-92
Terminology and Definitions 6-59
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 6-73
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 6-75
Wheel Replacement 6-75
When It Is Time for New Tires 6-70

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tow/Haul Mode 2-33
Tow/Haul Mode Light 3-46
Towing
  Recreational Vehicle 5-40
  Towing a Trailer 5-44
  Trailer Recommendations 5-57
  Your Vehicle 5-40
Traction
  Magnetic Ride Control 5-9
  Road Sensing Suspension 5-9
  StabiliTrak® System 5-6
Trailer
  Towing Recommendations 5-57
Transmission
  Fluid, Automatic 6-20
Transmission Operation, Automatic 2-29
Transportation Program, Courtesy 8-10
Trip Odometer 3-35
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-8
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7

U

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) 2-42
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 6-73
Universal Home Remote System 2-55
  Operation 2-55

V

Vehicle
  Control 5-3
  Loading 5-33
  Remote Start 2-8
  Running While Parked 2-39
  Symbols iv
Vehicle Customization, DIC 3-65
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 8-16
Vehicle Identification
  Number (VIN) 6-104
  Service Parts Identification Label 6-105
Vehicle Positioning 4-60
Ventilation Adjustment 3-31
Visors 2-20
Voice Recognition 4-86

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

W

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-33
Warnings
  DIC Warnings and Messages 3-56
  Hazard Flashers 3-6
  Safety and Symbols iv
Wheels
  Alignment and Tire Balance 6-75
  Different Size 6-73
  Replacement 6-75
When It Is Time for New Tires 6-70
Where to Put the Child Restraint 1-61
Windows 2-17
  Power 2-18
Windshield
  Backglass, and Wiper Blades, Cleaning 6-102
  Rainsense™ II Wipers 3-10
  Washer 3-11
Windshield (cont.)
  Washer Fluid 6-34
  Wiper Blade Replacement 6-54
  Wiper Fuses 6-105
  Wipers 3-9
Winter Driving 5-29
Wipers
  Rear Washer 3-12

X

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-117

Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment 7-2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine